U.S. Department
of Transportation

**Federal Aviation
Administration**

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL

Change 1

August 26, 2010

DO NOT DESTROY
BASIC DATED
FEBRUARY 11, 2010

Aeronautical Information Manual

Explanation of Changes

Effective: August 26, 2010

a. 1–1–19. Global Positioning System (GPS)
1–2–3. Use of Suitable Area Navigation (RNAV) Systems on Conventional Procedures and Routes
5–1–15. RNAV and RNP Operations
5–4–5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts
5–5–16. RNAV and RNP Operations

This change adds guidance to remind pilots of the importance of using current databases.

b. 1–1–20. Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
5–4–5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts

This change explains the use of lines of minima for LPV and LP approaches.

c. 1–1–21. Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS)
5–4–5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts

This change explains the operations and charting related to GBAS landing systems.

d. 2–1–2. Visual Glideslope Indicators

This change clarifies the distance from the runway threshold that VASI and PAPI provide safe obstruction clearance.

e. 2–3–15. Holding Position Markings

This change is added to improve upon the clarity of the depicted runway markings.

f. 4–3–18. Taxiing

This change clarifies procedures used by ATC personnel when assigning a runway for takeoff. ATC personnel are now required to issue explicit runway crossing clearances for all runway crossings.

g. 4–3–26. Operations at Uncontrolled Airports with Automated Surface Observation System (ASOS)/ Automated Weather System (AWOS)
4–4–6. Special VFR Clearances
5–1–3. Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) System
5–4–4. Advance Information on Instrument Approach
7–1–1. National Weather Service Aviation Products
7–1–12. Weather Observing Programs
7–1–17. Reporting Prevailing Visibility
7–1–31. International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Weather Formats

This change updates paragraphs to include references to AWSS. It also updates the number of basic levels from four to eight and adds those references.

h. 5–1–5. Operational Information System (OIS)

This change will initiate generic guidance and refer queries for detailed information to the FAA's website for planned events and outages.

i. 5–1–1. Preflight Preparation
5–1–8. Flight Plan–IFR Flights
5–1–9. International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233–4) – IFR Flights (For Domestic or International Flights)

This change is added to reflect guidance in other regulatory material.

j. 5–2–8. Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) – Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP) and Standard Instrument Departures (SID)

This change is added to remove the word "minimum" in this first sentence because the intent is for it to apply to any altitude restriction that is charted with an "(ATC)" adjacent to it.

k. 5–4–5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts

This change explains how the vertical path is computed when an RNAV system uses barometric altitude information from the aircraft's altimeter.

l. 5–4–9. Procedure Turn and Hold–in–Lieu of Procedure Turn

This change adds language to make it clear to pilots that the procedure turn or hold–in–lieu of procedure turn is not a required maneuver if they are cleared by ATC for a straight–in approach.

m. 7–1–1. National Weather Service Aviation Products
7–1–6. Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories
7–1–10. Inflight Weather Broadcasts
7–1–11. Flight Information Services (FIS)

The FAA is introducing a graphical AIRMET, referred to as G–AIRMET, which is one of two AIRMET options categorized as primary weather productsfor use in flight weather briefings.

n. 7–5–12. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation (Laser) Operations and Reporting Illumination of Aircraft

Appendix 3. Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire

This change adds e–mail as a way to transmit laser reports. The questionnaire has also been updated.

o. 7–5–15. Avoid Flight in the Vicinity of Thermal Plumes (Smoke Stacks and Cooling Towers)

This change is added to explain to pilots the flight hazards that exist around thermal plumes and the operational procedures to mitigate these risks.

p. 10–1–3. Helicopter Approach Procedures to VFR Heliports

This change is added to harmonize with the language in FAA Order 8260.42B, Helicopter Global Positioning System (GPS) Nonprecision Approach Criteria.

q. Entire publication.

Editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used because of the insignificant nature of these changes.

AIM Change 1
Page Control Chart
August 26, 2010

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
Checklist of Pages CK–1 through CK–6	2/11/10	Checklist of Pages CK–1 through CK–6	8/26/10
i through xi	2/11/10	i through xi	8/26/10
1–1–25	2/11/10	1–1–25	2/11/10
1–1–26 through 1–1–42	2/11/10	1–1–26 through 1–1–42	8/26/10
1–2–5 and 1–2–6	2/11/10	1–2–5 and 1–2–6	8/26/10
2–1–1	2/11/10	2–1–1	2/11/10
2–1–2 through 2–1–12	2/11/10	2–1–2 through 2–1–12	8/26/10
2–3–15	2/11/10	2–3–15	8/26/10
2–3–16	2/11/10	2–3–16	2/11/10
4–3–15 and 4–3–16	2/11/10	4–3–15 and 4–3–16	8/26/10
4–3–23	2/11/10	4–3–23	2/11/10
4–3–24	2/11/10	4–3–24	8/26/10
4–4–3	2/11/10	4–4–3	2/11/10
4–4–4	2/11/10	4–4–4	8/26/10
5–1–1 through 5–1–8	2/11/10	5–1–1 through 5–1–8	8/26/10
5–1–9	2/11/10	5–1–9	2/11/10
5–1–10 through 5–1–12	2/11/10	5–1–10 through 5–1–12	8/26/10
5–1–17 through 5–1–29	2/11/10	5–1–17 through 5–1–29	8/26/10
5–2–9	2/11/10	5–2–9	8/26/10
5–4–3	2/11/10	5–4–3	2/11/10
5–4–4 through 5–4–57	2/11/10	5–4–4 through 5–4–57	8/26/10
5–5–7	2/11/10	5–5–7	8/26/10
7–1–1	2/11/10	7–1–1	8/26/10
7–1–2	2/11/10	7–1–2	2/11/10
7–1–9	2/11/10	7–1–9	8/26/10
7–1–10	2/11/10	7–1–10	2/11/10
7–1–13	2/11/10	7–1–13	8/26/10
7–1–14	2/11/10	7–1–14	2/11/10
7–1–15 through 7–1–72	2/11/10	7–1–15 through 7–1–72	8/26/10
7–5–9	2/11/10	7–5–9	2/11/10
7–5–10	2/11/10	7–5–10	8/26/10
7–5–13 and 7–5–14	2/11/10	7–5–13 and 7–5–14	8/26/10
10–1–5 through 10–1–7	2/11/10	10–1–5 through 10–1–7	8/26/10
Appendix 3–1	2/11/10	Appendix 3–1	8/26/10
PCG–1	2/11/10	PCG–1	8/26/10
PCG A–15	2/11/10	PCG A–15	2/11/10
PCG A–16	2/11/10	PCG A–16	8/26/10
PCG B–1	2/11/10	PCG B–1	8/26/10
PCG L–1	2/11/10	PCG L–1	2/11/10
PCG L–2	2/11/10	PCG L–2	8/26/10

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
PCG O–1	2/11/10	PCG O–1	2/11/10
PCG O–2	2/11/10	PCG O–2	8/26/10
PCG P–3 through P–5	2/11/10	PCG P–3 through P–5	8/26/10
PCG R–3	2/11/10	PCG R–3	2/11/10
PCG R–4	2/11/10	PCG R–4	8/26/10
PCG S–1 through S–8	2/11/10	PCG S–1 through S–8	8/26/10
PCG T–3	2/11/10	PCG T–3	2/11/10
PCG T–4	2/11/10	PCG T–4	8/26/10
Index I–1 through I–13	2/11/10	Index I–1 through I–13	8/26/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
Cover	2/11/10
Record of Changes	N/A
E of Chg–1	8/26/10
E of Chg–2	8/26/10
Checklist of Pages	
CK–1	8/26/10
CK–2	8/26/10
CK–3	8/26/10
CK–4	8/26/10
CK–5	8/26/10
CK–6	8/26/10
Subscription Info	2/11/10
Comments/Corr	2/11/10
Comments/Corr	2/11/10
Basic Flight Info	2/11/10
Publication Policy	2/11/10
Reg & Advis Cir	2/11/10
Table of Contents	
i	8/26/10
ii	8/26/10
iii	8/26/10
iv	8/26/10
v	8/26/10
vi	8/26/10
vii	8/26/10
viii	8/26/10
ix	8/26/10
x	8/26/10
xi	8/26/10
Chapter 1. Air Navigation	
Section 1. Navigation Aids	
1–1–1	2/11/10
1–1–2	2/11/10
1–1–3	2/11/10
1–1–4	2/11/10
1–1–5	2/11/10
1–1–6	2/11/10
1–1–7	2/11/10
1–1–8	2/11/10
1–1–9	2/11/10
1–1–10	2/11/10
1–1–11	2/11/10
1–1–12	2/11/10
1–1–13	2/11/10
1–1–14	2/11/10
1–1–15	2/11/10
1–1–16	2/11/10
1–1–17	2/11/10
1–1–18	2/11/10
1–1–19	2/11/10
1–1–20	2/11/10
1–1–21	2/11/10
1–1–22	2/11/10
1–1–23	2/11/10
1–1–24	2/11/10
1–1–25	2/11/10
1–1–26	8/26/10
1–1–27	8/26/10
1–1–28	2/11/10
1–1–29	2/11/10
1–1–30	2/11/10
1–1–31	8/26/10
1–1–32	8/26/10
1–1–33	8/26/10
1–1–34	8/26/10
1–1–35	8/26/10
1–1–36	8/26/10
1–1–37	8/26/10
1–1–38	8/26/10
1–1–39	2/11/10
1–1–40	2/11/10
1–1–41	8/26/10
1–1–42	8/26/10
Section 2. Area Navigation (RNAV) and Required Navigation Performance (RNP)	
1–2–1	2/11/10
1–2–2	2/11/10
1–2–3	2/11/10
1–2–4	2/11/10
1–2–5	8/26/10
1–2–6	8/26/10
Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids	
Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids	
2–1–1	2/11/10
2–1–2	8/26/10
2–1–3	8/26/10
2–1–4	8/26/10
2–1–5	8/26/10
2–1–6	8/26/10
2–1–7	8/26/10
2–1–8	8/26/10
2–1–9	8/26/10
2–1–10	8/26/10
2–1–11	8/26/10
2–1–12	8/26/10
Section 2. Air Navigation and Obstruction Lighting	
2–2–1	2/11/10
2–2–2	2/11/10
Section 3. Airport Marking Aids and Signs	
2–3–1	2/11/10
2–3–2	2/11/10
2–3–3	2/11/10
2–3–4	2/11/10
2–3–5	2/11/10
2–3–6	2/11/10
2–3–7	2/11/10
2–3–8	2/11/10
2–3–9	2/11/10
2–3–10	2/11/10
2–3–11	2/11/10
2–3–12	2/11/10
2–3–13	2/11/10
2–3–14	2/11/10
2–3–15	8/26/10
2–3–16	2/11/10
2–3–17	2/11/10
2–3–18	2/11/10
2–3–19	2/11/10
2–3–20	2/11/10
2–3–21	2/11/10
2–3–22	2/11/10
2–3–23	2/11/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
2–3–24	2/11/10
2–3–25	2/11/10
2–3–26	2/11/10
2–3–27	2/11/10
2–3–28	2/11/10
2–3–29	2/11/10
2–3–30	2/11/10
Chapter 3. Airspace	
Section 1. General	
3–1–1	2/11/10
3–1–2	2/11/10
Section 2. Controlled Airspace	
3–2–1	2/11/10
3–2–2	2/11/10
3–2–3	2/11/10
3–2–4	2/11/10
3–2–5	2/11/10
3–2–6	2/11/10
3–2–7	2/11/10
3–2–8	2/11/10
3–2–9	2/11/10
Section 3. Class G Airspace	
3–3–1	2/11/10
Section 4. Special Use Airspace	
3–4–1	2/11/10
3–4–2	2/11/10
Section 5. Other Airspace Areas	
3–5–1	2/11/10
3–5–2	2/11/10
3–5–3	2/11/10
3–5–4	2/11/10
3–5–5	2/11/10
3–5–6	2/11/10
3–5–7	2/11/10
3–5–8	2/11/10
3–5–9	2/11/10
Chapter 4. Air Traffic Control	
Section 1. Services Available to Pilots	
4–1–1	2/11/10
4–1–2	2/11/10
4–1–3	2/11/10
4–1–4	2/11/10
4–1–5	2/11/10
4–1–6	2/11/10
4–1–7	2/11/10
4–1–8	2/11/10
4–1–9	2/11/10
4–1–10	2/11/10
4–1–11	2/11/10
4–1–12	2/11/10
4–1–13	2/11/10
4–1–14	2/11/10
4–1–15	2/11/10
4–1–16	2/11/10
4–1–17	2/11/10
4–1–18	2/11/10
4–1–19	2/11/10
4–1–20	2/11/10
4–1–21	2/11/10
4–1–22	2/11/10
4–1–23	2/11/10
Section 2. Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques	
4–2–1	2/11/10
4–2–2	2/11/10
4–2–3	2/11/10
4–2–4	2/11/10
4–2–5	2/11/10
4–2–6	2/11/10
4–2–7	2/11/10
4–2–8	2/11/10
Section 3. Airport Operations	
4–3–1	2/11/10
4–3–2	2/11/10
4–3–3	2/11/10
4–3–4	2/11/10
4–3–5	2/11/10
4–3–6	2/11/10
4–3–7	2/11/10
4–3–8	2/11/10
4–3–9	2/11/10
4–3–10	2/11/10
4–3–11	2/11/10
4–3–12	2/11/10
4–3–13	2/11/10
4–3–14	2/11/10
4–3–15	8/26/10
4–3–16	8/26/10
4–3–17	2/11/10
4–3–18	2/11/10
4–3–19	2/11/10
4–3–20	2/11/10
4–3–21	2/11/10
4–3–22	2/11/10
4–3–23	2/11/10
4–3–24	8/26/10
Section 4. ATC Clearances and Aircraft Separation	
4–4–1	2/11/10
4–4–2	2/11/10
4–4–3	2/11/10
4–4–4	8/26/10
4–4–5	2/11/10
4–4–6	2/11/10
4–4–7	2/11/10
4–4–8	2/11/10
4–4–9	2/11/10
4–4–10	2/11/10
4–4–11	2/11/10
Section 5. Surveillance Systems	
4–5–1	2/11/10
4–5–2	2/11/10
4–5–3	2/11/10
4–5–4	2/11/10
4–5–5	2/11/10
4–5–6	2/11/10
4–5–7	2/11/10
4–5–8	2/11/10
4–5–9	2/11/10
4–5–10	2/11/10
4–5–11	2/11/10
4–5–12	2/11/10
4–5–13	2/11/10
4–5–14	2/11/10
4–5–15	2/11/10
4–5–16	2/11/10
4–5–17	2/11/10
4–5–18	2/11/10
4–5–19	2/11/10
4–5–20	2/11/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
Section 6. Operational Policy/ Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR	
4–6–1	2/11/10
4–6–2	2/11/10
4–6–3	2/11/10
4–6–4	2/11/10
4–6–5	2/11/10
4–6–6	2/11/10
4–6–7	2/11/10
4–6–8	2/11/10
4–6–9	2/11/10
4–6–10	2/11/10
4–6–11	2/11/10
Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures	
Section 1. Preflight	
5–1–1	8/26/10
5–1–2	8/26/10
5–1–3	8/26/10
5–1–4	8/26/10
5–1–5	8/26/10
5–1–6	8/26/10
5–1–7	8/26/10
5–1–8	8/26/10
5–1–9	2/11/10
5–1–10	2/11/10
5–1–11	8/26/10
5–1–12	8/26/10
5–1–13	2/11/10
5–1–14	2/11/10
5–1–15	2/11/10
5–1–16	2/11/10
5–1–17	8/26/10
5–1–18	8/26/10
5–1–19	8/26/10
5–1–20	8/26/10
5–1–21	8/26/10
5–1–22	8/26/10
5–1–23	8/26/10
5–1–24	8/26/10
5–1–25	8/26/10
5–1–26	8/26/10
5–1–27	8/26/10
5–1–28	8/26/10
5–1–29	8/26/10

PAGE	DATE
Section 2. Departure Procedures	
5–2–1	2/11/10
5–2–2	2/11/10
5–2–3	2/11/10
5–2–4	2/11/10
5–2–5	2/11/10
5–2–6	2/11/10
5–2–7	2/11/10
5–2–8	2/11/10
5–2–9	8/26/10
Section 3. En Route Procedures	
5–3–1	2/11/10
5–3–2	2/11/10
5–3–3	2/11/10
5–3–4	2/11/10
5–3–5	2/11/10
5–3–6	2/11/10
5–3–7	2/11/10
5–3–8	2/11/10
5–3–9	2/11/10
5–3–10	2/11/10
5–3–11	2/11/10
5–3–12	2/11/10
5–3–13	2/11/10
5–3–14	2/11/10
Section 4. Arrival Procedures	
5–4–1	2/11/10
5–4–2	2/11/10
5–4–3	2/11/10
5–4–4	8/26/10
5–4–5	8/26/10
5–4–6	8/26/10
5–4–7	8/26/10
5–4–8	8/26/10
5–4–9	8/26/10
5–4–10	8/26/10
5–4–11	8/26/10
5–4–12	8/26/10
5–4–13	8/26/10
5–4–14	8/26/10
5–4–15	8/26/10
5–4–16	8/26/10
5–4–17	8/26/10
5–4–18	8/26/10

PAGE	DATE
5–4–19	8/26/10
5–4–20	8/26/10
5–4–21	8/26/10
5–4–22	8/26/10
5–4–23	8/26/10
5–4–24	8/26/10
5–4–25	8/26/10
5–4–26	8/26/10
5–4–27	8/26/10
5–4–28	8/26/10
5–4–29	8/26/10
5–4–30	8/26/10
5–4–31	8/26/10
5–4–32	8/26/10
5–4–33	8/26/10
5–4–34	8/26/10
5–4–35	8/26/10
5–4–36	8/26/10
5–4–37	8/26/10
5–4–38	8/26/10
5–4–39	8/26/10
5–4–40	8/26/10
5–4–41	8/26/10
5–4–42	8/26/10
5–4–43	8/26/10
5–4–44	8/26/10
5–4–45	8/26/10
5–4–46	8/26/10
5–4–47	8/26/10
5–4–48	8/26/10
5–4–49	8/26/10
5–4–50	8/26/10
5–4–51	8/26/10
5–4–52	8/26/10
5–4–53	8/26/10
5–4–54	8/26/10
5–4–55	8/26/10
5–4–56	8/26/10
5–4–57	8/26/10
Section 5. Pilot/Controller Roles and Responsibilities	
5–5–1	2/11/10
5–5–2	2/11/10
5–5–3	2/11/10
5–5–4	2/11/10
5–5–5	2/11/10
5–5–6	2/11/10
5–5–7	8/26/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
Section 6. National Security and Interception Procedures	
5–6–1	2/11/10
5–6–2	2/11/10
5–6–3	2/11/10
5–6–4	2/11/10
5–6–5	2/11/10
5–6–6	2/11/10
5–6–7	2/11/10
Chapter 6. Emergency Procedures	
Section 1. General	
6–1–1	2/11/10
Section 2. Emergency Services Available to Pilots	
6–2–1	2/11/10
6–2–2	2/11/10
6–2–3	2/11/10
6–2–4	2/11/10
6–2–5	2/11/10
6–2–6	2/11/10
6–2–7	2/11/10
6–2–8	2/11/10
6–2–9	2/11/10
6–2–10	2/11/10
6–2–11	2/11/10
6–2–12	2/11/10
Section 3. Distress and Urgency Procedures	
6–3–1	2/11/10
6–3–2	2/11/10
6–3–3	2/11/10
6–3–4	2/11/10
6–3–5	2/11/10
6–3–6	2/11/10
6–3–7	2/11/10
Section 4. Two–way Radio Communications Failure	
6–4–1	2/11/10
6–4–2	2/11/10

PAGE	DATE
Section 5. Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Communications	
6–5–1	2/11/10
6–5–2	2/11/10
Chapter 7. Safety of Flight	
Section 1. Meteorology	
7–1–1	8/26/10
7–1–2	2/11/10
7–1–3	2/11/10
7–1–4	2/11/10
7–1–5	2/11/10
7–1–6	2/11/10
7–1–7	2/11/10
7–1–8	2/11/10
7–1–9	8/26/10
7–1–10	2/11/10
7–1–11	2/11/10
7–1–12	2/11/10
7–1–13	8/26/10
7–1–14	2/11/10
7–1–15	8/26/10
7–1–16	8/26/10
7–1–17	8/26/10
7–1–18	8/26/10
7–1–19	8/26/10
7–1–20	8/26/10
7–1–21	8/26/10
7–1–22	8/26/10
7–1–23	8/26/10
7–1–24	8/26/10
7–1–25	8/26/10
7–1–26	8/26/10
7–1–27	8/26/10
7–1–28	8/26/10
7–1–29	8/26/10
7–1–30	8/26/10
7–1–31	8/26/10
7–1–32	8/26/10
7–1–33	8/26/10
7–1–34	8/26/10
7–1–35	8/26/10
7–1–36	8/26/10
7–1–37	8/26/10
7–1–38	8/26/10
7–1–39	8/26/10

PAGE	DATE
7–1–40	8/26/10
7–1–41	8/26/10
7–1–42	8/26/10
7–1–43	8/26/10
7–1–44	8/26/10
7–1–45	8/26/10
7–1–46	8/26/10
7–1–47	8/26/10
7–1–48	8/26/10
7–1–49	8/26/10
7–1–50	8/26/10
7–1–51	8/26/10
7–1–52	8/26/10
7–1–53	8/26/10
7–1–54	8/26/10
7–1–55	8/26/10
7–1–56	8/26/10
7–1–57	8/26/10
7–1–58	8/26/10
7–1–59	8/26/10
7–1–60	8/26/10
7–1–61	8/26/10
7–1–62	8/26/10
7–1–63	8/26/10
7–1–64	8/26/10
7–1–65	8/26/10
7–1–66	8/26/10
7–1–67	8/26/10
7–1–68	8/26/10
7–1–69	8/26/10
7–1–70	8/26/10
7–1–71	8/26/10
7–1–72	8/26/10
Section 2. Altimeter Setting Procedures	
7–2–1	2/11/10
7–2–2	2/11/10
7–2–3	2/11/10
7–2–4	2/11/10
Section 3. Wake Turbulence	
7–3–1	2/11/10
7–3–2	2/11/10
7–3–3	2/11/10
7–3–4	2/11/10
7–3–5	2/11/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
7–3–6	2/11/10
7–3–7	2/11/10
7–3–8	2/11/10
Section 4. Bird Hazards and Flight Over National Refuges, Parks, and Forests	
7–4–1	2/11/10
7–4–2	2/11/10
Section 5. Potential Flight Hazards	
7–5–1	2/11/10
7–5–2	2/11/10
7–5–3	2/11/10
7–5–4	2/11/10
7–5–5	2/11/10
7–5–6	2/11/10
7–5–7	2/11/10
7–5–8	2/11/10
7–5–9	2/11/10
7–5–10	8/26/10
7–5–11	2/11/10
7–5–12	2/11/10
7–5–13	8/26/10
7–5–14	8/26/10
Section 6. Safety, Accident, and Hazard Reports	
7–6–1	2/11/10
7–6–2	2/11/10
7–6–3	2/11/10
Chapter 8. Medical Facts for Pilots	
Section 1. Fitness for Flight	
8–1–1	2/11/10
8–1–2	2/11/10
8–1–3	2/11/10
8–1–4	2/11/10
8–1–5	2/11/10
8–1–6	2/11/10
8–1–7	2/11/10
8–1–8	2/11/10
8–1–9	2/11/10

PAGE	DATE
Chapter 9. Aeronautical Charts and Related Publications	
Section 1. Types of Charts Available	
9–1–1	2/11/10
9–1–2	2/11/10
9–1–3	2/11/10
9–1–4	2/11/10
9–1–5	2/11/10
9–1–6	2/11/10
9–1–7	2/11/10
9–1–8	2/11/10
9–1–9	2/11/10
9–1–10	2/11/10
9–1–11	2/11/10
9–1–12	2/11/10
9–1–13	2/11/10
Chapter 10. Helicopter Operations	
Section 1. Helicopter IFR Operations	
10–1–1	2/11/10
10–1–2	2/11/10
10–1–3	2/11/10
10–1–4	2/11/10
10–1–5	8/26/10
10–1–6	8/26/10
10–1–7	8/26/10
Section 2. Special Operations	
10–2–1	2/11/10
10–2–2	2/11/10
10–2–3	2/11/10
10–2–4	2/11/10
10–2–5	2/11/10
10–2–6	2/11/10
10–2–7	2/11/10
10–2–8	2/11/10
10–2–9	2/11/10
10–2–10	2/11/10
10–2–11	2/11/10
10–2–12	2/11/10

PAGE	DATE
10–2–13	2/11/10
10–2–14	2/11/10
10–2–15	2/11/10
10–2–16	2/11/10
10–2–17	2/11/10
Appendices	
Appendix 1–1	2/11/10
Env	N/A
Appendix 2–1	2/11/10
Appendix 3–1	8/26/10
Appendix 4–1	2/11/10
Appendix 4–2	2/11/10
Appendix 4–3	2/11/10
Appendix 4–4	2/11/10
Appendix 4–5	2/11/10
Pilot/Controller Glossary	
PCG–1	8/26/10
PCG A–1	2/11/10
PCG A–2	2/11/10
PCG A–3	2/11/10
PCG A–4	2/11/10
PCG A–5	2/11/10
PGC A–6	2/11/10
PCG A–7	2/11/10
PCG A–8	2/11/10
PCG A–9	2/11/10
PCG A–10	2/11/10
PCG A–11	2/11/10
PCG A–12	2/11/10
PCG A–13	2/11/10
PCG A–14	2/11/10
PCG A–15	2/11/10
PCG A–16	8/26/10
PCG A–17	2/11/10
PCG B–1	8/26/10
PCG C–1	2/11/10
PCG C–2	2/11/10
PCG C–3	2/11/10
PCG C–4	2/11/10
PCG C–5	2/11/10
PCG C–6	2/11/10
PCG C–7	2/11/10
PCG C–8	2/11/10

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
PCG C–9	2/11/10
PCG D–1	2/11/10
PCG D–2	2/11/10
PCG D–3	2/11/10
PCG D–4	2/11/10
PCG E–1	2/11/10
PCG E–2	2/11/10
PCG F–1	2/11/10
PCG F–2	2/11/10
PCG F–3	2/11/10
PCG F–4	2/11/10
PCG F–5	2/11/10
PCG G–1	2/11/10
PCG G–2	2/11/10
PCG H–1	2/11/10
PCG H–2	2/11/10
PCG H–3	2/11/10
PCG I–1	2/11/10
PCG I–2	2/11/10
PCG I–3	2/11/10
PCG I–4	2/11/10
PCG I–5	2/11/10
PCG J–1	2/11/10
PCG K–1	2/11/10
PCG L–1	2/11/10
PCG L–2	8/26/10
PCG L–3	2/11/10
PCG M–1	2/11/10
PCG M–2	2/11/10
PCG M–3	2/11/10
PCG M–4	2/11/10
PCG M–5	2/11/10
PCG M–6	2/11/10
PCG N–1	2/11/10

PAGE	DATE
PCG N–2	2/11/10
PCG N–3	2/11/10
PCG N–4	2/11/10
PCG O–1	2/11/10
PCG O–2	8/26/10
PCG O–3	2/11/10
PCG O–4	2/11/10
PCG P–1	2/11/10
PCG P–2	2/11/10
PCG P–3	8/26/10
PCG P–4	8/26/10
PCG P–5	8/26/10
PCG Q–1	2/11/10
PCG R–1	2/11/10
PCG R–2	2/11/10
PCG R–3	2/11/10
PCG R–4	8/26/10
PCG R–5	2/11/10
PCG R–6	2/11/10
PCG R–7	2/11/10
PCG R–8	2/11/10
PCG S–1	8/26/10
PCG S–2	8/26/10
PCG S–3	8/26/10
PCG S–4	8/26/10
PCG S–5	8/26/10
PCG S–6	8/26/10
PCG S–7	8/26/10
PCG S–8	8/26/10
PCG T–1	2/11/10
PCG T–2	2/11/10
PCG T–3	2/11/10
PCG T–4	8/26/10
PCG T–5	2/11/10
PCG T–6	2/11/10

PAGE	DATE
PCG T–7	2/11/10
PCG U–1	2/11/10
PCG V–1	2/11/10
PCG V–2	2/11/10
PCG V–3	2/11/10
PCG V–4	2/11/10
PCG W–1	2/11/10
Index	
I–1	8/26/10
I–2	8/26/10
I–3	8/26/10
I–4	8/26/10
I–5	8/26/10
I–6	8/26/10
I–7	8/26/10
I–8	8/26/10
I–9	8/26/10
I–10	8/26/10
I–11	8/26/10
I–12	8/26/10
I–13	8/26/10
Back Cover	N/A

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Air Navigation

Section 1. Navigation Aids

Paragraph		Page
1−1−1.	General	1−1−1
1−1−2.	Nondirectional Radio Beacon (NDB)	1−1−1
1−1−3.	VHF Omni−directional Range (VOR)	1−1−1
1−1−4.	VOR Receiver Check	1−1−2
1−1−5.	Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN)	1−1−3
1−1−6.	VHF Omni−directional Range/Tactical Air Navigation (VORTAC)	1−1−3
1−1−7.	Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)	1−1−3
1−1−8.	Navigational Aid (NAVAID) Service Volumes	1−1−4
1−1−9.	Instrument Landing System (ILS)	1−1−7
1−1−10.	Simplified Directional Facility (SDF)	1−1−11
1−1−11.	Microwave Landing System (MLS)	1−1−14
1−1−12.	NAVAID Identifier Removal During Maintenance	1−1−16
1−1−13.	NAVAIDs with Voice	1−1−17
1−1−14.	User Reports on NAVAID Performance	1−1−17
1−1−15.	LORAN	1−1−17
1−1−16.	VHF Direction Finder	1−1−25
1−1−17.	Inertial Reference Unit (IRU), Inertial Navigation System (INS), and Attitude Heading Reference System (AHRS)	1−1−25
1−1−18.	Doppler Radar	1−1−25
1−1−19.	Global Positioning System (GPS)	1−1−25
1−1−20.	Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)	1−1−37
1−1−21.	Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS)	1−1−41
1−1−22.	Precision Approach Systems other than ILS, GLS, and MLS	1−1−42

Section 2. Area Navigation (RNAV) and Required Navigation Performance (RNP)

1−2−1.	Area Navigation (RNAV)	1−2−1
1−2−2.	Required Navigation Performance (RNP)	1−2−4
1−2−3.	Use of Suitable Area Navigation (RNAV) Systems on Conventional Procedures and Routes	1−2−5

Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids

Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids

2−1−1.	Approach Light Systems (ALS)	2−1−1
2−1−2.	Visual Glideslope Indicators	2−1−2
2−1−3.	Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL)	2−1−6
2−1−4.	Runway Edge Light Systems	2−1−6
2−1−5.	In-runway Lighting	2−1−6
2−1−6.	Runway Status Light (RWSL) System	2−1−7
2−1−7.	Control of Lighting Systems	2−1−9
2−1−8.	Pilot Control of Airport Lighting	2−1−9

Paragraph **Page**
2−1−9. Airport/Heliport Beacons . . . . . 2−1−11
2−1−10. Taxiway Lights . . . . . 2−1−12

Section 2. Air Navigation and Obstruction Lighting

2−2−1. Aeronautical Light Beacons . . . . . 2−2−1
2−2−2. Code Beacons and Course Lights . . . . . 2−2−1
2−2−3. Obstruction Lights . . . . . 2−2−1

Section 3. Airport Marking Aids and Signs

2−3−1. General . . . . . 2−3−1
2−3−2. Airport Pavement Markings . . . . . 2−3−1
2−3−3. Runway Markings . . . . . 2−3−1
2−3−4. Taxiway Markings . . . . . 2−3−7
2−3−5. Holding Position Markings . . . . . 2−3−12
2−3−6. Other Markings . . . . . 2−3−16
2−3−7. Airport Signs . . . . . 2−3−20
2−3−8. Mandatory Instruction Signs . . . . . 2−3−21
2−3−9. Location Signs . . . . . 2−3−24
2−3−10. Direction Signs . . . . . 2−3−26
2−3−11. Destination Signs . . . . . 2−3−29
2−3−12. Information Signs . . . . . 2−3−30
2−3−13. Runway Distance Remaining Signs . . . . . 2−3−30
2−3−14. Aircraft Arresting Systems . . . . . 2−3−31

Chapter 3. Airspace

Section 1. General

3−1−1. General . . . . . 3−1−1
3−1−2. General Dimensions of Airspace Segments . . . . . 3−1−1
3−1−3. Hierarchy of Overlapping Airspace Designations . . . . . 3−1−1
3−1−4. Basic VFR Weather Minimums . . . . . 3−1−1
3−1−5. VFR Cruising Altitudes and Flight Levels . . . . . 3−1−2

Section 2. Controlled Airspace

3−2−1. General . . . . . 3−2−1
3−2−2. Class A Airspace . . . . . 3−2−2
3−2−3. Class B Airspace . . . . . 3−2−2
3−2−4. Class C Airspace . . . . . 3−2−4
3−2−5. Class D Airspace . . . . . 3−2−8
3−2−6. Class E Airspace . . . . . 3−2−9

Section 3. Class G Airspace

3−3−1. General . . . . . 3−3−1
3−3−2. VFR Requirements . . . . . 3−3−1
3−3−3. IFR Requirements . . . . . 3−3−1

Section 4. Special Use Airspace

Paragraph	Page
3−4−1. General	3−4−1
3−4−2. Prohibited Areas	3−4−1
3−4−3. Restricted Areas	3−4−1
3−4−4. Warning Areas	3−4−1
3−4−5. Military Operations Areas	3−4−2
3−4−6. Alert Areas	3−4−2
3−4−7. Controlled Firing Areas	3−4−2

Section 5. Other Airspace Areas

3−5−1. Airport Advisory/Information Services	3−5−1
3−5−2. Military Training Routes	3−5−1
3−5−3. Temporary Flight Restrictions	3−5−2
3−5−4. Parachute Jump Aircraft Operations	3−5−5
3−5−5. Published VFR Routes	3−5−5
3−5−6. Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)	3−5−9
3−5−7. National Security Areas	3−5−9

Chapter 4. Air Traffic Control

Section 1. Services Available to Pilots

4−1−1. Air Route Traffic Control Centers	4−1−1
4−1−2. Control Towers	4−1−1
4−1−3. Flight Service Stations	4−1−1
4−1−4. Recording and Monitoring	4−1−1
4−1−5. Communications Release of IFR Aircraft Landing at an Airport Without an Operating Control Tower	4−1−1
4−1−6. Pilot Visits to Air Traffic Facilities	4−1−1
4−1−7. Operation Take-off and Operation Raincheck	4−1−2
4−1−8. Approach Control Service for VFR Arriving Aircraft	4−1−2
4−1−9. Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers	4−1−2
4−1−10. IFR Approaches/Ground Vehicle Operations	4−1−6
4−1−11. Designated UNICOM/MULTICOM Frequencies	4−1−6
4−1−12. Use of UNICOM for ATC Purposes	4−1−7
4−1−13. Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS)	4−1−7
4−1−14. Automatic Flight Information Service (AFIS) − Alaska FSSs Only	4−1−8
4−1−15. Radar Traffic Information Service	4−1−8
4−1−16. Safety Alert	4−1−10
4−1−17. Radar Assistance to VFR Aircraft	4−1−11
4−1−18. Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft	4−1−12
4−1−19. Tower En Route Control (TEC)	4−1−14
4−1−20. Transponder Operation	4−1−15
4−1−21. Hazardous Area Reporting Service	4−1−18
4−1−22. Airport Reservation Operations and Special Traffic Management Programs	4−1−21
4−1−23. Requests for Waivers and Authorizations from Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR)	4−1−23
4−1−24. Weather System Processor	4−1−23

Section 2. Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques

Paragraph	Page
4−2−1. General	4−2−1
4−2−2. Radio Technique	4−2−1
4−2−3. Contact Procedures	4−2−1
4−2−4. Aircraft Call Signs	4−2−3
4−2−5. Description of Interchange or Leased Aircraft	4−2−4
4−2−6. Ground Station Call Signs	4−2−4
4−2−7. Phonetic Alphabet	4−2−5
4−2−8. Figures	4−2−6
4−2−9. Altitudes and Flight Levels	4−2−6
4−2−10. Directions	4−2−6
4−2−11. Speeds	4−2−6
4−2−12. Time	4−2−6
4−2−13. Communications with Tower when Aircraft Transmitter or Receiver or Both are Inoperative	4−2−7
4−2−14. Communications for VFR Flights	4−2−8

Section 3. Airport Operations

4−3−1. General	4−3−1
4−3−2. Airports with an Operating Control Tower	4−3−1
4−3−3. Traffic Patterns	4−3−2
4−3−4. Visual Indicators at Airports Without an Operating Control Tower	4−3−5
4−3−5. Unexpected Maneuvers in the Airport Traffic Pattern	4−3−6
4−3−6. Use of Runways/Declared Distances	4−3−6
4−3−7. Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Detection Systems	4−3−7
4−3−8. Braking Action Reports and Advisories	4−3−7
4−3−9. Runway Friction Reports and Advisories	4−3−8
4−3−10. Intersection Takeoffs	4−3−8
4−3−11. Pilot Responsibilities When Conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO)	4−3−9
4−3−12. Low Approach	4−3−11
4−3−13. Traffic Control Light Signals	4−3−11
4−3−14. Communications	4−3−12
4−3−15. Gate Holding Due to Departure Delays	4−3−13
4−3−16. VFR Flights in Terminal Areas	4−3−13
4−3−17. VFR Helicopter Operations at Controlled Airports	4−3−13
4−3−18. Taxiing	4−3−15
4−3−19. Taxi During Low Visibility	4−3−16
4−3−20. Exiting the Runway After Landing	4−3−17
4−3−21. Practice Instrument Approaches	4−3−17
4−3−22. Option Approach	4−3−19
4−3−23. Use of Aircraft Lights	4−3−19
4−3−24. Flight Inspection/‘Flight Check’ Aircraft in Terminal Areas	4−3−20
4−3−25. Hand Signals	4−3−20
4−3−26. Operations at Uncontrolled Airports With Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Sensor System(AWSS)/ Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)	4−3−24

Section 4. ATC Clearances and Aircraft Separation

Paragraph	Page
4−4−1. Clearance	4−4−1
4−4−2. Clearance Prefix	4−4−1
4−4−3. Clearance Items	4−4−1
4−4−4. Amended Clearances	4−4−2
4−4−5. Coded Departure Route (CDR)	4−4−3
4−4−6. Special VFR Clearances	4−4−3
4−4−7. Pilot Responsibility upon Clearance Issuance	4−4−4
4−4−8. IFR Clearance VFR-on-top	4−4−4
4−4−9. VFR/IFR Flights	4−4−5
4−4−10. Adherence to Clearance	4−4−5
4−4−11. IFR Separation Standards	4−4−7
4−4−12. Speed Adjustments	4−4−7
4−4−13. Runway Separation	4−4−9
4−4−14. Visual Separation	4−4−9
4−4−15. Use of Visual Clearing Procedures	4−4−10
4−4−16. Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS I & II)	4−4−10
4−4−17. Traffic Information Service (TIS)	4−4−11
4−4−18. Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B)	4−4−11
4−4−19. Traffic Information Service−Broadcast (TIS−B)	4−4−11

Section 5. Surveillance Systems

4−5−1. Radar	4−5−1
4−5−2. Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS)	4−5−2
4−5−3. Surveillance Radar	4−5−7
4−5−4. Precision Approach Radar (PAR)	4−5−7
4−5−5. Airport Surface Detection Equipment − Model X (ASDE−X)	4−5−7
4−5−6. Traffic Information Service (TIS)	4−5−8
4−5−7. Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) Services	4−5−14
4−5−8. Traffic Information Service− Broadcast (TIS−B)	4−5−17
4−5−9. Flight Information Service− Broadcast (FIS−B)	4−5−18

Section 6. Operational Policy/Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR

4−6−1. Applicability and RVSM Mandate (Date/Time and Area)	4−6−1
4−6−2. Flight Level Orientation Scheme	4−6−1
4−6−3. Aircraft and Operator Approval Policy/Procedures, RVSM Monitoring and Databases for Aircraft and Operator Approval	4−6−2
4−6−4. Flight Planning into RVSM Airspace	4−6−3
4−6−5. Pilot RVSM Operating Practices and Procedures	4−6−3
4−6−6. Guidance on Severe Turbulence and Mountain Wave Activity (MWA)	4−6−4
4−6−7. Guidance on Wake Turbulence	4−6−5
4−6−8. Pilot/Controller Phraseology	4−6−6
4−6−9. Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures	4−6−8
4−6−10. Procedures for Accommodation of Non−RVSM Aircraft	4−6−10
4−6−11. Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off	4−6−11

Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures

Section 1. Preflight

Paragraph	Page
5−1−1. Preflight Preparation	5−1−1
5−1−2. Follow IFR Procedures Even When Operating VFR	5−1−2
5−1−3. Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) System	5−1−2
5−1−4. Flight Plan − VFR Flights	5−1−7
5−1−5. Operational Information System (OIS)	5−1−10
5−1−6. Flight Plan− Defense VFR (DVFR) Flights	5−1−10
5−1−7. Composite Flight Plan (VFR/IFR Flights)	5−1−10
5−1−8. Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−1)− Domestic IFR Flights	5−1−11
5−1−9. International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−4)− IFR Flights (For Domestic or International Flights)	5−1−17
5−1−10. IFR Operations to High Altitude Destinations	5−1−25
5−1−11. Flights Outside the U.S. and U.S. Territories	5−1−26
5−1−12. Change in Flight Plan	5−1−27
5−1−13. Change in Proposed Departure Time	5−1−28
5−1−14. Closing VFR/DVFR Flight Plans	5−1−28
5−1−15. Canceling IFR Flight Plan	5−1−28
5−1−16. RNAV and RNP Operations	5−1−28

Section 2. Departure Procedures

5−2−1. Pre-taxi Clearance Procedures	5−2−1
5−2−2. Pre−departure Clearance Procedures	5−2−1
5−2−3. Taxi Clearance	5−2−1
5−2−4. Taxi into Position and Hold (TIPH)	5−2−1
5−2−5. Abbreviated IFR Departure Clearance (Cleared. . .as Filed) Procedures	5−2−2
5−2−6. Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times	5−2−4
5−2−7. Departure Control	5−2−5
5−2−8. Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP) and Standard Instrument Departures (SID)	5−2−5

Section 3. En Route Procedures

5−3−1. ARTCC Communications	5−3−1
5−3−2. Position Reporting	5−3−3
5−3−3. Additional Reports	5−3−4
5−3−4. Airways and Route Systems	5−3−5
5−3−5. Airway or Route Course Changes	5−3−7
5−3−6. Changeover Points (COPs)	5−3−8
5−3−7. Holding	5−3−8

Section 4. Arrival Procedures

5−4−1. Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR), Area Navigation (RNAV) STAR, and Flight Management System Procedures (FMSP) for Arrivals	5−4−1
5−4−2. Local Flow Traffic Management Program	5−4−2
5−4−3. Approach Control	5−4−2
5−4−4. Advance Information on Instrument Approach	5−4−3
5−4−5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts	5−4−4

Paragraph **Page**
5−4−6. Approach Clearance . . . . . 5−4−25
5−4−7. Instrument Approach Procedures . . . . . 5−4−26
5−4−8. Special Instrument Approach Procedures . . . . . 5−4−27
5−4−9. Procedure Turn and Hold−in−lieu of Procedure Turn . . . . . 5−4−28
5−4−10. Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix . . . . . 5−4−31
5−4−11. Radar Approaches . . . . . 5−4−34
5−4−12. Radar Monitoring of Instrument Approaches . . . . . 5−4−35
5−4−13. ILS/MLS Approaches to Parallel Runways . . . . . 5−4−36
5−4−14. Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Dependent) . . . . . 5−4−38
5−4−15. Simultaneous Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Independent) . . . . . 5−4−39
5−4−16. Simultaneous Close Parallel ILS PRM Approaches (Independent) and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA) . . . . . 5−4−41
5−4−17. Simultaneous Converging Instrument Approaches . . . . . 5−4−47
5−4−18. RNP SAAAR Instrument Approach Procedures . . . . . 5−4−47
5−4−19. Side-step Maneuver . . . . . 5−4−49
5−4−20. Approach and Landing Minimums . . . . . 5−4−49
5−4−21. Missed Approach . . . . . 5−4−52
5−4−22. Visual Approach . . . . . 5−4−54
5−4−23. Charted Visual Flight Procedure (CVFP) . . . . . 5−4−55
5−4−24. Contact Approach . . . . . 5−4−56
5−4−25. Landing Priority . . . . . 5−4−56
5−4−26. Overhead Approach Maneuver . . . . . 5−4−56

Section 5. Pilot/Controller Roles and Responsibilities

5−5−1. General . . . . . 5−5−1
5−5−2. Air Traffic Clearance . . . . . 5−5−1
5−5−3. Contact Approach . . . . . 5−5−2
5−5−4. Instrument Approach . . . . . 5−5−2
5−5−5. Missed Approach . . . . . 5−5−2
5−5−6. Radar Vectors . . . . . 5−5−3
5−5−7. Safety Alert . . . . . 5−5−3
5−5−8. See and Avoid . . . . . 5−5−4
5−5−9. Speed Adjustments . . . . . 5−5−4
5−5−10. Traffic Advisories (Traffic Information) . . . . . 5−5−4
5−5−11. Visual Approach . . . . . 5−5−5
5−5−12. Visual Separation . . . . . 5−5−5
5−5−13. VFR-on-top . . . . . 5−5−6
5−5−14. Instrument Departures . . . . . 5−5−6
5−5−15. Minimum Fuel Advisory . . . . . 5−5−6
5−5−16. RNAV and RNP Operations . . . . . 5−5−7

Section 6. National Security and Interception Procedures

5−6−1. National Security . . . . . 5−6−1
5−6−2. Interception Procedures . . . . . 5−6−2
5−6−3. Law Enforcement Operations by Civil and Military Organizations . . . . . 5−6−4
5−6−4. Interception Signals . . . . . 5−6−5
5−6−5. ADIZ Boundaries and Designated Mountainous Areas . . . . . 5−6−7

Chapter 6. Emergency Procedures

Section 1. General

6−1−1. Pilot Responsibility and Authority . . . . . 6−1−1
6−1−2. Emergency Condition− Request Assistance Immediately . . . . . 6−1−1

Section 2. Emergency Services Available to Pilots

6−2−1. Radar Service for VFR Aircraft in Difficulty . . . . . 6−2−1
6−2−2. Transponder Emergency Operation . . . . . 6−2−1
6−2−3. Direction Finding Instrument Approach Procedure . . . . . 6−2−1
6−2−4. Intercept and Escort . . . . . 6−2−2
6−2−5. Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) . . . . . 6−2−2
6−2−6. FAA K−9 Explosives Detection Team Program . . . . . 6−2−4
6−2−7. Search and Rescue . . . . . 6−2−5

Section 3. Distress and Urgency Procedures

6−3−1. Distress and Urgency Communications . . . . . 6−3−1
6−3−2. Obtaining Emergency Assistance . . . . . 6−3−2
6−3−3. Ditching Procedures . . . . . 6−3−3
6−3−4. Special Emergency (Air Piracy) . . . . . 6−3−6
6−3−5. Fuel Dumping . . . . . 6−3−7

Section 4. Two-way Radio Communications Failure

6−4−1. Two-way Radio Communications Failure . . . . . 6−4−1
6−4−2. Transponder Operation During Two-way Communications Failure . . . . . 6−4−2
6−4−3. Reestablishing Radio Contact . . . . . 6−4−2

Section 5. Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Communications

6−5−1. Discrete Emergency Frequency . . . . . 6−5−1
6−5−2. Radio Call Signs . . . . . 6−5−1
6−5−3. ARFF Emergency Hand Signals . . . . . 6−5−1

Chapter 7. Safety of Flight

Section 1. Meteorology

7−1−1. National Weather Service Aviation Products . . . . . 7−1−1
7−1−2. FAA Weather Services . . . . . 7−1−1
7−1−3. Use of Aviation Weather Products . . . . . 7−1−3
7−1−4. Preflight Briefing . . . . . 7−1−6
7−1−5. En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS) . . . . . 7−1−8
7−1−6. Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories . . . . . 7−1−9
7−1−7. Categorical Outlooks . . . . . 7−1−19
7−1−8. Telephone Information Briefing Service (TIBS) . . . . . 7−1−20
7−1−9. Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWEB) (Alaska Only) . . . . . 7−1−20
7−1−10. Inflight Weather Broadcasts . . . . . 7−1−20
7−1−11. Flight Information Services (FIS) . . . . . 7−1−23
7−1−12. Weather Observing Programs . . . . . 7−1−27
7−1−13. Weather Radar Services . . . . . 7−1−34

Paragraph **Page**

7−1−14. ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance . . . . . 7−1−38
7−1−15. Runway Visual Range (RVR) . . . . . 7−1−40
7−1−16. Reporting of Cloud Heights . . . . . 7−1−42
7−1−17. Reporting Prevailing Visibility . . . . . 7−1−42
7−1−18. Estimating Intensity of Rain and Ice Pellets . . . . . 7−1−42
7−1−19. Estimating Intensity of Snow or Drizzle (Based on Visibility) . . . . . 7−1−43
7−1−20. Pilot Weather Reports (PIREPs) . . . . . 7−1−43
7−1−21. PIREPs Relating to Airframe Icing . . . . . 7−1−44
7−1−22. Definitions of Inflight Icing Terms . . . . . 7−1−45
7−1−23. PIREPs Relating to Turbulence . . . . . 7−1−47
7−1−24. Wind Shear PIREPs . . . . . 7−1−48
7−1−25. Clear Air Turbulence (CAT) PIREPs . . . . . 7−1−48
7−1−26. Microbursts . . . . . 7−1−48
7−1−27. PIREPs Relating to Volcanic Ash Activity . . . . . 7−1−58
7−1−28. Thunderstorms . . . . . 7−1−58
7−1−29. Thunderstorm Flying . . . . . 7−1−59
7−1−30. Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) . . . . . 7−1−61
7−1−31. International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Weather Formats . . . . . 7−1−63

Section 2. Altimeter Setting Procedures

7−2−1. General . . . . . 7−2−1
7−2−2. Procedures . . . . . 7−2−1
7−2−3. Altimeter Errors . . . . . 7−2−3
7−2−4. High Barometric Pressure . . . . . 7−2−4
7−2−5. Low Barometric Pressure . . . . . 7−2−4

Section 3. Wake Turbulence

7−3−1. General . . . . . 7−3−1
7−3−2. Vortex Generation . . . . . 7−3−1
7−3−3. Vortex Strength . . . . . 7−3−1
7−3−4. Vortex Behavior . . . . . 7−3−2
7−3−5. Operations Problem Areas . . . . . 7−3−5
7−3−6. Vortex Avoidance Procedures . . . . . 7−3−5
7−3−7. Helicopters . . . . . 7−3−6
7−3−8. Pilot Responsibility . . . . . 7−3−6
7−3−9. Air Traffic Wake Turbulence Separations . . . . . 7−3−7

Section 4. Bird Hazards and Flight Over National Refuges, Parks, and Forests

7−4−1. Migratory Bird Activity . . . . . 7−4−1
7−4−2. Reducing Bird Strike Risks . . . . . 7−4−1
7−4−3. Reporting Bird Strikes . . . . . 7−4−1
7−4−4. Reporting Bird and Other Wildlife Activities . . . . . 7−4−1
7−4−5. Pilot Advisories on Bird and Other Wildlife Hazards . . . . . 7−4−2
7−4−6. Flights Over Charted U.S. Wildlife Refuges, Parks, and Forest Service Areas . 7−4−2

Section 5. Potential Flight Hazards

Paragraph	Page
7−5−1. Accident Cause Factors	7−5−1
7−5−2. VFR in Congested Areas	7−5−1
7−5−3. Obstructions To Flight	7−5−1
7−5−4. Avoid Flight Beneath Unmanned Balloons	7−5−2
7−5−5. Unmanned Aircraft Systems	7−5−2
7−5−6. Mountain Flying	7−5−3
7−5−7. Use of Runway Half−way Signs at Unimproved Airports	7−5−5
7−5−8. Seaplane Safety	7−5−6
7−5−9. Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash	7−5−7
7−5−10. Emergency Airborne Inspection of Other Aircraft	7−5−8
7−5−11. Precipitation Static	7−5−9
7−5−12. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation (Laser) Operations and Reporting Illumination of Aircraft	7−5−10
7−5−13. Flying in Flat Light and White Out Conditions	7−5−10
7−5−14. Operations in Ground Icing Conditions	7−5−12
7−5−15. Avoid Flight in the Vicinity of Thermal Plumes (Smoke Stacks and Cooling Towers)	7−5−13

Section 6. Safety, Accident, and Hazard Reports

7−6−1. Aviation Safety Reporting Program	7−6−1
7−6−2. Aircraft Accident and Incident Reporting	7−6−1
7−6−3. Near Midair Collision Reporting	7−6−2
7−6−4. Unidentified Flying Object (UFO) Reports	7−6−3

Chapter 8. Medical Facts for Pilots

Section 1. Fitness for Flight

8−1−1. Fitness For Flight	8−1−1
8−1−2. Effects of Altitude	8−1−3
8−1−3. Hyperventilation in Flight	8−1−4
8−1−4. Carbon Monoxide Poisoning in Flight	8−1−5
8−1−5. Illusions in Flight	8−1−5
8−1−6. Vision in Flight	8−1−6
8−1−7. Aerobatic Flight	8−1−7
8−1−8. Judgment Aspects of Collision Avoidance	8−1−8

Chapter 9. Aeronautical Charts and Related Publications

Section 1. Types of Charts Available

9−1−1. General	9−1−1
9−1−2. Obtaining Aeronautical Charts	9−1−1
9−1−3. Selected Charts and Products Available	9−1−1
9−1−4. General Description of each Chart Series	9−1−1
9−1−5. Where and How to Get Charts of Foreign Areas	9−1−12

Chapter 10. Helicopter Operations

Section 1. Helicopter IFR Operations

Paragraph	Page
10−1−1. Helicopter Flight Control Systems	10−1−1
10−1−2. Helicopter Instrument Approaches	10−1−3
10−1−3. Helicopter Approach Procedures to VFR Heliports	10−1−5
10−1−4. The Gulf of Mexico Grid System	10−1−6

Section 2. Special Operations

10−2−1. Offshore Helicopter Operations	10−2−1
10−2−2. Helicopter Night VFR Operations	10−2−7
10−2−3. Landing Zone Safety	10−2−10
10−2−4. Emergency Medical Service (EMS) Multiple Helicopter Operations	10−2−16

Appendices

Appendix 1. Bird/Other Wildlife Strike Report	Appendix 1−1
Appendix 2. Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR)	Appendix 2−1
Appendix 3. Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire	Appendix 3−1
Appendix 4. Abbreviations/Acronyms	Appendix 4−1

Pilot/Controller Glossary	PCG−1
Index	I−1

comprising government, academia, and industry, will identify and assess LORAN's potential contributions to required navigation services for the National Airspace System (NAS), and support decisions regarding continued operation of the system. If the government concludes LORAN should not be kept as part of the mix of federally provided radio navigation systems, it will give the users of LORAN reasonable notice so that they will have the opportunity to transition to alternative navigation aids.

1–1–16. VHF Direction Finder

a. The VHF Direction Finder (VHF/DF) is one of the common systems that helps pilots without their being aware of its operation. It is a ground–based radio receiver used by the operator of the ground station. FAA facilities that provide VHF/DF service are identified in the A/FD.

b. The equipment consists of a directional antenna system and a VHF radio receiver.

c. The VHF/DF receiver display indicates the magnetic direction of the aircraft from the ground station each time the aircraft transmits.

d. DF equipment is of particular value in locating lost aircraft and in helping to identify aircraft on radar.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Direction Finding Instrument Approach Procedure, Paragraph 6–2–3

1–1–17. Inertial Reference Unit (IRU), Inertial Navigation System (INS), and Attitude Heading Reference System (AHRS)

a. IRUs are self–contained systems comprised of gyros and accelerometers that provide aircraft attitude (pitch, roll, and heading), position, and velocity information in response to signals resulting from inertial effects on system components. Once aligned with a known position, IRUs continuously calculate position and velocity. IRU position accuracy decays with time. This degradation is known as "drift."

b. INSs combine the components of an IRU with an internal navigation computer. By programming a series of waypoints, these systems will navigate along a predetermined track.

c. AHRSs are electronic devices that provide attitude information to aircraft systems such as weather radar and autopilot, but do not directly compute position information.

1–1–18. Doppler Radar

Doppler Radar is a semiautomatic self–contained dead reckoning navigation system (radar sensor plus computer) which is not continuously dependent on information derived from ground based or external aids. The system employs radar signals to detect and measure ground speed and drift angle, using the aircraft compass system as its directional reference. Doppler is less accurate than INS, however, and the use of an external reference is required for periodic updates if acceptable position accuracy is to be achieved on long range flights.

1–1–19. Global Positioning System (GPS)

a. System Overview

1. System Description. The Global Positioning System is a satellite–based radio navigation system, which broadcasts a signal that is used by receivers to determine precise position anywhere in the world. The receiver tracks multiple satellites and determines a pseudorange measurement that is then used to determine the user location. A minimum of four satellites is necessary to establish an accurate three–dimensional position. The Department of Defense (DOD) is responsible for operating the GPS satellite constellation and monitors the GPS satellites to ensure proper operation. Every satellite's orbital parameters (ephemeris data) are sent to each satellite for broadcast as part of the data message embedded in the GPS signal. The GPS coordinate system is the Cartesian earth–centered earth–fixed coordinates as specified in the World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS–84).

2. System Availability and Reliability

(a) The status of GPS satellites is broadcast as part of the data message transmitted by the GPS satellites. GPS status information is also available by means of the U.S. Coast Guard navigation information service: (703) 313–5907, Internet: **http://www.navcen.uscg.gov/**. Additionally, satellite status is available through the Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) system.

(b) The operational status of GNSS operations depends upon the type of equipment being used. For GPS–only equipment TSO–C129(a), the operational status of nonprecision approach capability for flight planning purposes is provided through a prediction program that is embedded in the receiver or provided separately.

3. Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM). When GNSS equipment is not using integrity information from WAAS or LAAS, the GPS navigation receiver using RAIM provides GPS signal integrity monitoring. RAIM is necessary since delays of up to two hours can occur before an erroneous satellite transmission can be detected and corrected by the satellite control segment. The RAIM function is also referred to as fault detection. Another capability, fault exclusion, refers to the ability of the receiver to exclude a failed satellite from the position solution and is provided by some GPS receivers and by WAAS receivers.

4. The GPS receiver verifies the integrity (usability) of the signals received from the GPS constellation through receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM) to determine if a satellite is providing corrupted information. At least one satellite, in addition to those required for navigation, must be in view for the receiver to perform the RAIM function; thus, RAIM needs a minimum of 5 satellites in view, or 4 satellites and a barometric altimeter (baro–aiding) to detect an integrity anomaly. [Baro–aiding satisfies the RAIM requirement in lieu of a fifth satellite.] For receivers capable of doing so, RAIM needs 6 satellites in view (or 5 satellites with baro–aiding) to isolate the corrupt satellite signal and remove it from the navigation solution. Baro–aiding is a method of augmenting the GPS integrity solution by using a nonsatellite input source. GPS derived altitude should not be relied upon to determine aircraft altitude since the vertical error can be quite large and no integrity is provided. To ensure that baro–aiding is available, the current altimeter setting must be entered into the receiver as described in the operating manual.

5. RAIM messages vary somewhat between receivers; however, generally there are two types. One type indicates that there are not enough satellites available to provide RAIM integrity monitoring and another type indicates that the RAIM integrity monitor has detected a potential error that exceeds the limit for the current phase of flight. Without RAIM capability, the pilot has no assurance of the accuracy of the GPS position.

6. Selective Availability. Selective Availability (SA) is a method by which the accuracy of GPS is intentionally degraded. This feature is designed to deny hostile use of precise GPS positioning data. SA was discontinued on May 1, 2000, but many GPS receivers are designed to assume that SA is still active. New receivers may take advantage of the discontinuance of SA based on the performance values in ICAO Annex 10, and do not need to be designed to operate outside of that performance.

7. The GPS constellation of 24 satellites is designed so that a minimum of five is always observable by a user anywhere on earth. The receiver uses data from a minimum of four satellites above the mask angle (the lowest angle above the horizon at which it can use a satellite).

8. The DOD declared initial operational capability (IOC) of the U.S. GPS on December 8, 1993. The FAA has granted approval for U.S. civil operators to use properly certified GPS equipment as a primary means of navigation in oceanic airspace and certain remote areas. Properly certified GPS equipment may be used as a supplemental means of IFR navigation for domestic en route, terminal operations, and certain instrument approach procedures (IAPs). This approval permits the use of GPS in a manner that is consistent with current navigation requirements as well as approved air carrier operations specifications.

b. VFR Use of GPS

1. GPS navigation has become a great asset to VFR pilots, providing increased navigation capability and enhanced situational awareness, while reducing operating costs due to greater ease in flying direct routes. While GPS has many benefits to the VFR pilot, care must be exercised to ensure that system capabilities are not exceeded.

2. Types of receivers used for GPS navigation under VFR are varied, from a full IFR installation being used to support a VFR flight, to a VFR only installation (in either a VFR or IFR capable aircraft) to a hand–held receiver. The limitations of each type of receiver installation or use must be understood by the pilot to avoid misusing navigation information. (See TBL 1–1–6.) In all cases, VFR pilots should never rely solely on one system of navigation. GPS

navigation must be integrated with other forms of electronic navigation (when possible), as well as pilotage and dead reckoning. Only through the integration of these techniques can the VFR pilot ensure accuracy in navigation.

3. Some critical concerns in VFR use of GPS include RAIM capability, database currency and antenna location.

(a) RAIM Capability. Many VFR GPS receivers and all hand–held units have no RAIM alerting capability. Loss of the required number of satellites in view, or the detection of a position error, cannot be displayed to the pilot by such receivers. In receivers with no RAIM capability, no alert would be provided to the pilot that the navigation solution had deteriorated, and an undetected navigation error could occur. A systematic cross–check with other navigation techniques would identify this failure, and prevent a serious deviation. See subparagraphs a4 and a5 for more information on RAIM.

(b) Database Currency

(1) In many receivers, an up–datable database is used for navigation fixes, airports, and instrument procedures. These databases must be maintained to the current update for IFR operation, but no such requirement exists for VFR use.

(2) However, in many cases, the database drives a moving map display which indicates Special Use Airspace and the various classes of airspace, in addition to other operational information. Without a current database the moving map display may be outdated and offer erroneous information to VFR pilots wishing to fly around critical airspace areas, such as a Restricted Area or a Class B airspace segment. Numerous pilots have ventured into airspace they were trying to avoid by using an outdated database. If you don't have a current database in the receiver, disregard the moving map display for critical navigation decisions.

(3) In addition, waypoints are added, removed, relocated, or re–named as required to meet operational needs. When using GPS to navigate relative to a named fix, a current database must be used to properly locate a named waypoint. Without the update, it is the pilot's responsibility to verify the waypoint location referencing to an official current source, such as the Airport/Facility Directory, Sectional Chart, or En Route Chart.

(c) Antenna Location

(1) In many VFR installations of GPS receivers, antenna location is more a matter of convenience than performance. In IFR installations, care is exercised to ensure that an adequate clear view is provided for the antenna to see satellites. If an alternate location is used, some portion of the aircraft may block the view of the antenna, causing a greater opportunity to lose navigation signal.

(2) This is especially true in the case of hand–helds. The use of hand–held receivers for VFR operations is a growing trend, especially among rental pilots. Typically, suction cups are used to place the GPS antennas on the inside of cockpit windows. While this method has great utility, the antenna location is limited to the cockpit or cabin only and is rarely optimized to provide a clear view of available satellites. Consequently, signal losses may occur in certain situations of aircraft–satellite geometry, causing a loss of navigation signal. These losses, coupled with a lack of RAIM capability, could present erroneous position and navigation information with no warning to the pilot.

(3) While the use of a hand–held GPS for VFR operations is not limited by regulation, modification of the aircraft, such as installing a panel– or yoke–mounted holder, is governed by 14 CFR Part 43. Consult with your mechanic to ensure compliance with the regulation, and a safe installation.

4. As a result of these and other concerns, here are some tips for using GPS for VFR operations:

(a) Always check to see if your unit has RAIM capability. If no RAIM capability exists, be suspicious of your GPS position when any disagreement exists with the position derived from other radio navigation systems, pilotage, or dead reckoning.

(b) Check the currency of the database, if any. If expired, update the database using the current revision. If an update of an expired database is not possible, disregard any moving map display of airspace for critical navigation decisions. Be aware that named waypoints may no longer exist or may have been relocated since the database expired. At a minimum, the waypoints planned to be used should be checked against a current official source, such as the Airport/Facility Directory, or a Sectional Aeronautical Chart.

(c) While hand–helds can provide excellent navigation capability to VFR pilots, be prepared for intermittent loss of navigation signal, possibly with no RAIM warning to the pilot. If mounting the receiver in the aircraft, be sure to comply with 14 CFR Part 43.

(d) Plan flights carefully before taking off. If you wish to navigate to user–defined waypoints, enter them before flight, not on–the–fly. Verify your planned flight against a current source, such as a current sectional chart. There have been cases in which one pilot used waypoints created by another pilot that were not where the pilot flying was expecting. This generally resulted in a navigation error. Minimize head–down time in the aircraft and keep a sharp lookout for traffic, terrain, and obstacles. Just a few minutes of preparation and planning on the ground will make a great difference in the air.

(e) Another way to minimize head–down time is to become very familiar with your receiver's operation. Most receivers are not intuitive. The pilot must take the time to learn the various keystrokes, knob functions, and displays that are used in the operation of the receiver. Some manufacturers provide computer–based tutorials or simulations of their receivers. Take the time to learn about your particular unit before you try to use it in flight.

5. In summary, be careful not to rely on GPS to solve all your VFR navigational problems. Unless an IFR receiver is installed in accordance with IFR requirements, no standard of accuracy or integrity has been assured. While the practicality of GPS is compelling, the fact remains that only the pilot can navigate the aircraft, and GPS is just one of the pilot's tools to do the job.

c. VFR Waypoints

1. VFR waypoints provide VFR pilots with a supplementary tool to assist with position awareness while navigating visually in aircraft equipped with area navigation receivers. VFR waypoints should be used as a tool to supplement current navigation procedures. The uses of VFR waypoints include providing navigational aids for pilots unfamiliar with an area, waypoint definition of existing reporting points, enhanced navigation in and around Class B and Class C airspace, and enhanced navigation around Special Use Airspace. VFR pilots should rely on appropriate and current aeronautical charts published specifically for visual navigation. If operating in a terminal area, pilots should take advantage of the Terminal Area Chart available for that area, if published. The use of VFR waypoints does not relieve the pilot of any responsibility to comply with the operational requirements of 14 CFR Part 91.

2. VFR waypoint names (for computer–entry and flight plans) consist of five letters beginning with the letters "VP" and are retrievable from navigation databases. The VFR waypoint names are not intended to be pronounceable, and they are not for use in ATC communications. On VFR charts, stand–alone VFR waypoints will be portrayed using the same four–point star symbol used for IFR waypoints. VFR waypoints collocated with visual check points on the chart will be identified by small magenta flag symbols. VFR waypoints collocated with visual check points will be pronounceable based on the name of the visual check point and may be used for ATC communications. Each VFR waypoint name will appear in parentheses adjacent to the geographic location on the chart. Latitude/longitude data for all established VFR waypoints may be found in the appropriate regional Airport/Facility Directory (A/FD).

3. VFR waypoints shall not be used to plan flights under IFR. VFR waypoints will not be recognized by the IFR system and will be rejected for IFR routing purposes.

4. When filing VFR flight plans, pilots may use the five letter identifier as a waypoint in the route of flight section if there is an intended course change at that point or if used to describe the planned route of flight. This VFR filing would be similar to how a VOR would be used in a route of flight. Pilots must use the VFR waypoints only when operating under VFR conditions.

5. Any VFR waypoints intended for use during a flight should be loaded into the receiver while on the ground and prior to departure. Once airborne, pilots should avoid programming routes or VFR waypoint chains into their receivers.

6. Pilots should be especially vigilant for other traffic while operating near VFR waypoints. The same effort to see and avoid other aircraft near VFR waypoints will be necessary, as was the case with VORs and NDBs in the past. In fact, the increased accuracy of navigation through the use of GPS will

TBL 1–1–6

GPS Approval Required/Authorized Use

Equipment Type[1]	Installation Approval Required	Operational Approval Required	IFR En Route[2]	IFR Terminal[2]	IFR Approach[3]	Oceanic Remote	In Lieu of ADF and/or DME[3]
Hand held[4]	X[5]						
VFR Panel Mount[4]	X						
IFR En Route and Terminal	X	X	X	X			X
IFR Oceanic/ Remote	X	X	X	X		X	X
IFR En Route, Terminal, and Approach	X	X	X	X	X		X

NOTE–

[1]*To determine equipment approvals and limitations, refer to the AFM, AFM supplements, or pilot guides.*

[2]*Requires verification of data for correctness if database is expired.*

[3]*Requires current database or verification that the procedure has not been amended since the expiration of the database.*

[4]*VFR and hand–held GPS systems are not authorized for IFR navigation, instrument approaches, or as a primary instrument flight reference. During IFR operations they may be considered only an aid to situational awareness.*

[5]*Hand–held receivers require no approval. However, any aircraft modification to support the hand–held receiver; i.e., installation of an external antenna or a permanent mounting bracket, does require approval.*

3. The GPS Approach Overlay Program is an authorization for pilots to use GPS avionics under IFR for flying designated nonprecision instrument approach procedures, except LOC, LDA, and simplified directional facility (SDF) procedures. These procedures are now identified by the name of the procedure and "or GPS" (e.g., VOR/DME or GPS RWY 15). Other previous types of overlays have either been converted to this format or replaced with stand–alone procedures. Only approaches contained in the current onboard navigation database are authorized. The navigation database may contain information about nonoverlay approach procedures that is intended to be used to enhance position orientation, generally by providing a map, while flying these approaches using conventional NAVAIDs. This approach information should not be confused with a GPS overlay approach (see the receiver operating manual, AFM, or AFM Supplement for details on how to identify these approaches in the navigation database).

NOTE–

Overlay approaches are predicated upon the design criteria of the ground–based NAVAID used as the basis of the approach. As such, they do not adhere to the design criteria described in paragraph 5–4–5k, Area Navigation (RNAV) Instrument Approach Charts, for stand–alone GPS approaches.

4. GPS IFR approach operations can be conducted as soon as proper avionics systems are installed and the following requirements are met:

(a) The authorization to use GPS to fly instrument approaches is limited to U.S. airspace.

(b) The use of GPS in any other airspace must be expressly authorized by the FAA Administrator.

(c) GPS instrument approach operations outside the U.S. must be authorized by the appropriate sovereign authority.

f. Equipment and Database Requirements

1. Authorization to fly approaches under IFR using GPS avionics systems requires that:

(a) A pilot use GPS avionics with TSO–C129, or equivalent, authorization in class A1, B1, B3, C1, or C3; and

(b) All approach procedures to be flown must be retrievable from the current airborne navigation database supplied by the TSO–C129 equipment manufacturer or other FAA approved source. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints.

(c) Prior to using a procedure or waypoint retrieved from the airborne navigation database, the pilot should verify the validity of the database. This verification should include the following preflight and in–flight steps:

(1) Preflight:

[a] Determine the date of database issuance, and verify that the date/time of proposed use is before the expiration date/time.

[b] Verify that the database provider has not published a notice limiting the use of the specific waypoint or procedure.

(2) Inflight:

[a] Determine that the waypoints and transition names coincide with names found on the procedure chart. Do not use waypoints, which do not exactly match the spelling shown on published procedure charts.

[b] Determine that the waypoints are generally logical in location, in the correct order, and that their orientation to each other is as found on the procedure chart, both laterally and vertically.

NOTE–
There is no specific requirement to check each waypoint latitude and longitude, type of waypoint and/or altitude constraint, only the general relationship of waypoints in the procedure, or the logic of an individual waypoint's location.

[c] If the cursory check of procedure logic or individual waypoint location, specified in [b] above, indicates a potential error, do not use the retrieved procedure or waypoint until a verification of latitude and longitude, waypoint type, and altitude constraints indicate full conformity with the published data.

g. GPS Approach Procedures

As the production of stand–alone GPS approaches has progressed, many of the original overlay approaches have been replaced with stand–alone procedures specifically designed for use by GPS systems. The title of the remaining GPS overlay procedures has been revised on the approach chart to "or GPS" (e.g., VOR or GPS RWY 24). Therefore, all the approaches that can be used by GPS now contain "GPS" in the title (e.g., "VOR or GPS RWY 24," "GPS RWY 24," or "RNAV (GPS) RWY 24"). During these GPS approaches, underlying ground–based NAVAIDs are not required to be operational and associated aircraft avionics need not be installed, operational, turned on or monitored (monitoring of the underlying approach is suggested when equipment is available and functional). Existing overlay approaches may be requested using the GPS title, such as "GPS RWY 24" for the VOR or GPS RWY 24.

NOTE–
Any required alternate airport must have an approved instrument approach procedure other than GPS that is anticipated to be operational and available at the estimated time of arrival, and which the aircraft is equipped to fly.

h. GPS NOTAMs/Aeronautical Information

1. GPS satellite outages are issued as GPS NOTAMs both domestically and internationally. However, the effect of an outage on the intended operation cannot be determined unless the pilot has a RAIM availability prediction program which allows excluding a satellite which is predicted to be out of service based on the NOTAM information.

2. The term UNRELIABLE is used in conjunction with GPS NOTAMs. The term UNRELIABLE is an advisory to pilots indicating the expected level of service may not be available. GPS operation may be NOTAMed UNRELIABLE due to testing or anomalies. Air Traffic Control will advise pilots requesting a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach of GPS UNRELIABLE for:

(a) NOTAMs not contained in the ATIS broadcast.

(b) Pilot reports of GPS anomalies received within the preceding 15 minutes.

3. Civilian pilots may obtain GPS RAIM availability information for nonprecision approach procedures by specifically requesting GPS aeronautical information from an Automated Flight Service Station during preflight briefings. GPS RAIM aeronautical information can be obtained for a period of 3 hours (ETA hour and 1 hour before to 1 hour after the ETA hour) or a 24 hour time frame at a particular airport. FAA briefers will provide RAIM information for a period of 1 hour before to 1 hour after the ETA, unless a specific time frame is requested by the pilot. If flying a published GPS departure, a RAIM prediction should also be requested for the departure airport.

4. The military provides airfield specific GPS RAIM NOTAMs for nonprecision approach procedures at military airfields. The RAIM outages are issued as M–series NOTAMs and may be obtained for up to 24 hours from the time of request.

5. Receiver manufacturers and/or database suppliers may supply "NOTAM" type information concerning database errors. Pilots should check these sources, when available, to ensure that they have the most current information concerning their electronic database.

i. Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM)

1. RAIM outages may occur due to an insufficient number of satellites or due to unsuitable satellite geometry which causes the error in the position solution to become too large. Loss of satellite reception and RAIM warnings may occur due to aircraft dynamics (changes in pitch or bank angle). Antenna location on the aircraft, satellite position relative to the horizon, and aircraft attitude may affect reception of one or more satellites. Since the relative positions of the satellites are constantly changing, prior experience with the airport does not guarantee reception at all times, and RAIM availability should always be checked.

2. If RAIM is not available, another type of navigation and approach system must be used, another destination selected, or the trip delayed until RAIM is predicted to be available on arrival. On longer flights, pilots should consider rechecking the RAIM prediction for the destination during the flight. This may provide early indications that an unscheduled satellite outage has occurred since takeoff.

3. If a RAIM failure/status annunciation occurs prior to the final approach waypoint (FAWP), the approach should not be completed since GPS may no longer provide the required accuracy. The receiver performs a RAIM prediction by 2 NM prior to the FAWP to ensure that RAIM is available at the FAWP as a condition for entering the approach mode. **The pilot should ensure that the receiver has sequenced from "Armed" to "Approach" prior to the FAWP** (normally occurs 2 NM prior). Failure to sequence may be an indication of the detection of a satellite anomaly, failure to arm the receiver (if required), or other problems which preclude completing the approach.

4. If the receiver does not sequence into the approach mode or a RAIM failure/status annunciation occurs prior to the FAWP, the pilot should not descend to Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA), but should proceed to the missed approach waypoint (MAWP) via the FAWP, perform a missed approach, and contact ATC as soon as practical. Refer to the receiver operating manual for specific indications and instructions associated with loss of RAIM prior to the FAF.

5. If a RAIM failure occurs after the FAWP, the receiver is allowed to continue operating without an annunciation for up to 5 minutes to allow completion of the approach (see receiver operating manual). **If the RAIM flag/status annunciation appears after the FAWP, the missed approach should be executed immediately.**

j. Waypoints

1. GPS approaches make use of both fly–over and fly–by waypoints. Fly–by waypoints are used when an aircraft should begin a turn to the next course prior to reaching the waypoint separating the two route segments. This is known as turn anticipation and is compensated for in the airspace and terrain clearances. Approach waypoints, except for the MAWP and the missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP), are normally fly–by waypoints. Fly–over waypoints are used when the aircraft must fly over the point prior to starting a turn. New approach charts depict fly–over waypoints as a circled waypoint symbol. Overlay approach charts and some early stand alone GPS approach charts may not reflect this convention.

2. Since GPS receivers are basically "To–To" navigators, they must always be navigating to a defined point. On overlay approaches, if no pronounceable five–character name is published for an approach waypoint or fix, it was given a database identifier consisting of letters and numbers. These points will appear in the list of waypoints in the approach procedure database, but may not appear on the approach chart. A point used for the purpose of defining the navigation track for an airborne computer system (i.e., GPS or FMS) is called a Computer Navigation Fix (CNF). CNFs include unnamed DME fixes, beginning and ending points of DME arcs and sensor final approach fixes (FAFs) on some GPS overlay approaches. To aid in the approach chart/database correlation process, the FAA has begun a program to assign five–letter names to CNFs and to chart CNFs on various National Oceanic Service aeronautical products. These CNFs are not to be used for any air traffic control (ATC) application, such as holding for which the fix has not already been assessed. CNFs will be charted to distinguish them from conventional reporting points, fixes, intersections, and waypoints. The CNF name will be enclosed in parenthesis, e.g., (MABEE), and the name will be placed next to the CNF it defines. If the CNF is not at an existing point defined by means such as crossing radials or radial/DME, the point will be indicated by an "X." The CNF name will not be used in filing a flight plan or in aircraft/ATC communications. Use current phraseology, e.g., facility name, radial, distance, to describe these fixes.

3. Unnamed waypoints in the database will be uniquely identified for each airport but may be repeated for another airport (e.g., RW36 will be used at each airport with a runway 36 but will be at the same location for all approaches at a given airport).

4. The runway threshold waypoint, which is normally the MAWP, may have a five letter identifier (e.g., SNEEZ) or be coded as RW## (e.g., RW36, RW36L). Those thresholds which are coded as five letter identifiers are being changed to the RW## designation. This may cause the approach chart and database to differ until all changes are complete. The runway threshold waypoint is also used as the center of the Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA) on most GPS approaches. MAWPs not located at the threshold will have a five letter identifier.

k. Position Orientation

As with most RNAV systems, pilots should pay particular attention to position orientation while using GPS. Distance and track information are provided to the next active waypoint, not to a fixed navigation aid. Receivers may sequence when the pilot is not flying along an active route, such as when being vectored or deviating for weather, due to the proximity to another waypoint in the route. This can be prevented by placing the receiver in the nonsequencing mode. When the receiver is in the nonsequencing mode, bearing and distance are provided to the selected waypoint and the receiver will not sequence to the next waypoint in the route until placed back in the auto sequence mode or the pilot selects a different waypoint. On overlay approaches, the pilot may have to compute the along–track distance to stepdown fixes and other points due to the receiver showing along–track distance to the next waypoint rather than DME to the VOR or ILS ground station.

l. Conventional Versus GPS Navigation Data

There may be slight differences between the course information portrayed on navigational charts and a GPS navigation display when flying authorized GPS instrument procedures or along an airway. All magnetic tracks defined by any conventional navigation aids are determined by the application of the station magnetic variation. In contrast, GPS RNAV systems may use an algorithm, which applies the local magnetic variation and may produce small differences in the displayed course. However, both methods of navigation should produce the same desired ground track when using approved, IFR navigation system. Should significant differences between the approach chart and the GPS avionics' application of the navigation database arise, the published approach chart, supplemented by NOTAMs, holds precedence.

Due to the GPS avionics' computation of great circle courses, and the variations in magnetic variation, the bearing to the next waypoint and the course from the last waypoint (if available) may not be exactly 180° apart when long distances are involved. Variations in distances will occur since GPS distance–to–waypoint values are along–track distances (ATD) computed to the next waypoint and the DME values published on underlying procedures are slant–range distances

measured to the station. This difference increases with aircraft altitude and proximity to the NAVAID.

m. Departures and Instrument Departure Procedures (DPs)

The GPS receiver must be set to terminal (±1 NM) CDI sensitivity and the navigation routes contained in the database in order to fly published IFR charted departures and DPs. Terminal RAIM should be automatically provided by the receiver. (Terminal RAIM for departure may not be available unless the waypoints are part of the active flight plan rather than proceeding direct to the first destination.) Certain segments of a DP may require some manual intervention by the pilot, especially when radar vectored to a course or required to intercept a specific course to a waypoint. The database may not contain all of the transitions or departures from all runways and some GPS receivers do not contain DPs in the database. It is necessary that helicopter procedures be flown at 70 knots or less since helicopter departure procedures and missed approaches use a 20:1 obstacle clearance surface (OCS), which is double the fixed−wing OCS, and turning areas are based on this speed as well.

n. Flying GPS Approaches

1. Determining which area of the TAA the aircraft will enter when flying a "T" with a TAA must be accomplished using the bearing and distance to the IF(IAF). This is most critical when entering the TAA in the vicinity of the extended runway centerline and determining whether you will be entering the right or left base area. Once inside the TAA, all sectors and stepdowns are based on the bearing and distance to the IAF for that area, which the aircraft should be proceeding direct to at that time, unless on vectors. (See FIG 5−4−3 and FIG 5−4−4.)

2. Pilots should fly the full approach from an Initial Approach Waypoint (IAWP) or feeder fix unless specifically cleared otherwise. Randomly joining an approach at an intermediate fix does not assure terrain clearance.

3. When an approach has been loaded in the flight plan, GPS receivers will give an "arm" annunciation 30 NM straight line distance from the airport/heliport reference point. Pilots should arm the approach mode at this time, if it has not already been armed (some receivers arm automatically). Without arming, the receiver will not change from en route CDI and RAIM sensitivity of ±5 NM either side of centerline to ±1 NM terminal sensitivity. Where the IAWP is inside this 30 mile point, a CDI sensitivity change will occur once the approach mode is armed and the aircraft is inside 30 NM. Where the IAWP is beyond 30 NM from the airport/heliport reference point, CDI sensitivity will not change until the aircraft is within 30 miles of the airport/heliport reference point even if the approach is armed earlier. Feeder route obstacle clearance is predicated on the receiver being in terminal (±1 NM) CDI sensitivity and RAIM within 30 NM of the airport/heliport reference point, therefore, the receiver should always be armed (if required) not later than the 30 NM annunciation.

4. The pilot must be aware of what bank angle/turn rate the particular receiver uses to compute turn anticipation, and whether wind and airspeed are included in the receiver's calculations. This information should be in the receiver operating manual. Over or under banking the turn onto the final approach course may significantly delay getting on course and may result in high descent rates to achieve the next segment altitude.

5. When within 2 NM of the FAWP with the approach mode armed, the approach mode will switch to active, which results in RAIM changing to approach sensitivity and a change in CDI sensitivity. Beginning 2 NM prior to the FAWP, the full scale CDI sensitivity will smoothly change from ±1 NM to ±0.3 NM at the FAWP. As sensitivity changes from ±1 NM to ±0.3 NM approaching the FAWP, with the CDI not centered, the corresponding increase in CDI displacement may give the impression that the aircraft is moving further away from the intended course even though it is on an acceptable intercept heading. Referencing the digital track displacement information (cross track error), if it is available in the approach mode, may help the pilot remain position oriented in this situation. Being established on the final approach course prior to the beginning of the sensitivity change at 2 NM will help prevent problems in interpreting the CDI display during ramp down. Therefore, requesting or accepting vectors which will cause the aircraft to intercept the final approach course within 2 NM of the FAWP is not recommended.

6. When receiving vectors to final, most receiver operating manuals suggest placing the receiver in the nonsequencing mode on the FAWP

and manually setting the course. This provides an extended final approach course in cases where the aircraft is vectored onto the final approach course outside of any existing segment which is aligned with the runway. Assigned altitudes must be maintained until established on a published segment of the approach. Required altitudes at waypoints outside the FAWP or stepdown fixes must be considered. Calculating the distance to the FAWP may be required in order to descend at the proper location.

7. Overriding an automatically selected sensitivity during an approach will cancel the approach mode annunciation. If the approach mode is not armed by 2 NM prior to the FAWP, the approach mode will not become active at 2 NM prior to the FAWP, and the equipment will flag. In these conditions, the RAIM and CDI sensitivity will not ramp down, and the pilot should not descend to MDA, but fly to the MAWP and execute a missed approach. The approach active annunciator and/or the receiver should be checked to ensure the approach mode is active prior to the FAWP.

8. Do not attempt to fly an approach unless the procedure in the on–board database is current and identified as "GPS" on the approach chart. The navigation database may contain information about nonoverlay approach procedures that is intended to be used to enhance position orientation, generally by providing a map, while flying these approaches using conventional NAVAIDs. This approach information should not be confused with a GPS overlay approach (see the receiver operating manual, AFM, or AFM Supplement for details on how to identify these procedures in the navigation database). Flying point to point on the approach does not assure compliance with the published approach procedure. The proper RAIM sensitivity will not be available and the CDI sensitivity will not automatically change to ±0.3 NM. Manually setting CDI sensitivity does not automatically change the RAIM sensitivity on some receivers. Some existing nonprecision approach procedures cannot be coded for use with GPS and will not be available as overlays.

9. Pilots should pay particular attention to the exact operation of their GPS receivers for performing holding patterns and in the case of overlay approaches, operations such as procedure turns. These procedures may require manual intervention by the pilot to stop the sequencing of waypoints by the receiver and to resume automatic GPS navigation sequencing once the maneuver is complete. The same waypoint may appear in the route of flight more than once consecutively (e.g., IAWP, FAWP, MAHWP on a procedure turn). Care must be exercised to ensure that the receiver is sequenced to the appropriate waypoint for the segment of the procedure being flown, especially if one or more fly–overs are skipped (e.g., FAWP rather than IAWP if the procedure turn is not flown). The pilot may have to sequence past one or more fly–overs of the same waypoint in order to start GPS automatic sequencing at the proper place in the sequence of waypoints.

10. Incorrect inputs into the GPS receiver are especially critical during approaches. In some cases, an incorrect entry can cause the receiver to leave the approach mode.

11. A fix on an overlay approach identified by a DME fix will not be in the waypoint sequence on the GPS receiver unless there is a published name assigned to it. When a name is assigned, the along track to the waypoint may be zero rather than the DME stated on the approach chart. The pilot should be alert for this on any overlay procedure where the original approach used DME.

12. If a visual descent point (VDP) is published, it will not be included in the sequence of waypoints. Pilots are expected to use normal piloting techniques for beginning the visual descent, such as ATD.

13. Unnamed stepdown fixes in the final approach segment will not be coded in the waypoint sequence of the aircraft's navigation database and must be identified using ATD. Stepdown fixes in the final approach segment of RNAV (GPS) approaches are being named, in addition to being identified by ATD. However, since most GPS avionics do not accommodate waypoints between the FAF and MAP, even when the waypoint is named, the waypoints for these stepdown fixes may not appear in the sequence of waypoints in the navigation database. Pilots must continue to identify these stepdown fixes using ATD.

o. Missed Approach

1. A GPS missed approach requires pilot action to sequence the receiver past the MAWP to the missed approach portion of the procedure. The pilot must be thoroughly familiar with the activation procedure for the particular GPS receiver installed in the aircraft and must **initiate appropriate action after the MAWP.** Activating the missed approach

prior to the MAWP will cause CDI sensitivity to immediately change to terminal (±1NM) sensitivity and the receiver will continue to navigate to the MAWP. The receiver will not sequence past the MAWP. Turns should not begin prior to the MAWP. If the missed approach is not activated, the GPS receiver will display an extension of the inbound final approach course and the ATD will increase from the MAWP until it is manually sequenced after crossing the MAWP.

2. Missed approach routings in which the first track is via a course rather than direct to the next waypoint **require additional action by the pilot** to set the course. Being familiar with all of the inputs required is especially critical during this phase of flight.

p. GPS Familiarization

Pilots should practice GPS approaches under visual meteorological conditions (VMC) until thoroughly proficient with all aspects of their equipment (receiver and installation) prior to attempting flight by IFR in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC). Some of the areas which the pilot should practice are:

1. Utilizing the receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM) prediction function;

2. Inserting a DP into the flight plan, including setting terminal CDI sensitivity, if required, and the conditions under which terminal RAIM is available for departure (some receivers are not DP or STAR capable);

3. Programming the destination airport;

4. Programming and flying the overlay approaches (especially procedure turns and arcs);

5. Changing to another approach after selecting an approach;

6. Programming and flying "direct" missed approaches;

7. Programming and flying "routed" missed approaches;

8. Entering, flying, and exiting holding patterns, particularly on overlay approaches with a second waypoint in the holding pattern;

9. Programming and flying a "route" from a holding pattern;

10. Programming and flying an approach with radar vectors to the intermediate segment;

11. Indication of the actions required for RAIM failure both before and after the FAWP; and

12. Programming a radial and distance from a VOR (often used in departure instructions).

1–1–20. Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

a. General

1. The FAA developed the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) to improve the accuracy, integrity and availability of GPS signals. WAAS will allow GPS to be used, as the aviation navigation system, from takeoff through Category I precision approach when it is complete. WAAS is a critical component of the FAA's strategic objective for a seamless satellite navigation system for civil aviation, improving capacity and safety.

2. The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has defined Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) for satellite–based augmentation systems (SBAS) such as WAAS. Japan and Europe are building similar systems that are planned to be interoperable with WAAS: EGNOS, the European Geostationary Navigation Overlay System, and MSAS, the Japan Multifunctional Transport Satellite (MTSAT) Satellite–based Augmentation System. The merging of these systems will create a worldwide seamless navigation capability similar to GPS but with greater accuracy, availability and integrity.

3. Unlike traditional ground–based navigation aids, WAAS will cover a more extensive service area. Precisely surveyed wide–area ground reference stations (WRS) are linked to form the U.S. WAAS network. Signals from the GPS satellites are monitored by these WRSs to determine satellite clock and ephemeris corrections and to model the propagation effects of the ionosphere. Each station in the network relays the data to a wide–area master station (WMS) where the correction information is computed. A correction message is prepared and uplinked to a geostationary satellite (GEO) via a ground uplink station (GUS). The message is then broadcast on the same frequency as GPS (L1, 1575.42 MHz) to WAAS receivers within the broadcast coverage area of the WAAS GEO.

4. In addition to providing the correction signal, the WAAS GEO provides an additional pseudorange measurement to the aircraft receiver, improving the availability of GPS by providing, in effect, an additional GPS satellite in view. The integrity of GPS is improved through real–time monitoring, and the accuracy is improved by providing differential corrections to reduce errors. The performance improvement is sufficient to enable approach procedures with GPS/WAAS glide paths (vertical guidance).

5. The FAA has completed installation of 25 WRSs, 2 WMSs, 4 GUSs, and the required terrestrial communications to support the WAAS network. Prior to the commissioning of the WAAS for public use, the FAA has been conducting a series of test and validation activities. Enhancements to the initial phase of WAAS will include additional master and reference stations, communication satellites, and transmission frequencies as needed.

6. GNSS navigation, including GPS and WAAS, is referenced to the WGS–84 coordinate system. It should only be used where the Aeronautical Information Publications (including electronic data and aeronautical charts) conform to WGS–84 or equivalent. Other countries civil aviation authorities may impose additional limitations on the use of their SBAS systems.

b. Instrument Approach Capabilities

1. A new class of approach procedures which provide vertical guidance, but which do not meet the ICAO Annex 10 requirements for precision approaches has been developed to support satellite navigation use for aviation applications worldwide. These new procedures called Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV), are defined in ICAO Annex 6, and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV procedures presently being flown with barometric vertical navigation (Baro–VNAV). These approaches provide vertical guidance, but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. Properly certified WAAS receivers will be able to fly these LNAV/VNAV procedures using a WAAS electronic glide path, which eliminates the errors that can be introduced by using Barometric altimetery.

2. A new type of APV approach procedure, in addition to LNAV/VNAV, is being implemented to take advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by WAAS. This WAAS generated angular guidance allows the use of the same TERPS approach criteria used for ILS approaches. The resulting approach procedure minima, titled LPV (localizer performance with vertical guidance), may have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown with visibility minimums as low as $^1/_2$ mile, when the terrain and airport infrastructure support the lowest minima. LPV minima is published on the RNAV (GPS) approach charts (see paragraph 5–4–5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts).

3. A new nonprecision WAAS approach, called Localizer Performance (LP) is being added in locations where the terrain or obstructions do not allow publication of vertically guided LPV procedures. This new approach takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors provided by WAAS to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS Localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface.

NOTE–
WAAS receivers certified prior to TSO C–145b and TSO C–146b,even if they have LPV capability, do not contain LP capability unless the receiver has been upgraded. Receivers capable of flying LP procedures must contain a statement in the Flight Manual Supplement or Approved Supplemental Flight Manual stating that the receiver has LP capability, as well as the capability for the other WAAS and GPS approach procedure types.

4. WAAS provides a level of service that supports all phases of flight, including RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV and LPV lines of minima, within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have a lower availability of vertical guidance.

c. General Requirements

1. WAAS avionics must be certified in accordance with Technical Standard Order (TSO) TSO–C145A, Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS); or TSO–146A, Stand–Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS), and installed in accordance with Advisory Circular (AC) 20–130A, Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors, or AC 20–138A, Airworthiness

+/–0.3 NM to achieve equivalent performance to GPS (and better than ILS, which is less sensitive far from the runway); 2) close to the runway threshold, the scaling changes to linear instead of continuing to become more sensitive. The width of the final approach course is tailored so that the total width is usually 700 feet at the runway threshold. Since the origin point of the lateral splay for the angular portion of the final is not fixed due to antenna placement like localizer, the splay angle can remain fixed, making a consistent width of final for aircraft being vectored onto the final approach course on different length runways. When the complete published procedure is not flown, and instead the aircraft needs to capture the extended final approach course similar to ILS, the vector to final (VTF) mode is used. Under VTF the scaling is linear at +/–1 NM until the point where the ILS angular splay reaches a width of +/–1 NM regardless of the distance from the FAWP.

5. The WAAS scaling is also different than GPS TSO–C129 in the initial portion of the missed approach. Two differences occur here. First, the scaling abruptly changes from the approach scaling to the missed approach scaling, at approximately the departure end of the runway or when the pilot requests missed approach guidance rather than ramping as GPS does. Second, when the first leg of the missed approach is a Track to Fix (TF) leg aligned within 3 degrees of the inbound course, the receiver will change to 0.3 NM linear sensitivity until the turn initiation point for the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure, at which time it will abruptly change to terminal (+/–1 NM) sensitivity. This allows the elimination of close in obstacles in the early part of the missed approach that may cause the DA to be raised.

6. A new method has been added for selecting the final approach segment of an instrument approach. Along with the current method used by most receivers using menus where the pilot selects the airport, the runway, the specific approach procedure and finally the IAF, there is also a channel number selection method. The pilot enters a unique 5–digit number provided on the approach chart, and the receiver recalls the matching final approach segment from the aircraft database. A list of information including the available IAFs is displayed and the pilot selects the appropriate IAF. The pilot should confirm that the correct final approach segment was loaded by cross checking the Approach ID, which is also provided on the approach chart.

7. The Along–Track Distance (ATD) during the final approach segment of an LNAV procedure (with a minimum descent altitude) will be to the MAWP. On LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches to a decision altitude, there is no missed approach waypoint so the along–track distance is displayed to a point normally located at the runway threshold. In most cases the MAWP for the LNAV approach is located on the runway threshold at the centerline, so these distances will be the same. This distance will always vary slightly from any ILS DME that may be present, since the ILS DME is located further down the runway. Initiation of the missed approach on the LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches is still based on reaching the decision altitude without any of the items listed in 14 CFR Section 91.175 being visible, and must not be delayed until the ATD reaches zero. The WAAS receiver, unlike a GPS receiver, will automatically sequence past the MAWP if the missed approach procedure has been designed for RNAV. The pilot may also select missed approach prior to the MAWP, however, navigation will continue to the MAWP prior to waypoint sequencing taking place.

1–1–21. Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS)

a. General

1. The GLS provides precision navigation guidance for exact alignment and descent of aircraft on approach to a runway. It provides differential augmentation to the Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).

NOTE–
GBAS is the ICAO term for Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS).

2. LAAS was developed as an “ILS look–alike” system from the pilot perspective. LAAS is based on GPS signals augmented by ground equipment and has been developed to provide GLS precision approaches similar to ILS at airfields.

3. GLS provides guidance similar to ILS approaches for the final approach segment; portions of the GLS approach prior to and after the final approach segment will be based on Area Navigation (RNAV) or Required Navigation Performance (RNP).

4. The equipment consists of a GBAS Ground Facility (GGF), four reference stations, a VHF Data

Broadcast (VDB) uplink antenna, and an aircraft GBAS receiver.

b. Procedure

1. Pilots will select the five digit GBAS channel number of the associated approach within the Flight Management System (FMS) menu or manually select the five digits (system dependent). Selection of the GBAS channel number also tunes the VDB.

2. Following procedure selection, confirmation that the correct LAAS procedure is loaded can be accomplished by cross checking the charted Reference Path Indicator (RPI) or approach ID with the cockpit displayed RPI or audio identification of the RPI with Morse Code (for some systems).

3. The pilot will fly the GLS approach using the same techniques as an ILS, once selected and identified.

1–1–22. Precision Approach Systems other than ILS, GLS, and MLS

a. General

Approval and use of precision approach systems other than ILS, GLS and MLS require the issuance of special instrument approach procedures.

b. Special Instrument Approach Procedure

1. Special instrument approach procedures must be issued to the aircraft operator if pilot training, aircraft equipment, and/or aircraft performance is different than published procedures. Special instrument approach procedures are not distributed for general public use. These procedures are issued to an aircraft operator when the conditions for operations approval are satisfied.

2. General aviation operators requesting approval for special procedures should contact the local Flight Standards District Office to obtain a letter of authorization. Air carrier operators requesting approval for use of special procedures should contact their Certificate Holding District Office for authorization through their Operations Specification.

c. Transponder Landing System (TLS)

1. The TLS is designed to provide approach guidance utilizing existing airborne ILS localizer, glide slope, and transponder equipment.

2. Ground equipment consists of a transponder interrogator, sensor arrays to detect lateral and vertical position, and ILS frequency transmitters. The TLS detects the aircraft's position by interrogating its transponder. It then broadcasts ILS frequency signals to guide the aircraft along the desired approach path.

3. TLS instrument approach procedures are designated Special Instrument Approach Procedures. Special aircrew training is required. TLS ground equipment provides approach guidance for only one aircraft at a time. Even though the TLS signal is received using the ILS receiver, no fixed course or glidepath is generated. The concept of operation is very similar to an air traffic controller providing radar vectors, and just as with radar vectors, the guidance is valid only for the intended aircraft. The TLS ground equipment tracks one aircraft, based on its transponder code, and provides correction signals to course and glidepath based on the position of the tracked aircraft. Flying the TLS corrections computed for another aircraft will not provide guidance relative to the approach; therefore, aircrews must not use the TLS signal for navigation unless they have received approach clearance and completed the required coordination with the TLS ground equipment operator. Navigation fixes based on conventional NAVAIDs or GPS are provided in the special instrument approach procedure to allow aircrews to verify the TLS guidance.

d. Special Category I Differential GPS (SCAT–I DGPS)

1. The SCAT–I DGPS is designed to provide approach guidance by broadcasting differential correction to GPS.

2. SCAT–I DGPS procedures require aircraft equipment and pilot training.

3. Ground equipment consists of GPS receivers and a VHF digital radio transmitter. The SCAT–I DGPS detects the position of GPS satellites relative to GPS receiver equipment and broadcasts differential corrections over the VHF digital radio.

4. Category I Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) will displace SCAT–I DGPS as the public use service.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 5–4–7, Instrument Approach Procedures.

TBL 1–2–2
RNP Levels Supported for International Operations

RNP Level	Typical Application
4	Projected for oceanic/remote areas where 30 NM horizontal separation is applied
10	Oceanic/remote areas where 50 NM lateral separation is applied

c. Other RNP Applications Outside the U.S. The FAA and ICAO member states have led initiatives in implementing the RNP concept to oceanic operations. For example, RNP–10 routes have been established in the northern Pacific (NOPAC) which has increased capacity and efficiency by reducing the distance between tracks to 50 NM. (See TBL 1–2–2.)

d. Aircraft and Airborne Equipment Eligibility for RNP Operations. Aircraft meeting RNP criteria will have an appropriate entry including special conditions and limitations in its Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM), or supplement. Operators of aircraft not having specific AFM–RNP certification may be issued operational approval including special conditions and limitations for specific RNP levels.

NOTE–
Some airborne systems use Estimated Position Uncertainty (EPU) as a measure of the current estimated navigational performance. EPU may also be referred to as Actual Navigation Performance (ANP) or Estimated Position Error (EPE).

1–2–3. Use of Suitable Area Navigation (RNAV) Systems on Conventional Procedures and Routes

a. Discussion. This paragraph sets forth policy concerning the operational use of RNAV systems for the following applications within the U.S. National Airspace System (NAS):

1. When a very–high frequency omni–directional range (VOR), DME, tactical air navigation (TACAN), VORTAC, VOR/DME, non-directional beacon (NDB), or compass locator facility including locator outer marker and locator middle marker is out–of–service (that is, the navigation aid (navaid) information is not available); an aircraft is not equipped with an ADF or DME; or the installed ADF or DME on an aircraft is not operational. For example, if equipped with a suitable RNAV system, a pilot may hold over an out–of–service NDB. This category of use is referred to as "substitute means of navigation."

2. When a VOR, DME, VORTAC, VOR/DME, TACAN, NDB, or compass locator facility including locator outer marker and locator middle marker is operational and the respective aircraft is equipped with operational navigation equipment that is compatible with conventional navaids. For example, if equipped with a suitable RNAV system, a pilot may fly a procedure or route based on operational VOR using RNAV equipment but not monitor the VOR. This category of use is referred to as "alternate means of navigation."

NOTE–
1. *Additional information and associated requirements are available via a 90–series Advisory Circular titled "Use of Suitable RNAV Systems on Conventional Routes and Procedures."*

2. *Good planning and knowledge of your RNAV system are critical for safe and successful operations.*

3. *Pilots planning to use their RNAV system as a substitute means of navigation guidance in lieu of an out–of–service navaid may need to advise ATC of this intent and capability.*

4. *The navigation database should be current for the duration of the flight. If the AIRAC cycle will change during flight, operators and pilots should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data, including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. To facilitate validating database currency, the FAA has developed procedures for publishing the amendment date that instrument approach procedures were last revised. The amendment date follows the amendment number, e.g., Amdt 4 14Jan10. Currency of graphic departure procedures and STARs may be ascertained by the numerical designation in the procedure title. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, or the procedure amendment date shown on the chart is on or after the expiration date of the database, the operator must not use the database to conduct the operation.*

b. Types of RNAV Systems that Qualify as a Suitable RNAV System. When installed in accordance with appropriate airworthiness installation

requirements and operated in accordance with applicable operational guidance (e.g., aircraft flight manual and Advisory Circular material), the following systems qualify as a suitable RNAV system:

1. An RNAV system with TSO–C129/–C145/–C146 (including all revisions (AR)) equipment, installed in accordance with AC 20–138 (including AR) or AC 20–130A, and authorized for instrument flight rules (IFR) en route and terminal operations (including those systems previously qualified for "GPS in lieu of ADF or DME" operations), or

2. An RNAV system with DME/DME/IRU inputs that is compliant with the equipment provisions of AC 90–100A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, for RNAV routes.

NOTE–
RNAV systems using DME/DME/IRU, without GPS/WAAS position input, may only be used as a substitute means of navigation when specifically authorized by a Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) or other FAA guidance for a specific procedure, NAVAID, or fix. The NOTAM or other FAA guidance authorizing the use of DME/DME/IRU systems will also identify any required DME facilities based on an FAA assessment of the DME navigation infrastructure.

c. Allowable Operations. Operators may use a suitable RNAV system in the following ways.

1. Determine aircraft position over or distance from a VOR (see NOTE 4 below), TACAN, NDB, compass locator, DME fix; or a named fix defined by a VOR radial, TACAN course, NDB bearing, or compass locator bearing intersecting a VOR or localizer course.

2. Navigate to or from a VOR, TACAN, NDB, or compass locator.

3. Hold over a VOR, TACAN, NDB, compass locator, or DME fix.

4. Fly an arc based upon DME.

These operations are allowable even when a facility is explicitly identified as required on a procedure (e.g., "Note ADF required").

These operations **do not include** lateral navigation on localizer–based courses (including localizer back–course guidance) without reference to raw localizer data.

NOTE–
1. *These allowances apply only to operations conducted within the NAS.*

2. *The allowances defined in paragraph c apply even when a facility is explicitly identified as required on a procedure (e.g., "Note ADF required"). These allowances do not apply to procedures that are identified as not authorized (NA) without exception by a NOTAM, as other conditions may still exist and result in a procedure not being available. For example, these allowances do not apply to a procedure associated with an expired or unsatisfactory flight inspection, or is based upon a recently decommissioned navaid.*

3. *Pilots may not substitute for the navigation aid providing lateral guidance for the final approach segment. This restriction does not refer to instrument approach procedures with "or GPS" in the title when using GPS or WAAS. These allowances do not apply to procedures that are identified as not authorized (NA) without exception by a NOTAM, as other conditions may still exist and result in a procedure not being available. For example, these allowances do not apply to a procedure associated with an expired or unsatisfactory flight inspection, or is based upon a recently decommissioned navaid.*

4. *For the purpose of paragraph c, "VOR" includes VOR, VOR/DME, and VORTAC facilities and "compass locator" includes locator outer marker and locator middle marker.*

Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids

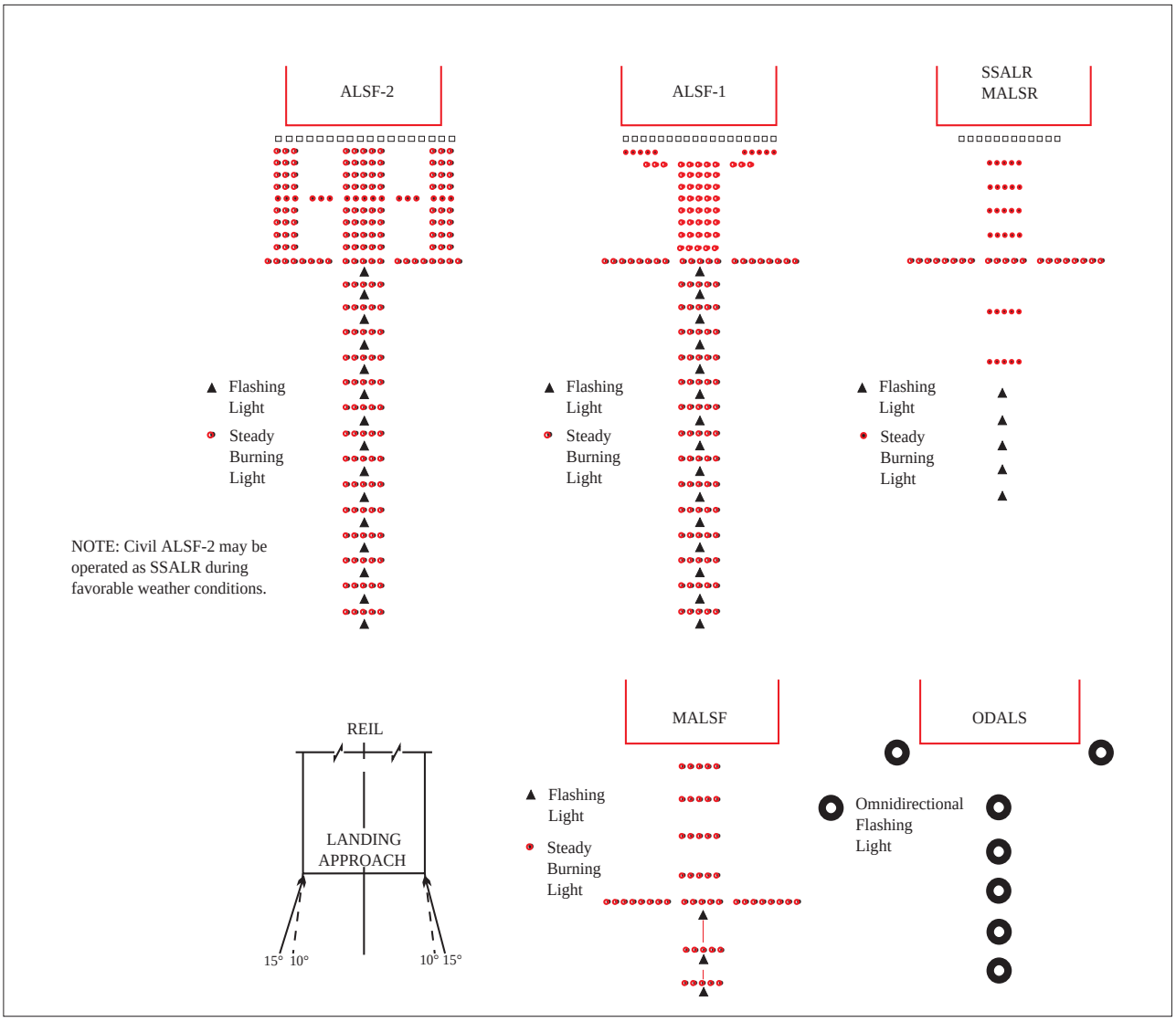
Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids

2–1–1. Approach Light Systems (ALS)

a. ALS provide the basic means to transition from instrument flight to visual flight for landing. Operational requirements dictate the sophistication and configuration of the approach light system for a particular runway.

b. ALS are a configuration of signal lights starting at the landing threshold and extending into the approach area a distance of 2400–3000 feet for precision instrument runways and 1400–1500 feet for nonprecision instrument runways. Some systems include sequenced flashing lights which appear to the pilot as a ball of light traveling towards the runway at high speed (twice a second). (See FIG 2–1–1.)

FIG 2–1–1
Precision & Nonprecision Configurations



2–1–2. Visual Glideslope Indicators

a. Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)

1. The VASI is a system of lights so arranged to provide visual descent guidance information during the approach to a runway. These lights are visible from 3–5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles or more at night. The visual glide path of the VASI provides safe obstruction clearance within plus or minus 10 degrees of the extended runway centerline and to 4 NM from the runway threshold. Descent, using the VASI, should not be initiated until the aircraft is visually aligned with the runway. Lateral course guidance is provided by the runway or runway lights. In certain circumstances, the safe obstruction clearance area may be reduced due to local limitations, or the VASI may be offset from the extended runway centerline. This will be noted in the Airport/ Facility Directory.

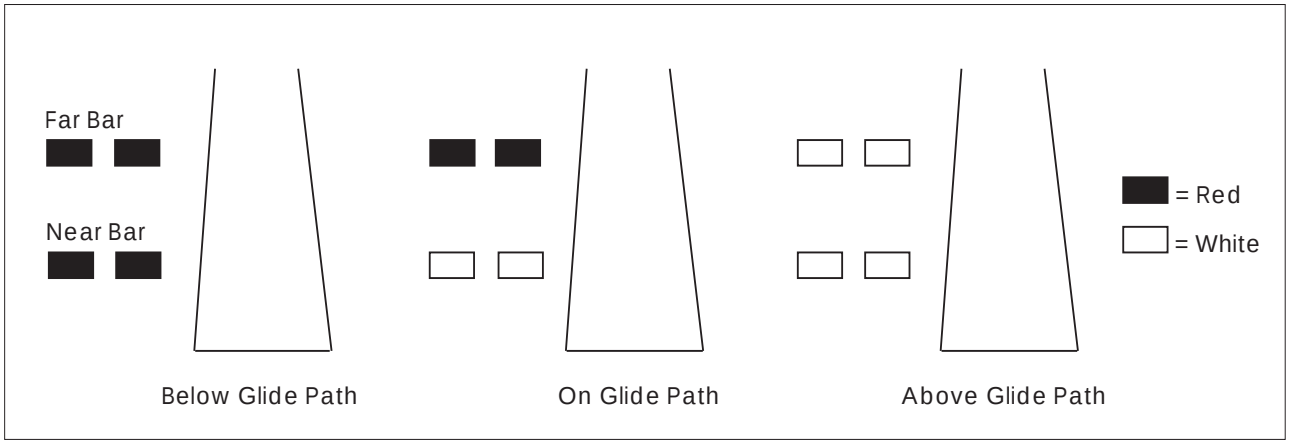
2. VASI installations may consist of either 2, 4, 6, 12, or 16 light units arranged in bars referred to as near, middle, and far bars. Most VASI installations consist of 2 bars, near and far, and may consist of 2, 4, or 12 light units. Some VASIs consist of three bars, near, middle, and far, which provide an additional visual glide path to accommodate high cockpit aircraft. This installation may consist of either 6 or 16 light units. VASI installations consisting of 2, 4, or 6 light units are located on one side of the runway, usually the left. Where the installation consists of 12 or 16 light units, the units are located on both sides of the runway.

3. Two-bar VASI installations provide one visual glide path which is normally set at 3 degrees. Three-bar VASI installations provide two visual glide paths. The lower glide path is provided by the near and middle bars and is normally set at 3 degrees while the upper glide path, provided by the middle and far bars, is normally $^1/_4$ degree higher. This higher glide path is intended for use only by high cockpit aircraft to provide a sufficient threshold crossing height. Although normal glide path angles are three degrees, angles at some locations may be as high as 4.5 degrees to give proper obstacle clearance. Pilots of high performance aircraft are cautioned that use of VASI angles in excess of 3.5 degrees may cause an increase in runway length required for landing and rollout.

4. The basic principle of the VASI is that of color differentiation between red and white. Each light unit projects a beam of light having a white segment in the upper part of the beam and red segment in the lower part of the beam. The light units are arranged so that the pilot using the VASIs during an approach will see the combination of lights shown below.

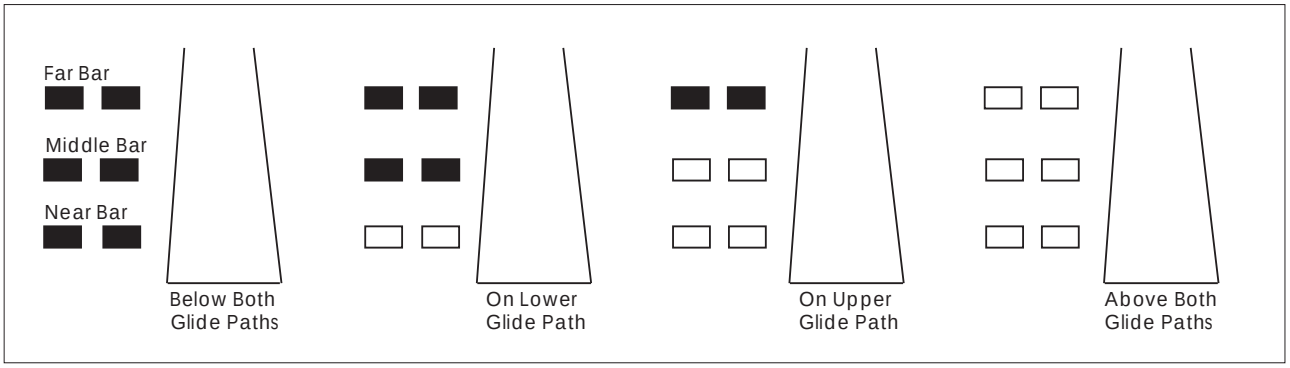
5. For 2-bar VASI (4 light units) see FIG 2–1–2.

FIG 2–1–2
2-Bar VASI



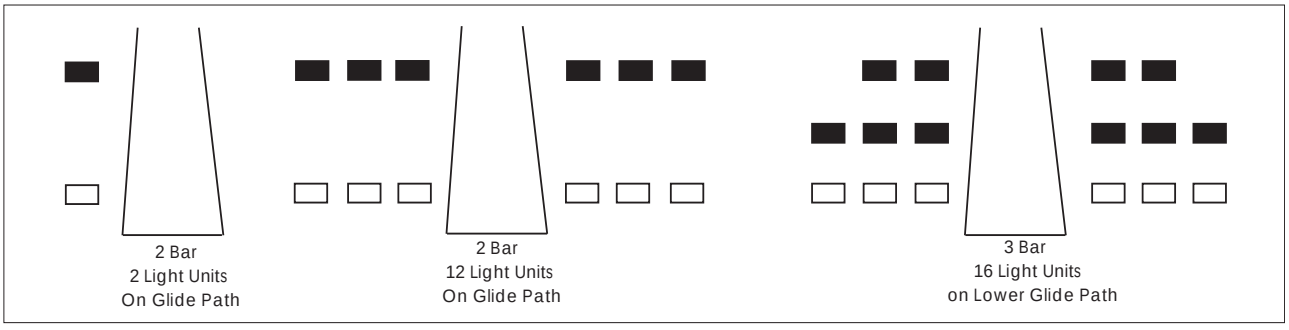
6. For 3-bar VASI (6 light units) see FIG 2−1−3.

FIG 2−1−3
3-Bar VASI



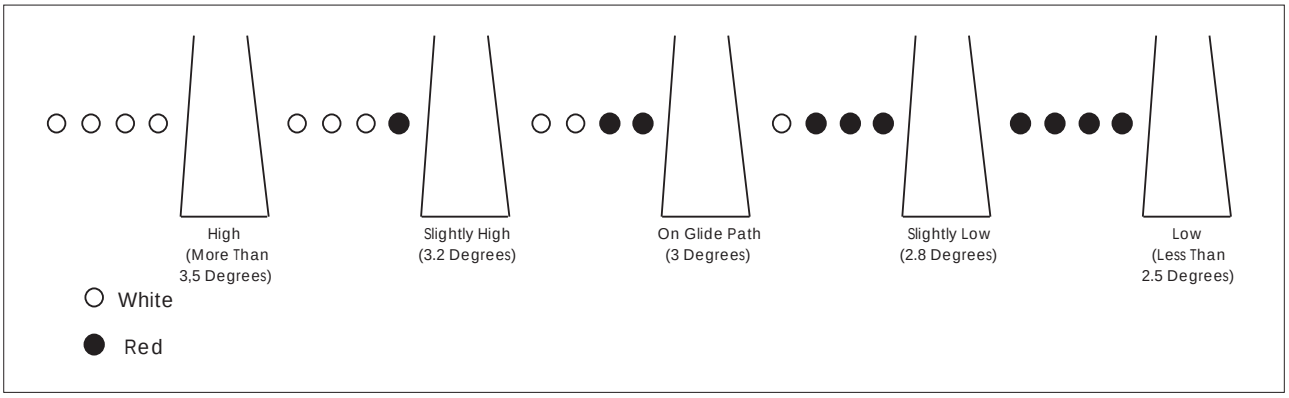
7. For other VASI configurations see FIG 2−1−4.

FIG 2−1−4
VASI Variations



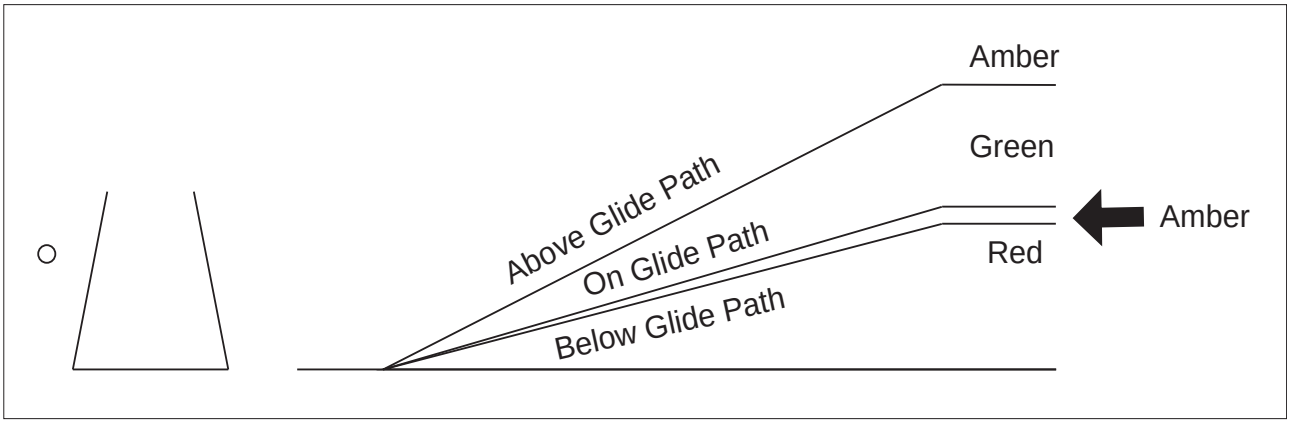
b. Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI). The precision approach path indicator (PAPI) uses light units similar to the VASI but are installed in a single row of either two or four light units. These lights are visible from about 5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles at night. The visual glide path of the PAPI typically provides safe obstruction clearance within plus or minus 10 degrees of the extended runway centerline and to 4 SM from the runway threshold. Descent, using the PAPI, should not be initiated until the aircraft is visually aligned with the runway. The row of light units is normally installed on the left side of the runway and the glide path indications are as depicted. Lateral course guidance is provided by the runway or runway lights. In certain circumstances, the safe obstruction clearance area may be reduced due to local limitations, or the PAPI may be offset from the extended runway centerline. This will be noted in the Airport/ Facility Directory. (See FIG 2–1–5.)

FIG 2–1–5
Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI)



c. Tri-color Systems. Tri-color visual approach slope indicators normally consist of a single light unit projecting a three-color visual approach path into the final approach area of the runway upon which the indicator is installed. The below glide path indication is red, the above glide path indication is amber, and the on glide path indication is green. These types of indicators have a useful range of approximately one-half to one mile during the day and up to five miles at night depending upon the visibility conditions. (See FIG 2–1–6.)

FIG 2–1–6
Tri-Color Visual Approach Slope Indicator

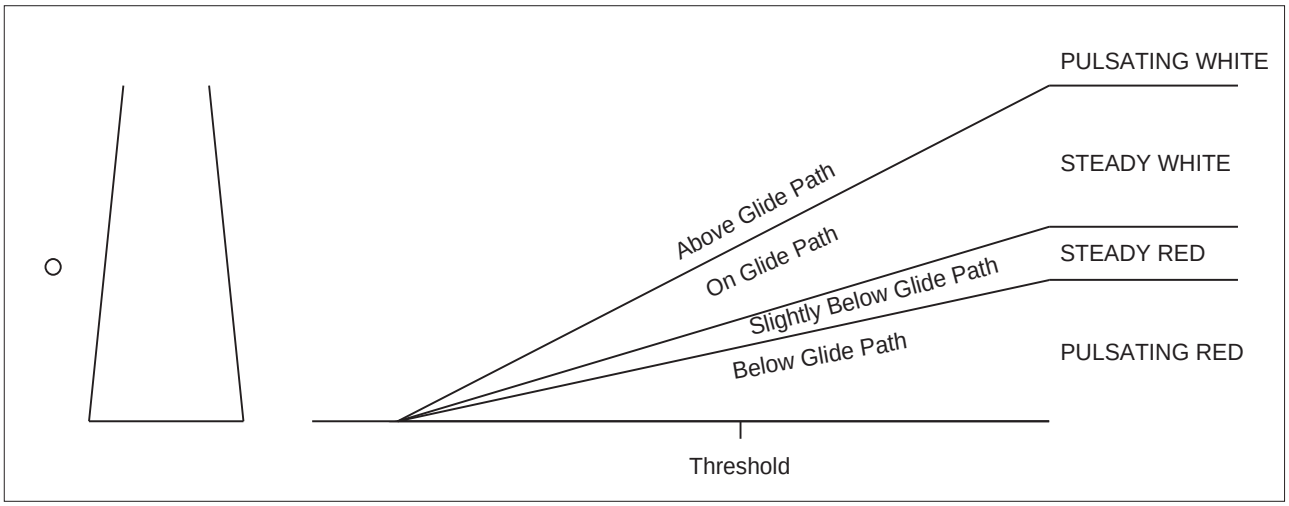


NOTE–

1. *Since the tri-color VASI consists of a single light source which could possibly be confused with other light sources, pilots should exercise care to properly locate and identify the light signal.*

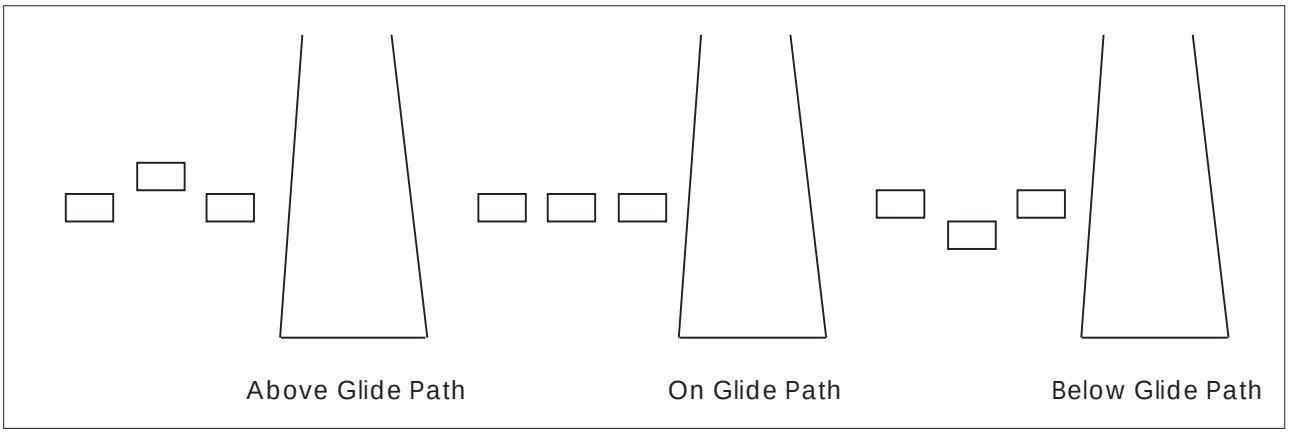
2. *When the aircraft descends from green to red, the pilot may see a dark amber color during the transition from green to red.*

FIG 2–1–7
Pulsating Visual Approach Slope Indicator



NOTE–
Since the PVASI consists of a single light source which could possibly be confused with other light sources, pilots should exercise care to properly locate and identify the light signal.

FIG 2–1–8
Alignment of Elements



d. Pulsating Systems. Pulsating visual approach slope indicators normally consist of a single light unit projecting a two-color visual approach path into the final approach area of the runway upon which the indicator is installed. The on glide path indication is a steady white light. The slightly below glide path indication is a steady red light. If the aircraft descends further below the glide path, the red light starts to pulsate. The above glide path indication is a pulsating white light. The pulsating rate increases as the aircraft gets further above or below the desired glide slope. The useful range of the system is about four miles during the day and up to ten miles at night. (See FIG 2–1–7.)

e. Alignment of Elements Systems. Alignment of elements systems are installed on some small general aviation airports and are a low-cost system consisting of painted plywood panels, normally black and white or fluorescent orange. Some of these systems are lighted for night use. The useful range of these systems is approximately three-quarter miles. To use the system the pilot positions the aircraft so the

elements are in alignment. The glide path indications are shown in FIG 2–1–8.

2–1–3. Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL)

REILs are installed at many airfields to provide rapid and positive identification of the approach end of a particular runway. The system consists of a pair of synchronized flashing lights located laterally on each side of the runway threshold. REILs may be either omnidirectional or unidirectional facing the approach area. They are effective for:

a. Identification of a runway surrounded by a preponderance of other lighting.

b. Identification of a runway which lacks contrast with surrounding terrain.

c. Identification of a runway during reduced visibility.

2–1–4. Runway Edge Light Systems

a. Runway edge lights are used to outline the edges of runways during periods of darkness or restricted visibility conditions. These light systems are classified according to the intensity or brightness they are capable of producing: they are the High Intensity Runway Lights (HIRL), Medium Intensity Runway Lights (MIRL), and the Low Intensity Runway Lights (LIRL). The HIRL and MIRL systems have variable intensity controls, whereas the LIRLs normally have one intensity setting.

b. The runway edge lights are white, except on instrument runways yellow replaces white on the last 2,000 feet or half the runway length, whichever is less, to form a caution zone for landings.

c. The lights marking the ends of the runway emit red light toward the runway to indicate the end of runway to a departing aircraft and emit green outward from the runway end to indicate the threshold to landing aircraft.

2–1–5. In-runway Lighting

a. Runway Centerline Lighting System (RCLS). Runway centerline lights are installed on some precision approach runways to facilitate landing under adverse visibility conditions. They are located along the runway centerline and are spaced at 50–foot intervals. When viewed from the landing threshold, the runway centerline lights are white until the last 3,000 feet of the runway. The white lights begin to alternate with red for the next 2,000 feet, and for the last 1,000 feet of the runway, all centerline lights are red.

b. Touchdown Zone Lights (TDZL). Touchdown zone lights are installed on some precision approach runways to indicate the touchdown zone when landing under adverse visibility conditions. They consist of two rows of transverse light bars disposed symmetrically about the runway centerline. The system consists of steady–burning white lights which start 100 feet beyond the landing threshold and extend to 3,000 feet beyond the landing threshold or to the midpoint of the runway, whichever is less.

c. Taxiway Centerline Lead–Off Lights. Taxiway centerline lead–off lights provide visual guidance to persons exiting the runway. They are color–coded to warn pilots and vehicle drivers that they are within the runway environment or instrument landing system/microwave landing system (ILS/MLS) critical area, whichever is more restrictive. Alternate green and yellow lights are installed, beginning with green, from the runway centerline to one centerline light position beyond the runway holding position or ILS/MLS critical area holding position.

d. Taxiway Centerline Lead–On Lights. Taxiway centerline lead–on lights provide visual guidance to persons entering the runway. These “lead–on” lights are also color–coded with the same color pattern as lead–off lights to warn pilots and vehicle drivers that they are within the runway environment or instrument landing system/microwave landing system (ILS/MLS) critical area, whichever is more conservative. The fixtures used for lead–on lights are bidirectional, i.e., one side emits light for the lead–on function while the other side emits light for the lead–off function. Any fixture that emits yellow light for the lead–off function shall also emit yellow light for the lead–on function. (See FIG 2–1–10.)

e. Land and Hold Short Lights. Land and hold short lights are used to indicate the hold short point on certain runways which are approved for Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO). Land and hold short lights consist of a row of pulsing white lights installed across the runway at the hold short point. Where installed, the lights will be on anytime

LAHSO is in effect. These lights will be off when LAHSO is not in effect.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Pilot Responsibilities When Conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO), Paragraph 4–3–11.

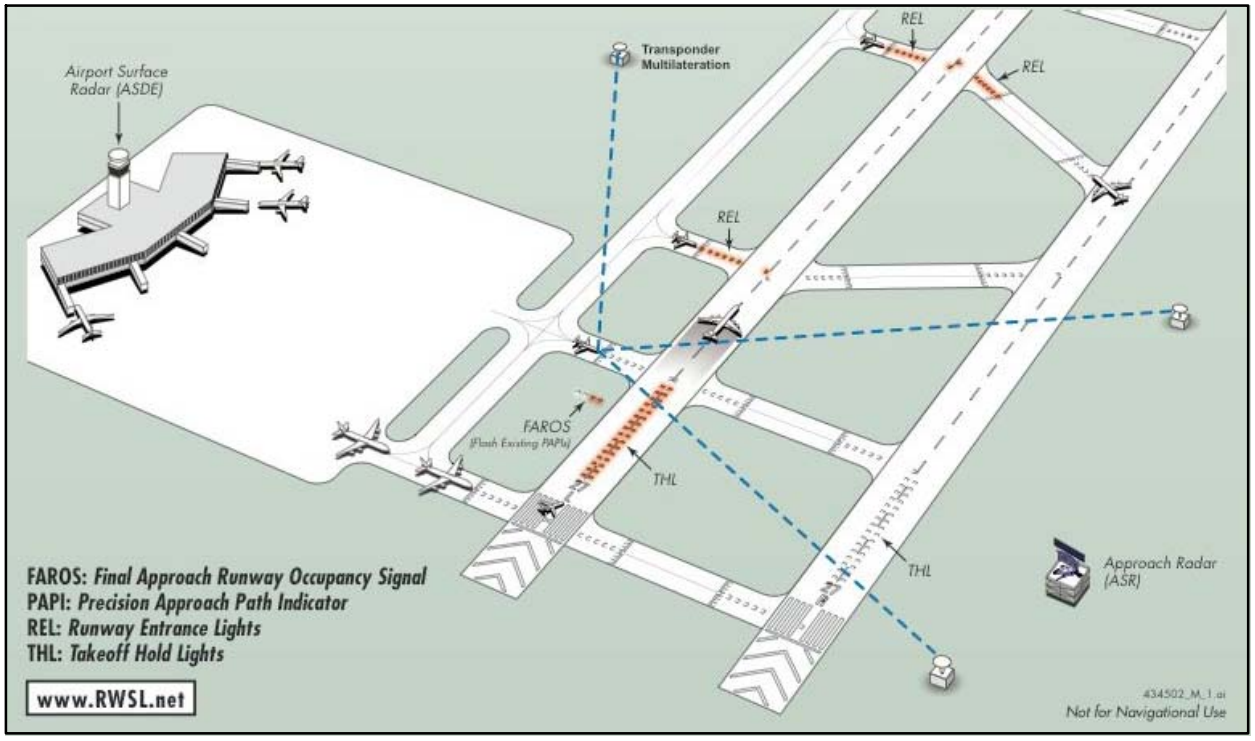
2–1–6. Runway Status Light (RWSL) System

a. Introduction.

RWSL is a fully automated system that provides runway status information to pilots and surface vehicle operators to indicate when it is unsafe to enter, cross, takeoff from, or land on a runway. The RWSL system processes information from surveillance systems and activates Runway Entrance Lights (REL), Takeoff Hold Lights (THL), and Final Approach Runway Occupancy Signal (FAROS) in accordance with the motion and velocity of the detected traffic. REL and THL are in-pavement light fixtures that are directly visible to pilots and surface vehicle operators. FAROS activation is by means of flashing the Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI). RWSL is an independent safety enhancement that does not substitute for an ATC clearance. Clearance to enter, cross, takeoff from, land on, or operate on a runway must be issued by ATC. Although ATC has limited control over the system, personnel do not directly use, and may not be able to view, light fixture output in their operations.

b. Runway Entrance Lights (REL): The REL system is composed of flush mounted, in-pavement, unidirectional fixtures that are parallel to and focused along the taxiway centerline and directed toward the pilot at the hold line. A specific array of REL lights include the first light at the hold line followed by a series of evenly spaced lights to the runway edge; and one additional light at the runway centerline in line with the last two lights before the runway edge (See FIG 2–1–9). When activated, these red lights indicate that there is high speed traffic on the runway or there is an aircraft on final approach within the activation area.

FIG 2–1–9
Runway Status Light System



1. Operating Characteristics – Departing Aircraft:

When a departing aircraft reaches 30 knots, all taxiway intersections with REL arrays along the runway ahead of the aircraft will illuminate (see FIG 2–1–9). As the aircraft approaches a REL equipped taxiway intersection, the lights at that intersection extinguish approximately 2 to 3 seconds before the aircraft reaches it. This allows controllers to apply "anticipated separation" to permit ATC to move traffic more expeditiously without compromising safety. After the aircraft is declared "airborne" by the system, all lights will extinguish.

2. Operating Characteristics – Arriving Aircraft:

When an aircraft on final approach is approximately 1 mile from the runway threshold all sets of REL light arrays along the runway will illuminate. The distance is adjustable and can be configured for specific operations at particular airports. Lights extinguish at each equipped taxiway intersection approximately 2 to 3 seconds before the aircraft reaches it to apply anticipated separation until the aircraft has slowed to approximately 80 knots (site adjustable parameter). Below 80 knots, all arrays that are not within 30 seconds of the aircraft's forward path are extinguished. Once the arriving aircraft slows to approximately 34 knots (site adjustable parameter), it is declared to be in a taxi state, and all lights extinguish.

3. What a pilot would observe: A pilot at or approaching the hold line to a runway will observe REL illumination and extinguishing in reaction to an aircraft or vehicle operating on the runway, or an arriving aircraft operating less than 1 mile from the runway threshold.

4. Whenever a pilot observes the red lights of the REL, that pilot will stop at the hold line, or along the taxiway path and remain stopped. The pilot will then contact ATC for resolution if the clearance is in conflict with the lights. Should pilots note illuminated lights under circumstances when remaining clear of the runway is impractical for safety reasons (i.e., aircraft is already on the runway), the crew should proceed according to their best judgment while understanding the illuminated lights indicate the runway is unsafe to enter or cross. Contact ATC at the earliest possible opportunity.

c. Takeoff Hold Lights (THL): The THL system is composed of in–pavement, unidirectional fixtures in a double longitudinal row aligned either side of the runway centerline lighting. Fixtures are focused toward the arrival end of the runway at the "position and hold" point, and they extend for 1,500 feet in front of the holding aircraft (see FIG 2–1–9). Illuminated red lights provide a signal, to an aircraft in position for takeoff or rolling, that it is unsafe to takeoff because the runway is occupied or about to be occupied by another aircraft or ground vehicle. Two aircraft, or a surface vehicle and an aircraft, are required for the lights to illuminate. The departing aircraft must be in position for takeoff or beginning takeoff roll. Another aircraft or a surface vehicle must be on or about to cross the runway.

1. Operating Characteristics – Departing Aircraft:

THLs will illuminate for an aircraft in position for departure or departing when there is another aircraft or vehicle on the runway or about to enter the runway (see FIG 2–1–9.) Once that aircraft or vehicle exits the runway, the THLs extinguish. A pilot may notice lights extinguish prior to the downfield aircraft or vehicle being completely clear of the runway but still moving. Like RELs, THLs have an "anticipated separation" feature.

NOTE–
When the THLs extinguish, this is not clearance to begin a takeoff roll. All takeoff clearances will be issued by ATC.

2. What a pilot would observe: A pilot in position to depart from a runway, or has begun takeoff roll, will observe THL illumination in reaction to an aircraft or vehicle on the runway or about to enter or cross it. Lights will extinguish when the runway is clear. A pilot may observe several cycles of illumination and extinguishing depending on the amount of crossing traffic.

3. Whenever a pilot observes the red lights of the THLs, the pilot will stop or remain stopped. The pilot will contact ATC for resolution if any clearance is in conflict with the lights. Should pilots note illuminated lights while in takeoff roll and under circumstances when stopping is impractical for safety reasons, the crew should proceed according to their best judgment while understanding the illuminated lights indicate that continuing the takeoff is unsafe. Contact ATC at the earliest possible opportunity.

d. The Final Approach Runway Occupancy Signal (FAROS) is activated by flashing of the Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI) (see FIG 2-1-9). When activated, the light fixtures of the PAPI flash or pulse to indicate to the pilot on an approach that the runway is occupied and that it may be unsafe to land.

1. Operating Characteristics:

If an aircraft or surface vehicle occupies a FAROS equipped runway, the PAPI(s) on that runway will flash or pulse. The glide path indication will not be affected, and the allotment of red and white PAPI lights observed by the pilot on approach will not change. Some FAROS systems will flash or pulse the PAPI when traffic enters the runway whether or not there is an aircraft on approach. Others will flash the PAPI only if there is an aircraft on approach and within 1.5 nautical miles of the landing threshold.

2. What a pilot would observe: A pilot on approach to the runway will observe the PAPI flash or pulse if there is traffic on the runway and will notice the PAPI ceases to flash or pulse when the traffic moves outside the hold short lines for the runway.

3. Whenever a pilot observes a flashing or pulsing PAPI, the pilot will verify the FAROS activation. At 500 feet above ground level (AGL), the pilot must look for and acquire the traffic on the runway. At 300 feet AGL, the pilot must contact ATC for resolution if the clearance is in conflict with the FAROS indication. If the PAPI continues to flash or pulse, the pilot must execute an immediate "go around" and contact ATC at the earliest possible opportunity.

e. Pilot Actions:

1. When operating at airports with RWSL, pilots will operate with the transponder "On" when departing the gate or parking area until it is shutdown upon arrival at the gate or parking area. This ensures interaction with the FAA surveillance systems which provide information to the RWSL system.

2. Pilots must always inform the ATCT when they have either stopped, are verifying a landing clearance, or are executing a missed approach due to RWSL or FAROS indication that are in conflict with ATC instructions. Pilots must request clarification of the taxi, takeoff, or landing clearance.

3. Never cross over illuminated red lights. Under normal circumstances, RWSL will confirm the pilot's taxi or takeoff clearance. If RWSL indicates that it is unsafe to takeoff from or taxi across a runway, immediately notify ATC of the conflict and confirm your clearance. Never land if PAPI continues to flash or pulse. Execute a go around and notify ATC.

4. Do not proceed when lights have extinguished without an ATC clearance. RWSL verifies an ATC clearance, it does not substitute for an ATC clearance.

f. ATC Control of RWSL System:

1. Controllers can set in–pavement lights to one of five (5) brightness levels to assure maximum conspicuity under all visibility and lighting conditions. REL and THL subsystems may be independently set.

2. The system can be shutdown should RWSL operations impact the efficient movement of air traffic or contribute, in the opinion of the ATC Supervisor, to unsafe operations. REL, THL, and FAROS subsystems may be shutdown separately. Shutdown of the FAROS subsystem will not extinguish PAPI lights or impact its glide path function. Whenever the system or a component is shutdown, a NOTAM must be issued, and the Automatic Terminal Information System (ATIS) must be updated.

2–1–7. Control of Lighting Systems

a. Operation of approach light systems and runway lighting is controlled by the control tower (ATCT). At some locations the FSS may control the lights where there is no control tower in operation.

b. Pilots may request that lights be turned on or off. Runway edge lights, in-pavement lights and approach lights also have intensity controls which may be varied to meet the pilots request. Sequenced flashing lights (SFL) may be turned on and off. Some sequenced flashing light systems also have intensity control.

2–1–8. Pilot Control of Airport Lighting

Radio control of lighting is available at selected airports to provide airborne control of lights by keying the aircraft's microphone. Control of lighting systems is often available at locations without specified hours for lighting and where there is no

control tower or FSS or when the tower or FSS is closed (locations with a part-time tower or FSS) or specified hours. All lighting systems which are radio controlled at an airport, whether on a single runway or multiple runways, operate on the same radio frequency. (See TBL 2–1–1 and TBL 2–1–2.)

FIG 2–1–10
Taxiway Lead–On Light Configuration

TBL 2–1–1
Runways With Approach Lights

Lighting System	No. of Int. Steps	Status During Nonuse Period	Intensity Step Selected Per No. of Mike Clicks		
			3 Clicks	5 Clicks	7 Clicks
Approach Lights (Med. Int.)	2	Off	Low	Low	High
Approach Lights (Med. Int.)	3	Off	Low	Med	High
MIRL	3	Off or Low	◆	◆	◆
HIRL	5	Off or Low	◆	◆	◆
VASI	2	Off	✯	✯	✯

NOTES: ◆ *Predetermined intensity step.*
✯ *Low intensity for night use. High intensity for day use as determined by photocell control.*

TBL 2–1–2
Runways Without Approach Lights

Lighting System	No. of Int. Steps	Status During Nonuse Period	Intensity Step Selected Per No. of Mike Clicks		
			3 Clicks	5 Clicks	7 Clicks
MIRL	3	Off or Low	Low	Med.	High
HIRL	5	Off or Low	Step 1 or 2	Step 3	Step 5
LIRL	1	Off	On	On	On
VASI✯	2	Off	◆	◆	◆
REIL✯	1	Off	Off	On/Off	On
REIL✯	3	Off	Low	Med.	High

NOTES: ◆ Low intensity for night use. High intensity for day use as determined by photocell control.
✯ The control of VASI and/or REIL may be independent of other lighting systems.

a. With FAA approved systems, various combinations of medium intensity approach lights, runway lights, taxiway lights, VASI and/or REIL may be activated by radio control. On runways with both approach lighting and runway lighting (runway edge lights, taxiway lights, etc.) systems, the approach lighting system takes precedence for air-to-ground radio control over the runway lighting system which is set at a predetermined intensity step, based on expected visibility conditions. Runways without approach lighting may provide radio controlled intensity adjustments of runway edge lights. Other lighting systems, including VASI, REIL, and taxiway lights may be either controlled with the runway edge lights or controlled independently of the runway edge lights.

b. The control system consists of a 3–step control responsive to 7, 5, and/or 3 microphone clicks. This 3–step control will turn on lighting facilities capable of either 3–step, 2–step or 1–step operation. The 3–step and 2–step lighting facilities can be altered in intensity, while the 1–step cannot. All lighting is illuminated for a period of 15 minutes from the most recent time of activation and may not be extinguished prior to end of the 15 minute period (except for 1–step and 2–step REILs which may be turned off when desired by keying the mike 5 or 3 times respectively).

c. Suggested use is to always initially key the mike 7 times; this assures that all controlled lights are turned on to the maximum available intensity. If desired, adjustment can then be made, where the capability is provided, to a lower intensity (or the REIL turned off) by keying 5 and/or 3 times. Due to the close proximity of airports using the same frequency, radio controlled lighting receivers may be set at a low sensitivity requiring the aircraft to be relatively close to activate the system. Consequently, even when lights are on, always key mike as directed when overflying an airport of intended landing or just prior to entering the final segment of an approach. This will assure the aircraft is close enough to activate the system and a full 15 minutes lighting duration is available. Approved lighting systems may be activated by keying the mike (within 5 seconds) as indicated in TBL 2–1–3.

TBL 2–1–3
Radio Control System

Key Mike	Function
7 times within 5 seconds	Highest intensity available
5 times within 5 seconds	Medium or lower intensity (Lower REIL or REIL-off)
3 times within 5 seconds	Lowest intensity available (Lower REIL or REIL-off)

d. For all public use airports with FAA standard systems the Airport/Facility Directory contains the types of lighting, runway and the frequency that is used to activate the system. Airports with IAPs include data on the approach chart identifying the light system, the runway on which they are installed, and the frequency that is used to activate the system.

NOTE–
Although the CTAF is used to activate the lights at many airports, other frequencies may also be used. The appropriate frequency for activating the lights on the airport is provided in the Airport/Facility Directory and the standard instrument approach procedures publications. It is not identified on the sectional charts.

e. Where the airport is not served by an IAP, it may have either the standard FAA approved control system or an independent type system of different specification installed by the airport sponsor. The Airport/Facility Directory contains descriptions of pilot controlled lighting systems for each airport having other than FAA approved systems, and explains the type lights, method of control, and operating frequency in clear text.

2–1–9. Airport/Heliport Beacons

a. Airport and heliport beacons have a vertical light distribution to make them most effective from one to ten degrees above the horizon; however, they can be seen well above and below this peak spread. The beacon may be an omnidirectional capacitor-discharge device, or it may rotate at a constant speed which produces the visual effect of flashes at regular intervals. Flashes may be one or two colors alternately. The total number of flashes are:

1. 24 to 30 per minute for beacons marking airports, landmarks, and points on Federal airways.

2. 30 to 45 per minute for beacons marking heliports.

b. The colors and color combinations of beacons are:

1. White and Green– Lighted land airport.
2. *Green alone– Lighted land airport.
3. White and Yellow– Lighted water airport.
4. *Yellow alone– Lighted water airport.
5. Green, Yellow, and White– Lighted heliport.

NOTE–
**Green alone or yellow alone is used only in connection with a white-and-green or white-and-yellow beacon display, respectively.*

c. Military airport beacons flash alternately white and green, but are differentiated from civil beacons by dualpeaked (two quick) white flashes between the green flashes.

d. In Class B, Class C, Class D and Class E surface areas, operation of the airport beacon during the hours of daylight often indicates that the ground visibility is less than 3 miles and/or the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet. ATC clearance in accordance with 14 CFR Part 91 is required for landing, takeoff and flight in the traffic pattern. Pilots should not rely solely on the operation of the airport beacon to indicate if weather conditions are IFR or VFR. At some locations with operating control towers, ATC personnel turn the beacon on or off when controls are in the tower. At many airports the airport beacon is turned on by a photoelectric cell or time clocks and ATC personnel cannot control them. There is no regulatory requirement for daylight operation and it is the pilot's responsibility to comply with proper preflight planning as required by 14 CFR Section 91.103.

2–1–10. Taxiway Lights

a. Taxiway Edge Lights. Taxiway edge lights are used to outline the edges of taxiways during periods of darkness or restricted visibility conditions. These fixtures emit blue light.

NOTE–
At most major airports these lights have variable intensity settings and may be adjusted at pilot request or when deemed necessary by the controller.

b. Taxiway Centerline Lights. Taxiway centerline lights are used to facilitate ground traffic under low visibility conditions. They are located along the taxiway centerline in a straight line on straight portions, on the centerline of curved portions, and along designated taxiing paths in portions of runways, ramp, and apron areas. Taxiway centerline lights are steady burning and emit green light.

c. Clearance Bar Lights. Clearance bar lights are installed at holding positions on taxiways in order to increase the conspicuity of the holding position in low visibility conditions. They may also be installed to indicate the location of an intersecting taxiway during periods of darkness. Clearance bars consist of three in-pavement steady-burning yellow lights.

d. Runway Guard Lights. Runway guard lights are installed at taxiway/runway intersections. They are primarily used to enhance the conspicuity of taxiway/runway intersections during low visibility conditions, but may be used in all weather conditions. Runway guard lights consist of either a pair of elevated flashing yellow lights installed on either side of the taxiway, or a row of in-pavement yellow lights installed across the entire taxiway, at the runway holding position marking.

NOTE–
Some airports may have a row of three or five in-pavement yellow lights installed at taxiway/runway intersections. They should not be confused with clearance bar lights described in paragraph 2–1–10c, Clearance Bar Lights.

e. Stop Bar Lights. Stop bar lights, when installed, are used to confirm the ATC clearance to enter or cross the active runway in low visibility conditions (below 1,200 ft Runway Visual Range). A stop bar consists of a row of red, unidirectional, steady–burning in-pavement lights installed across the entire taxiway at the runway holding position, and elevated steady–burning red lights on each side. A controlled stop bar is operated in conjunction with the taxiway centerline lead-on lights which extend from the stop bar toward the runway. Following the ATC clearance to proceed, the stop bar is turned off and the lead-on lights are turned on. The stop bar and lead-on lights are automatically reset by a sensor or backup timer.

CAUTION–
Pilots should never cross a red illuminated stop bar, even if an ATC clearance has been given to proceed onto or across the runway.

NOTE–
If after crossing a stop bar, the taxiway centerline lead-on lights inadvertently extinguish, pilots should hold their position and contact ATC for further instructions.

FIG 2–3–15

Taxiways Located in Runway Approach Area

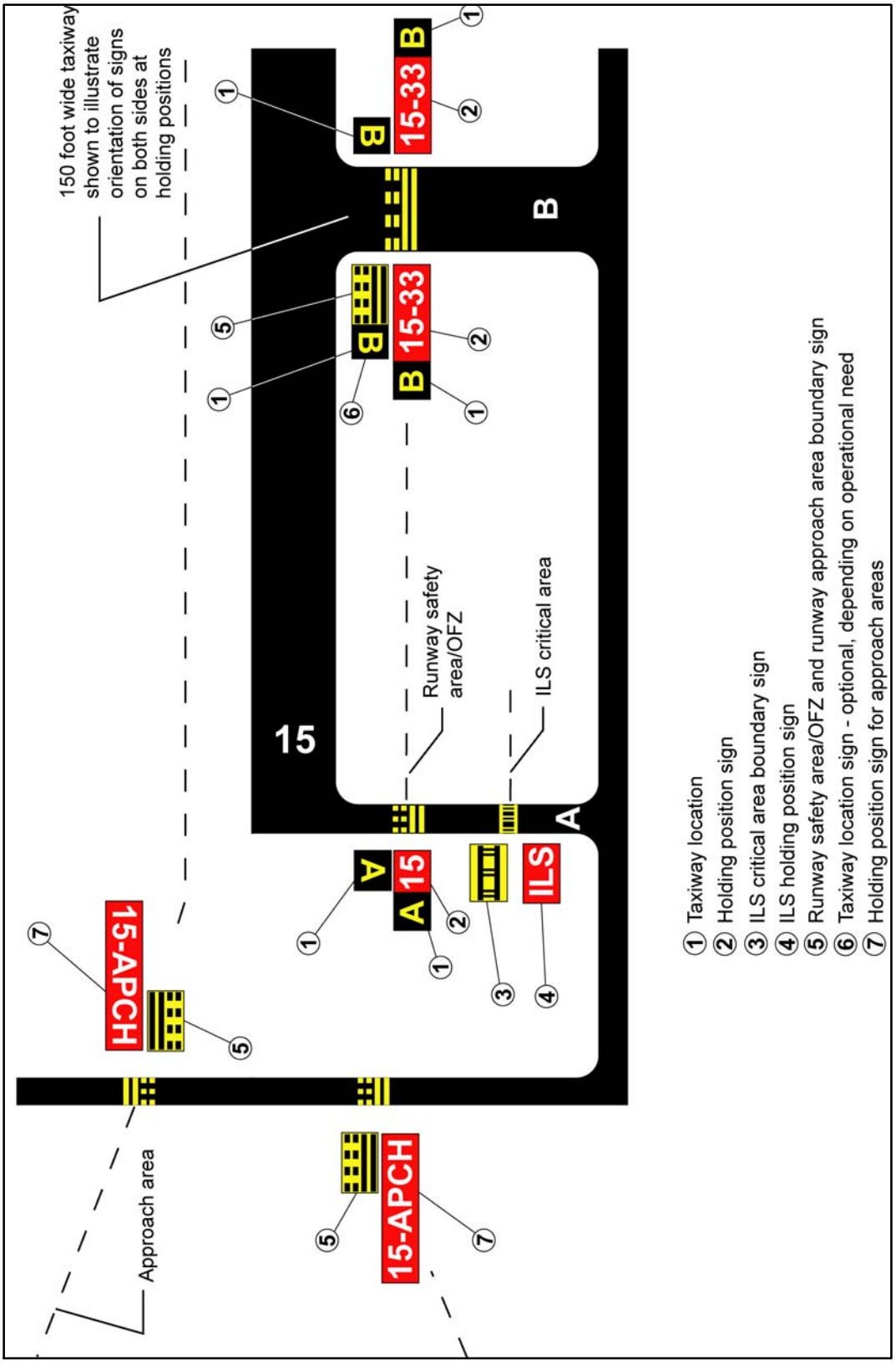
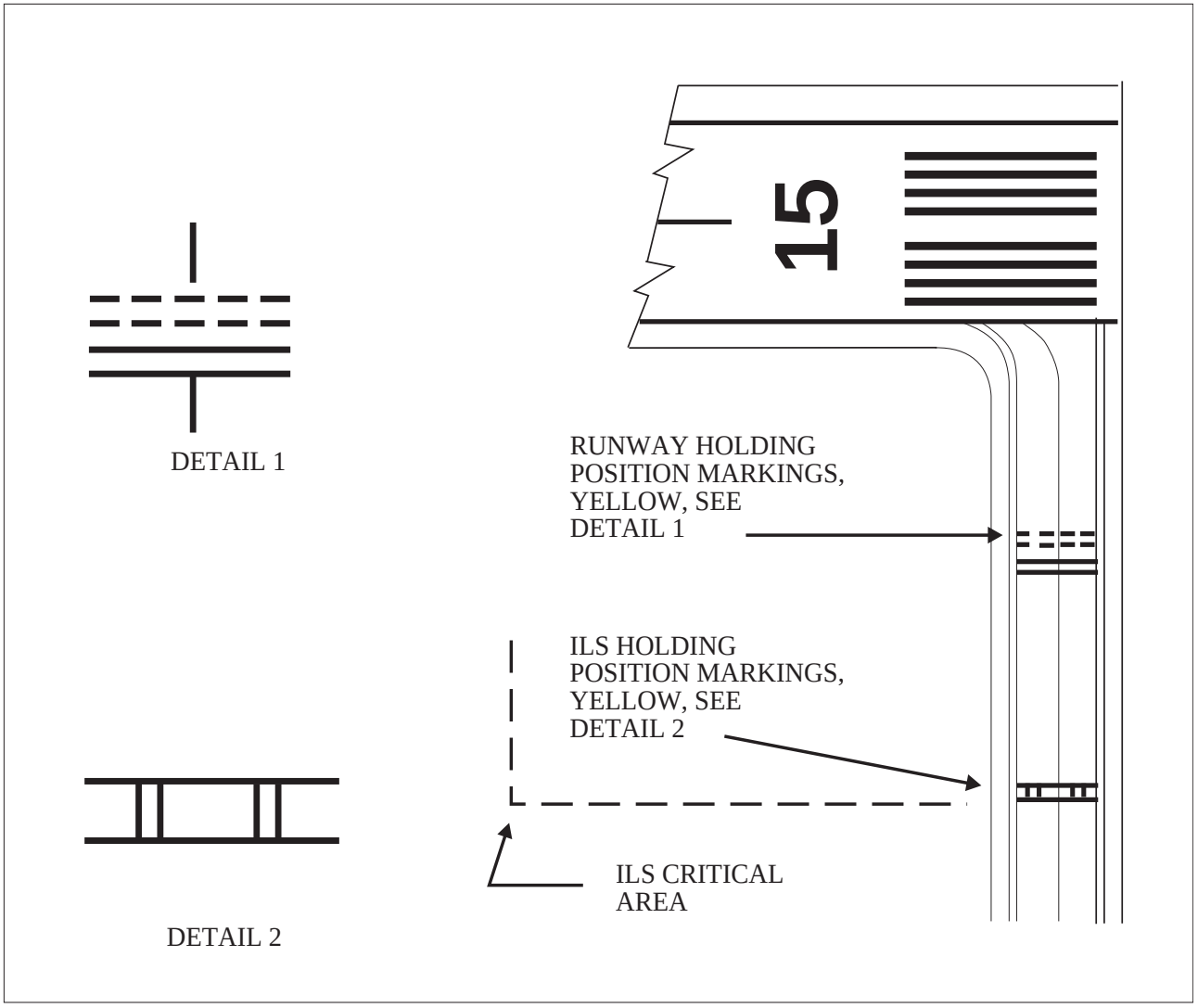


FIG 2–3–16
Holding Position Markings: ILS Critical Area



2–3–6. Other Markings

a. Vehicle Roadway Markings. The vehicle roadway markings are used when necessary to define a pathway for vehicle operations on or crossing areas that are also intended for aircraft. These markings consist of a white solid line to delineate each edge of the roadway and a dashed line to separate lanes within the edges of the roadway. In lieu of the solid lines, zipper markings may be used to delineate the edges of the vehicle roadway. (See FIG 2–3–18.) Details of the zipper markings are shown in FIG 2–3–19.

b. VOR Receiver Checkpoint Markings. The VOR receiver checkpoint marking allows the pilot to check aircraft instruments with navigational aid signals. It consists of a painted circle with an arrow in the middle; the arrow is aligned in the direction of the checkpoint azimuth. This marking, and an associated sign, is located on the airport apron or taxiway at a point selected for easy access by aircraft but where other airport traffic is not to be unduly obstructed. (See FIG 2–3–20.)

NOTE–
The associated sign contains the VOR station identification letter and course selected (published) for the check, the words "VOR check course," and DME data (when applicable). The color of the letters and numerals are black on a yellow background.

EXAMPLE–
DCA 176–356

communication is necessary to achieve safe and efficient operations.

4–3–18. Taxiing

a. General. Approval must be obtained prior to moving an aircraft or vehicle onto the movement area during the hours an Airport Traffic Control Tower is in operation.

1. Always state your position on the airport when calling the tower for taxi instructions.

2. The movement area is normally described in local bulletins issued by the airport manager or control tower. These bulletins may be found in FSSs, fixed base operators offices, air carrier offices, and operations offices.

3. The control tower also issues bulletins describing areas where they cannot provide ATC service due to nonvisibility or other reasons.

4. A clearance must be obtained prior to taxiing on a runway, taking off, or landing during the hours an Airport Traffic Control Tower is in operation.

5. A clearance must be obtained prior to crossing any runway. ATC will issue an explicit clearance for all runway crossings.

6. When assigned a takeoff runway, ATC will first specify the runway, issue taxi instructions, and state any hold short instructions or runway crossing clearances if the taxi route will cross a runway. This does not authorize the aircraft to "enter" or "cross" the assigned departure runway at any point. In order to preclude misunderstandings in radio communications, ATC will not use the word "cleared" in conjunction with authorization for aircraft to taxi.

7. When issuing taxi instructions to any point other than an assigned takeoff runway, ATC will specify the point to taxi to, issue taxi instructions, and state any hold short instructions or runway crossing clearances if the taxi route will cross a runway.

NOTE–
ATC is required to obtain a readback from the pilot of all runway hold short instructions.

8. If a pilot is expected to hold short of a runway approach ("APPCH") area or ILS holding position (see FIG 2–3–15, Taxiways Located in Runway Approach Area), ATC will issue instructions.

9. When taxi instructions are received from the controller, pilots should always read back:

(a) The runway assignment.

(b) Any clearance to enter a specific runway.

(c) Any instruction to hold short of a specific runway, or taxi into position and hold.

Controllers are required to request a readback of runway hold short assignment when it is not received from the pilot/vehicle.

b. ATC clearances or instructions pertaining to taxiing are predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions. Therefore, it is important that pilots clearly understand the clearance or instruction. Although an ATC clearance is issued for taxiing purposes, when operating in accordance with the CFRs, it is the responsibility of the pilot to avoid collision with other aircraft. Since "the pilot-in-command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft" the pilot should obtain clarification of any clearance or instruction which is not understood.

REFERENCE–
AIM, General, Paragraph 7–3–1

1. Good operating practice dictates that pilots acknowledge all runway crossing, hold short, or takeoff clearances unless there is some misunderstanding, at which time the pilot should query the controller until the clearance is understood.

NOTE–
Air traffic controllers are required to obtain from the pilot a readback of all runway hold short instructions.

2. Pilots operating a single pilot aircraft should monitor only assigned ATC communications after being cleared onto the active runway for departure. Single pilot aircraft should not monitor other than ATC communications until flight from Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area is completed. This same procedure should be practiced from after receipt of the clearance for landing until the landing and taxi activities are complete. Proper effective scanning for other aircraft, surface vehicles, or other objects should be continuously exercised in all cases.

3. If the pilot is unfamiliar with the airport or for any reason confusion exists as to the correct taxi routing, a request may be made for progressive taxi instructions which include step-by-step routing directions. Progressive instructions may also be issued if the controller deems it necessary due to

traffic or field conditions (for example, construction or closed taxiways).

c. At those airports where the U.S. Government operates the control tower and ATC has authorized noncompliance with the requirement for two-way radio communications while operating within the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, or at those airports where the U.S. Government does not operate the control tower and radio communications cannot be established, pilots shall obtain a clearance by visual light signal prior to taxiing on a runway and prior to takeoff and landing.

d. The following phraseologies and procedures are used in radiotelephone communications with aeronautical ground stations.

1. Request for taxi instructions prior to departure. State your aircraft identification, location, type of operation planned (VFR or IFR), and the point of first intended landing.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft: *"Washington ground, Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner at hangar eight, ready to taxi, I–F–R to Chicago."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft one three one five niner, Washington ground, runway two seven, taxi via taxiways Charlie and Delta, hold short of runway three three left."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, hold short of runway three three left."*

2. Receipt of ATC clearance. ARTCC clearances are relayed to pilots by airport traffic controllers in the following manner.

EXAMPLE–
Tower: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, cleared to the Chicago Midway Airport via Victor Eight, maintain eight thousand."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, cleared to the Chicago Midway Airport via Victor Eight, maintain eight thousand."*

NOTE–
Normally, an ATC IFR clearance is relayed to a pilot by the ground controller. At busy locations, however, pilots may be instructed by the ground controller to "contact clearance delivery" on a frequency designated for this purpose. No surveillance or control over the movement of traffic is exercised by this position of operation.

3. Request for taxi instructions after landing. State your aircraft identification, location, and that you request taxi instructions.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft: *"Dulles ground, Beechcraft One Four Two Six One clearing runway one right on taxiway echo three, request clearance to Page."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, Dulles ground, taxi to Page via taxiways echo three, echo one, and echo niner."*

or

Aircraft: *"Orlando ground, Beechcraft One Four Two Six One clearing runway one eight left at taxiway bravo three, request clearance to Page."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, Orlando ground, hold short of runway one eight right."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, hold short of runway one eight right."*

4–3–19. Taxi During Low Visibility

a. Pilots and aircraft operators should be constantly aware that during certain low visibility conditions the movement of aircraft and vehicles on airports may not be visible to the tower controller. This may prevent visual confirmation of an aircraft's adherence to taxi instructions.

b. Of vital importance is the need for pilots to notify the controller when difficulties are encountered or at the first indication of becoming disoriented. Pilots should proceed with extreme caution when taxiing toward the sun. When vision difficulties are encountered pilots should immediately inform the controller.

FIG 4−3−18
Cut Engines

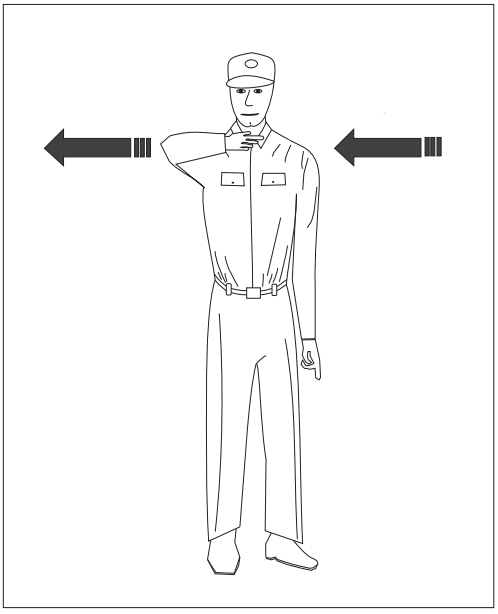


FIG 4−3−19
Night Operation

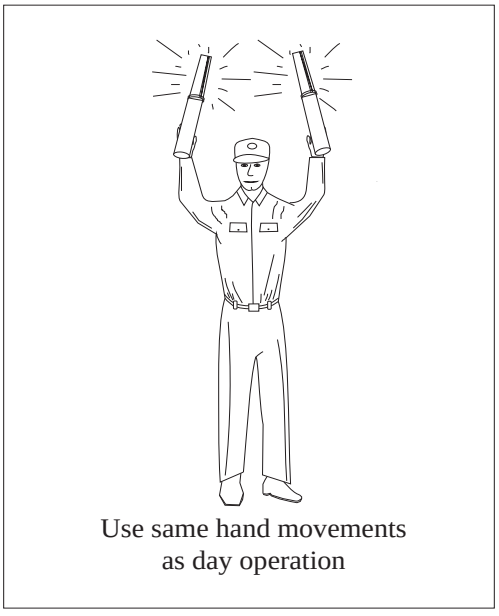
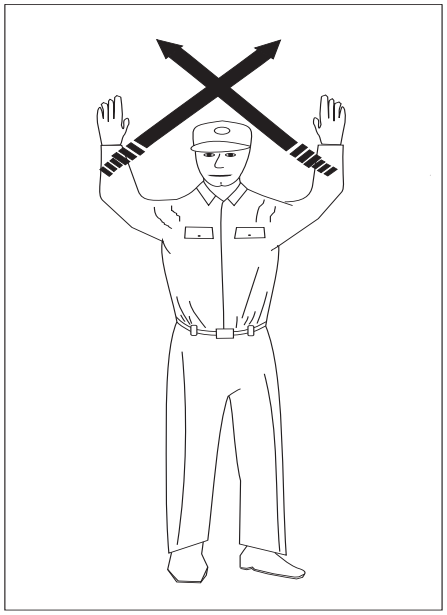


FIG 4−3−20
Stop



4–3–26. Operations at Uncontrolled Airports With Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Sensor System(AWSS)/Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)

a. Many airports throughout the National Airspace System are equipped with either ASOS, AWSS, or AWOS. At most airports with an operating control tower or human observer, the weather will be available to you in an Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) hourly or special observation format on the Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) or directly transmitted from the controller/observer.

b. At uncontrolled airports that are equipped with ASOS/AWSS/AWOS with ground–to–air broadcast capability, the one–minute updated airport weather should be available to you within approximately 25 NM of the airport below 10,000 feet. The frequency for the weather broadcast will be published on sectional charts and in the Airport/Facility Directory. Some part–time towered airports may also broadcast the automated weather on their ATIS frequency during the hours that the tower is closed.

c. Controllers issue SVFR or IFR clearances based on pilot request, known traffic and reported weather, i.e., METAR/Nonroutine (Special) Aviation Weather Report (SPECI) observations, when they are available. Pilots have access to more current weather at uncontrolled ASOS/AWSS/AWOS airports than do the controllers who may be located several miles away. Controllers will rely on the pilot to determine the current airport weather from the ASOS/AWSS/AWOS. All aircraft arriving or departing an ASOS/AWSS/AWOS equipped uncontrolled airport should monitor the airport weather frequency to ascertain the status of the airspace. Pilots in Class E airspace must be alert for changing weather conditions which may effect the status of the airspace from IFR/VFR. If ATC service is required for IFR/SVFR approach/departure or requested for VFR service, the pilot should advise the controller that he/she has received the one–minute weather and state his/her intentions.

EXAMPLE–
"I have the (airport) one–minute weather, request an ILS Runway 14 approach."

REFERENCE–
AIM, Weather Observing Programs, Paragraph 7–1–12

NOTE–
Some pilots have questioned this action and requested "traffic information" and were at a loss when the reply indicated "no traffic report." In such cases the controller has taken action to prevent a traffic confliction which would have occurred at a distant point.

b. A pilot may wish an explanation of the handling of the flight at the time of occurrence; however, controllers are not able to take time from their immediate control duties nor can they afford to overload the ATC communications channels to furnish explanations. Pilots may obtain an explanation by directing a letter or telephone call to the chief controller of the facility involved.

c. Pilots have the privilege of requesting a different clearance from that which has been issued by ATC if they feel that they have information which would make another course of action more practicable or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued.

4–4–5. Coded Departure Route (CDR)

a. CDRs provide air traffic control a rapid means to reroute departing aircraft when the filed route is constrained by either weather or congestion.

b. CDRs consist of an eight–character designator that represents a route of flight. The first three alphanumeric characters represent the departure airport, characters four through six represent the arrival airport, and the last two characters are chosen by the overlying ARTCC. For example, PITORDN1 is an alternate route from Pittsburgh to Chicago. Participating aircrews may then be re–cleared by air traffic control via the CDR abbreviated clearance, PITORDN1.

c. CDRs are updated on the 56 day charting cycle. Participating aircrews must insure that their CDR is current.

d. Traditionally, CDRs have been used by air transport companies that have signed a Memorandum of Agreement with the local air traffic control facility. General aviation customers who wish to participate in the program may now enter "CDR Capable" in the remarks section of their flight plan.

e. When "CDR Capable" is entered into the remarks section of the flight plan the general aviation customer communicates to ATC the ability to decode the current CDR into a flight plan route and the willingness to fly a different route than that which was filed.

4–4–6. Special VFR Clearances

a. An ATC clearance must be obtained *prior* to operating within a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area when the weather is less than that required for VFR flight. A VFR pilot may request and be given a clearance to enter, leave, or operate within most Class D and Class E surface areas and some Class B and Class C surface areas in special VFR conditions, traffic permitting, and providing such flight will not delay IFR operations. All special VFR flights must remain clear of clouds. The visibility requirements for special VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) are:

1. At least 1 statute mile flight visibility for operations within Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas.

2. At least 1 statute mile ground visibility if taking off or landing. If ground visibility is not reported at that airport, the flight visibility must be at least 1 statute mile.

3. The restrictions in subparagraphs 1 and 2 do not apply to helicopters. Helicopters must remain clear of clouds and may operate in Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas with less than 1 statute mile visibility.

b. When a control tower is located within the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, requests for clearances should be to the tower. In a Class E surface area, a clearance may be obtained from the nearest tower, FSS, or center.

c. It is not necessary to file a complete flight plan with the request for clearance, but pilots should state their intentions in sufficient detail to permit ATC to fit their flight into the traffic flow. The clearance will not contain a specific altitude as the pilot must remain clear of clouds. The controller may require the pilot to fly at or below a certain altitude due to other traffic, but the altitude specified will permit flight at or above the minimum safe altitude. In addition, at radar locations, flights may be vectored if necessary for control purposes or on pilot request.

NOTE–
The pilot is responsible for obstacle or terrain clearance.

REFERENCE–
14 CFR Section 91.119, Minimum safe altitudes: General.

d. Special VFR clearances are effective within Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas only. ATC does not provide separation after an aircraft leaves the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area on a special VFR clearance.

e. Special VFR operations by fixed-wing aircraft are prohibited in some Class B and Class C surface areas due to the volume of IFR traffic. A list of these Class B and Class C surface areas is contained in 14 CFR Part 91, Appendix D, Section 3. They are also depicted on sectional aeronautical charts.

f. ATC provides separation between Special VFR flights and between these flights and other IFR flights.

g. Special VFR operations by fixed-wing aircraft are prohibited between sunset and sunrise unless the pilot is instrument rated and the aircraft is equipped for IFR flight.

h. Pilots arriving or departing an uncontrolled airport that has automated weather broadcast capability (ASOS/AWSS/AWOS) should monitor the broadcast frequency, advise the controller that they have the "one–minute weather" and state intentions prior to operating within the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas.

REFERENCE–
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term– One–minute Weather.

4–4–7. Pilot Responsibility upon Clearance Issuance

a. Record ATC clearance. When conducting an IFR operation, make a written record of your clearance. The specified conditions which are a part of your air traffic clearance may be somewhat different from those included in your flight plan. Additionally, ATC may find it necessary to ADD conditions, such as particular departure route. The very fact that ATC specifies different or additional conditions means that other aircraft are involved in the traffic situation.

b. ATC Clearance/Instruction Readback. Pilots of airborne aircraft should read back *those parts* of ATC clearances and instructions containing altitude assignments or vectors as a means of mutual verification. The readback of the "numbers" serves as a double check between pilots and controllers and reduces the kinds of communications errors that occur when a number is either "misheard" or is incorrect.

1. Include the aircraft identification in all readbacks and acknowledgments. This aids controllers in determining that the correct aircraft received the clearance or instruction. The requirement to include aircraft identification in all readbacks and acknowledgements becomes more important as frequency congestion increases and when aircraft with similar call signs are on the same frequency.

EXAMPLE–
"Climbing to Flight Level three three zero, United Twelve" or "November Five Charlie Tango, roger, cleared to land."

2. Read back altitudes, altitude restrictions, and vectors in the same sequence as they are given in the clearance or instruction.

3. Altitudes contained in charted procedures, such as DPs, instrument approaches, etc., should not be read back unless they are specifically stated by the controller.

c. It is the responsibility of the pilot to accept or refuse the clearance issued.

4–4–8. IFR Clearance VFR-on-top

a. A pilot on an IFR flight plan operating in VFR weather conditions, may request VFR-on-top in lieu of an assigned altitude. This permits a pilot to select an altitude or flight level of their choice (subject to any ATC restrictions.)

b. Pilots desiring to climb through a cloud, haze, smoke, or other meteorological formation and then either cancel their IFR flight plan or operate VFR-on-top may request a climb to VFR-on-top. The ATC authorization shall contain either a top report or a statement that no top report is available, and a request to report reaching VFR-on-top. Additionally, the ATC authorization may contain a clearance limit, routing and an alternative clearance if VFR-on-top is not reached by a specified altitude.

c. A pilot on an IFR flight plan, operating in VFR conditions, may request to climb/descend in VFR conditions.

d. ATC may not authorize VFR-on-top/VFR conditions operations unless the pilot requests the VFR operation or a clearance to operate in VFR conditions will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not

Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures

Section 1. Preflight

5–1–1. Preflight Preparation

a. Every pilot is urged to receive a preflight briefing and to file a flight plan. This briefing should consist of the latest or most current weather, airport, and en route NAVAID information. Briefing service may be obtained from an FSS either by telephone or interphone, by radio when airborne, or by a personal visit to the station. Pilots with a current medical certificate in the 48 contiguous States may access toll-free the Direct User Access Terminal System (DUATS) through a personal computer. DUATS will provide alpha-numeric preflight weather data and allow pilots to file domestic VFR or IFR flight plans.

REFERENCE–
AIM, FAA Weather Services, Paragraph 7–1–2 lists DUATS vendors.

NOTE–
Pilots filing flight plans via "fast file" who desire to have their briefing recorded, should include a statement at the end of the recording as to the source of their weather briefing.

b. The information required by the FAA to process flight plans is contained on FAA Form 7233–1, Flight Plan, or FAA Form 7233–4, International Flight Plan. The forms are available at all flight service stations. Additional copies will be provided on request.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Flight Plan– VFR Flights, Paragraph 5–1–4
AIM, Flight Plan– IFR Flights, Paragraph 5–1–8
AIM, International Flight Plan– IFR Flights, Paragraph 5–1–9.

c. Consult an FSS or a Weather Service Office (WSO) for preflight weather briefing. Supplemental Weather Service Locations (SWSLs) do not provide weather briefings.

d. FSSs are required to advise of pertinent NOTAMs if a *standard* briefing is requested, but if they are overlooked, don't hesitate to remind the specialist that you have not received NOTAM information.

NOTE–
NOTAMs which are known in sufficient time for publication and are of 7 days duration or longer are normally incorporated into the Notices to Airmen Publication and carried there until cancellation time. FDC NOTAMs, which apply to instrument flight procedures, are also included in the Notices to Airmen Publication up to and including the number indicated in the FDC NOTAM legend. Printed NOTAMs are not provided during a briefing unless specifically requested by the pilot since the FSS specialist has no way of knowing whether the pilot has already checked the Notices to Airmen Publication prior to calling. Remember to ask for NOTAMs in the Notices to Airmen Publication. This information is not normally furnished during your briefing.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) System, Paragraph 5–1–3

e. Pilots are urged to use only the latest issue of aeronautical charts in planning and conducting flight operations. Aeronautical charts are revised and reissued on a regular scheduled basis to ensure that depicted data are current and reliable. In the conterminous U.S., Sectional Charts are updated every 6 months, IFR En Route Charts every 56 days, and amendments to civil IFR Approach Charts are accomplished on a 56–day cycle with a change notice volume issued on the 28–day midcycle. Charts that have been superseded by those of a more recent date may contain obsolete or incomplete flight information.

REFERENCE–
AIM, General Description of Each Chart Series, Paragraph 9–1–4

f. When requesting a preflight briefing, identify yourself as a pilot and provide the following:

1. **Type of flight planned; e.g., VFR or IFR.**
2. **Aircraft's number or pilot's name.**
3. **Aircraft type.**
4. **Departure Airport.**
5. **Route of flight.**
6. **Destination.**
7. **Flight altitude(s).**
8. **ETD and ETE.**

g. Prior to conducting a briefing, briefers are required to have the background information listed above so that they may tailor the briefing to the needs of the proposed flight. The objective is to communicate a "picture" of meteorological and aeronautical information necessary for the conduct of

a safe and efficient flight. Briefers use all available weather and aeronautical information to summarize data applicable to the proposed flight. They do not read weather reports and forecasts verbatim unless specifically requested by the pilot. FSS briefers do not provide FDC NOTAM information for special instrument approach procedures unless specifically asked. Pilots authorized by the FAA to use special instrument approach procedures must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for these procedures. Pilots who receive the information electronically will receive NOTAMs for special IAPs automatically.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Preflight Briefings, Paragraph 7–1–4 contains those items of a weather briefing that should be expected or requested.

h. FAA by 14 CFR Part 93, Subpart K, has designated High Density Traffic Airports (HDTAs) and has prescribed air traffic rules and requirements for operating aircraft (excluding helicopter operations) to and from these airports.

REFERENCE–
Airport/Facility Directory, Special Notices Section.
AIM, Airport Reservation Operations and Special Traffic Management Programs, Paragraph 4–1–22

i. In addition to the filing of a flight plan, if the flight will traverse or land in one or more foreign countries, it is particularly important that pilots leave a complete itinerary with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight's progress. If serious doubt arises as to the safety of the flight, that person should first contact the FSS.

REFERENCE–
*AIM, Flights Outside the U.S. and U.S. Territories, Paragraph 5–1–**1**.*

j. Pilots operating under provisions of 14 CFR Part 135 on a domestic flight and not having an FAA assigned 3–letter designator, are urged to prefix the normal registration (N) number with the letter "T" on flight plan filing; e.g., TN1234B.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Aircraft Call Signs, Paragraph 4–2–4

5–1–2. Follow IFR Procedures Even When Operating VFR

a. To maintain IFR proficiency, pilots are urged to practice IFR procedures whenever possible, even when operating VFR. Some suggested practices include:

1. Obtain a complete preflight and weather briefing. Check the NOTAMs.

2. File a flight plan. This is an excellent low cost insurance policy. The cost is the time it takes to fill it out. The insurance includes the knowledge that someone will be looking for you if you become overdue at your destination.

3. Use current charts.

4. Use the navigation aids. Practice maintaining a good course–keep the needle centered.

5. Maintain a constant altitude which is appropriate for the direction of flight.

6. Estimate en route position times.

7. Make accurate and frequent position reports to the FSSs along your route of flight.

b. Simulated IFR flight is recommended (under the hood); however, pilots are cautioned to review and adhere to the requirements specified in 14 CFR Section 91.109 before and during such flight.

c. When flying VFR at night, in addition to the altitude appropriate for the direction of flight, pilots should maintain an altitude which is at or above the minimum en route altitude as shown on charts. This is especially true in mountainous terrain, where there is usually very little ground reference. Do not depend on your eyes alone to avoid rising unlighted terrain, or even lighted obstructions such as TV towers.

5–1–3. Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) System

a. Time-critical aeronautical information which is of either a temporary nature or not sufficiently known in advance to permit publication on aeronautical charts or in other operational publications receives immediate dissemination via the National NOTAM System.

NOTE–
1. *NOTAM information is that aeronautical information that could affect a pilot's decision to make a flight. It includes such information as airport or aerodrome primary runway closures, taxiways, ramps, obstructions, communications, airspace, changes in the status of navigational aids, ILSs, radar service availability, and other information essential to planned en route, terminal, or landing operations.*

2. *NOTAM information is transmitted using standard contractions to reduce transmission time. See TBL 5–1–1 for a listing of the most commonly used contractions. For a complete listing, see FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions.*

b. NOTAM information is classified into four categories. These are NOTAM (D) or distant, Flight

Data Center (FDC) NOTAMs, Pointer NOTAMs, and Military NOTAMs.

1. NOTAM (D) information is disseminated for all navigational facilities that are part of the National Airspace System (NAS), all public use airports, seaplane bases, and heliports listed in the Airport/ Facility Directory (A/FD). The complete file of all NOTAM (D) information is maintained in a computer database at the Weather Message Switching Center (WMSC), located in Atlanta, Georgia. This category of information is distributed automatically via Service A telecommunications system. Air traffic facilities, primarily FSSs, with Service A capability have access to the entire WMSC database of NOTAMs. These NOTAMs remain available via Service A for the duration of their validity or until published. Once published, the NOTAM data is deleted from the system. NOTAM (D) information includes such data as taxiway closures, personnel and equipment near or crossing runways, and airport lighting aids that do not affect instrument approach criteria, such as VASI.

All NOTAM Ds must have one of the following keywords as the first part of the text after the location identifier:

Keyword	Definition
RWY . . . . . *Example*	**Runway** ABC XX/XXX ABC RWY 3/21 CLSD
TWY . . . . . *Example*	**Taxiway** ABC XX/XXX ABC TWY F LGTS OTS
RAMP . . . . . *Example*	**Ramp** ABC XX/XXX ABC RAMP TERMINAL EAST SIDE CONSTRUCTION
APRON . . . . . *Example*	**Apron** ABC XX/XXX ABC APRON SW TWY C NEAR HANGARS CLSD
AD . . . . . *Example*	**Aerodrome** ABC XX/XXX ABC AD ABN OTS
OBST . . . . . *Example*	**Obstruction** ABC XX/XXX ABC OBST TOWER 283 (246 AGL) 2.2 S LGTS OTS (ASR 1065881) TIL 1003282300
NAV . . . . . *Example*	**Navigation** ABC XX/XXX ABC NAV VOR OTS
COM . . . . . *Example*	**Communications** ABC XX/XXX ABC COM ATIS OTS
SVC . . . . . *Example*	**Services** XX/XXX ABC SVC JET FUEL UNAVBL TIL 1003291600
AIRSPACE . . *Example*	**Airspace** ABC XX/XXX ABC AIRSPACE AIRSHOW ACFT 5000/BLW 5 NMR AIRPORT AVOIDANCE ADZD TIL 1003152200
U	**Unverified Aeronautical Information** (*for use only where authorized by Letter of Agreement*)*
O	**Other Aeronautical Information****

* **Unverified Aeronauticatical Information** can be movement area or other information received that meets NOTAM criteria and has not been confirmed by the Airport Manager (AMGR) or their designee. If Flight Service is unable to contact airport management, Flight Service shall forward (U) NOTAM information to the United States NOTAM System (USNS). Subsequent to USNS distribution of a (U) NOTAM, Flight Service will inform airport management of the action taken as soon as practical. Any such NOTAM will be prefaced with "(U)" as the keyword and followed by the appropriate keyword contraction, following the location identifier.

** **Other Aeronautical Information** is that which is received from any authorized source that may be beneficial to aircraft operations and does not meet defined NOTAM criteria. Any such NOTAM will be prefaced with "(O)" as the keyword following the location identifier.

2. FDC NOTAMs

(a) On those occasions when it becomes necessary to disseminate information which is regulatory in nature, the National Flight Data Center (NFDC), in Washington, DC, will issue an FDC NOTAM. FDC NOTAMs contain such things as amendments to published IAPs and other current aeronautical charts. They are also used to advertise temporary flight restrictions caused by such things as natural disasters or large-scale public events that may generate a congestion of air traffic over a site.

(b) FDC NOTAMs are transmitted via Service A only once and are kept on file at the FSS until published or canceled. FSSs are responsible for maintaining a file of current, unpublished FDC NOTAMs concerning conditions within 400 miles of their facilities. FDC information concerning conditions that are more than 400 miles from the FSS, or that is already published, is given to a pilot only on request.

NOTE–

1. *DUATS vendors will provide FDC NOTAMs only upon site-specific requests using a location identifier.*

2. *NOTAM data may not always be current due to the changeable nature of national airspace system components, delays inherent in processing information, and occasional temporary outages of the U.S. NOTAM system. While en route, pilots should contact FSSs and obtain updated information for their route of flight and destination.*

3. Pointer NOTAMs. NOTAMs issued by a flight service station to highlight or point out another NOTAM, such as an FDC or NOTAM (D) NOTAM. This type of NOTAM will assist users in cross–referencing important information that may not be found under an airport or NAVAID identifier. Keywords in pointer NOTAMs must match the keywords in the NOTAM that is being pointed out. The keyword in pointer NOTAMs related to Temporary Flight Restrictions (TFR) must be AIRSPACE.

4. Military NOTAMs. NOTAMs pertaining to U.S. Air Force, Army, Marine, and Navy navigational aids/airports that are part of the NAS.

c. An integral part of the NOTAM System is the Notices to Airmen Publication (NTAP) published every four weeks. Data is included in this publication to reduce congestion on the telecommunications circuits and, therefore, is not available via Service A. Once published, the information is not provided during pilot weather briefings unless specifically requested by the pilot. This publication contains two sections.

1. The first section consists of notices that meet the criteria for NOTAM (D) and are expected to remain in effect for an extended period and FDC NOTAMs that are current at the time of publication. Occasionally, unique information is included in this section when it will contribute to flight safety.

2. The second section contains special notices that are either too long or concern a wide or unspecified geographic area and are not suitable for inclusion in the first section. The content of these notices vary widely and there are no specific criteria for their inclusion, other than their enhancement of flight safety.

3. The number of the last FDC NOTAM included in the publication is noted on the first page to aid the user in updating the listing with any FDC NOTAMs which may have been issued between the cut-off date and the date the publication is received. All information contained will be carried until the information expires, is canceled, or in the case of permanent conditions, is published in other publications, such as the A/FD.

4. All new notices entered, excluding FDC NOTAMs, will be published only if the information is expected to remain in effect for at least 7 days after the effective date of the publication.

d. NOTAM information is not available from a Supplemental Weather Service Locations (SWSL).

TBL 5–1–1

NOTAM CONTRACTIONS

	A
AADC	Approach and Departure Control
ABV	Above
A/C	Approach Control
ACCUM	Accumulate
ACFT	Aircraft
ACR	Air Carrier
ACTV/ACTVT	Active/Activate
ADF	Automatic Direction Finder
ADJ	Adjacent
ADZ/ADZD	Advise/Advised
AFD	Airport/Facility Directory
AFSS	Automated Flight Service Station
ALS	Approach Light System
ALTM	Altimeter
ALTN/ALTNLY	Alternate/Alternately
ALSTG	Altimeter Setting
AMDT	Amendment
APCH	Approach
APL	Airport Lights
ARFF	Aircraft Rescue & Fire Fighting
ARPT	Airport
ARSR	Air Route Surveillance Radar
ASDE	Airport Surface Detection Equipment
ASOS	Automated Surface Observing System
ASPH	Asphalt
ASR	Airport Surveillance Radar
ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATCT	Airport Traffic Control Tower
ATIS	Automated Terminal Information Service
AVBL	Available
AWOS	Automatic Weather Observing System
AWSS	Automated Weather Sensor System
AZM	Azimuth
	B
BC	Back Course
BCN	Beacon
BERM	Snowbank/s Containing Earth/Gravel

BLO	Below
BND	Bound
BRAF	Braking Action Fair
BRAG	Braking Action Good
BRAN	Braking Action Nil
BRAP	Braking Action Poor
BYD	Beyond
	C
CAAS	Class A Airspace
CAT	Category
CBAS	Class B Airspace
CBSA	Class B Surface Area
CCAS	Class C Airspace
CCLKWS	Counterclockwise
CCSA	Class C Surface Area
CD	Clearance Delivery
CDAS	Class D Airspace
CDSA	Class D Surface Area
CEAS	Class E Airspace
CESA	Class E Surface Area
CFA	Controlled Firing Area
CGAS	Class G Airspace
CHG	Change
CLKWS	Clockwise
CLNC	Clearance
CLSD	Closed
CMSN/CMSND	Commission/Commissioned
CNCL/CNCLD/ CNL	Cancel/Canceled/Cancel
CNTRLN	Centerline
CONC	Concrete
CONT	Continue/Continuously
CRS	Course
CTAF	Common Traffic Advisory Frequency
CTLZ	Control Zone
	D
DALGT	Daylight
DCMS/DCMSND	Decommission/Decommissioned
DCT	Direct
DEP	Depart/Departure
DEPT	Department
DH	Decision Height
DISABLD	Disabled
DLA/DLAD	Delay/Delayed
DLT/DLTD	Delete/Deleted
DLY	Daily
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
DMSTN	Demonstration
DP	Instrument Departure Procedure
DPCR	Departure Procedure
DRCT	Direct
DRFT/DRFTD	Drift/Drifted Snowbank/s Caused By Wind Action
DSPLCD	Displaced
DSTC	Distance
DWPNT	Dew Point

	E
E	East
EBND	Eastbound
EFAS	En Route Flight Advisory Service
EFF	Effective
ELEV	Elevate/Elevation
ENG	Engine
ENTR	Entire
EXCP	Except
	F
FA	Final Approach
FAC	Facility
FAF	Final Approach Fix
FDC	Flight Data Center
FM	Fan Marker
FREQ	Frequency
FRH	Fly Runway Heading
FRZN	Frozen
FRNZ SLR	Frozen Slush on Runway/s
FSS	Flight Service Station
	G
GC	Ground Control
GCA	Ground Controlled Approach
GOVT	Government
GP	Glide Path
GPS	Global Positioning System
GRVL	Gravel
GS	Glide Slope
	H
HAA	Height Above Airport
HAT	Height Above Touchdown
HAZ	Hazard
HEL	Helicopter
HELI	Heliport
HF	High Frequency
HIRL	High Intensity Runway Lights
HIWAS	Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory Service
HOL	Holiday
HP	Holding Pattern
	I
IAP	Instrument Approach Procedure
IBND	Inbound
ID	Identification
IDENT	Identify/Identifier/Identification
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IM	Inner Marker
IN	Inch/Inches
INDEFLY	Indefinitely
INOP	Inoperative
INST	Instrument
INT	Intersection
INTST	Intensity
IR	Ice On Runway/s

	L
L	Left
LAA	Local Airport Advisory
LAT	Latitude
LAWRS	Limited Aviation Weather Reporting Station
LB	Pound/Pounds
LC	Local Control
LCL	Local
LCTD	Located
LDA	Localizer Type Directional Aid
LDIN	Lead In Lighting System
LGT/LGTD/ LGTS	Light/Lighted/Lights
LIRL	Low Intensity Runway Edge Lights
LLWAS	Low Level Wind Shear Alert System
LMM	Compass Locator at ILS Middle Marker
LNDG	Landing
LOC	Localizer
LOM	Compass Locator at ILS Outer Marker
LONG	Longitude
LRN	LORAN
LSR	Loose Snow on Runway/s
LT	Left Turn After Take-off
	M
MALS	Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System
MALSF	Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashers
MALSR	Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights
MAP	Missed Approach Point
MCA	Minimum Crossing Altitude
MDA	Minimum Descent Altitude
MEA	Minimum En Route Altitude
MED	Medium
MIN	Minute
MIRL	Medium Intensity Runway Edge Lights
MLS	Microwave Landing System
MM	Middle Marker
MNM	Minimum
MOCA	Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude
MONTR	Monitor
MSA	Minimum Safe Altitude/Minimum Sector Altitude
MSAW	Minimum Safe Altitude Warning
MSL	Mean Sea Level
MU	Designate a Friction Value Representing Runway Surface Conditions
MUD	Mud
MUNI	Municipal
	N
N	North
NA	Not Authorized
NBND	Northbound
NDB	Nondirectional Radio Beacon
NE	Northeast
NGT	Night
NM	Nautical Mile/s
NMR	Nautical Mile Radius
NOPT	No Procedure Turn Required
NTAP	Notice To Airmen Publication
NW	Northwest
	O
OBSC	Obscured
OBSTN	Obstruction
OM	Outer Marker
OPER	Operate
OPN	Operation
ORIG	Original
OTS	Out of Service
OVR	Over
	P
PAEW	Personnel and Equipment Working
PAJA	Parachute Jumping Activities
PAPI	Precision Approach Path Indicator
PAR	Precision Approach Radar
PARL	Parallel
PAT	Pattern
PCL	Pilot Controlled Lighting
PERM/PERMLY	Permanent/Permanently
PLA	Practice Low Approach
PLW	Plow/Plowed
PN	Prior Notice Required
PPR	Prior Permission Required
PREV	Previous
PRIRA	Primary Radar
PROC	Procedure
PROP	Propeller
PSGR	Passenger/s
PSR	Packed Snow on Runway/s
PT/PTN	Procedure Turn
PVT	Private
	R
RAIL	Runway Alignment Indicator Lights
RCAG	Remote Communication Air/Ground Facility
RCL	Runway Centerline
RCLS	Runway Centerline Light System
RCO	Remote Communication Outlet
RCV/RCVR	Receive/Receiver
REF	Reference
REIL	Runway End Identifier Lights
RELCTD	Relocated
RMDR	Remainder
RNAV	Area Navigation
RPRT	Report
RQRD	Required
RRL	Runway Remaining Lights
RSVN	Reservation
RT	Right Turn after Take-off
RTE	Route
RTR	Remote Transmitter/Receiver

RTS	Return to Service
RUF	Rough
RVR	Runway Visual Range
RVRM	RVR Midpoint
RVRR	RVR Rollout
RVRT	RVR Touchdown
RVV	Runway Visibility Value
RY/RWY	Runway
	S
S	South
SBND	Southbound
SDF	Simplified Directional Facility
SE	Southeast
SECRA	Secondary Radar
SFL	Sequenced Flashing Lights
SI	Straight-In Approach
SIR	Packed or Compacted Snow and Ice on Runway/s
SKED	Scheduled
SLR	Slush on Runway/s
SNBNK	Snowbank/s Caused by Plowing
SND	Sand/Sanded
SNGL	Single
SNW	Snow
SPD	Speed
SR	Sunrise
SS	Sunset
SSALF	Simplified Short Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashers
SSALR	Simplified Short Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights
SSALS	Simplified Short Approach Lighting System
STAR	Standard Terminal Arrival
SVC	Service
SW	Southwest
SWEPT	Swept or Broom/Broomed
	T
TACAN	Tactical Air Navigational Aid
TDZ/TDZL	Touchdown Zone/Touchdown Zone Lights
TFC	Traffic
TFR	Temporary Flight Restriction
TGL	Touch and Go Landings
THN	Thin
THR	Threshold
THRU	Through
TIL	Until
TKOF	Takeoff
TMPRY	Temporary
TRML	Terminal
TRNG	Training
TRSA	Terminal Radar Service Area
TRSN	Transition
TSNT	Transient
TWEB	Transcribed Weather Broadcast
TWR	Tower

TWY	Taxiway
	U
UNAVBL	Unavailable
UNLGTD	Unlighted
UNMKD	Unmarked
UNMON	Unmonitored
UNRELBL	Unreliable
UNUSBL	Unusable
	V
VASI	Visual Approach Slope Indicator
VDP	Visual Descent Point
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VIA	By Way Of
VICE	Instead/Versus
VIS/VSBY	Visibility
VMC	Visual Meteorological Conditions
VOL	Volume
VOLMET	Meteorlogical Information for Aircraft in Flight
VOR	VHF Omni-Directional Radio Range
VORTAC	VOR and TACAN (collocated)
VOT	VOR Test Signal
	W
W	West
WBND	Westbound
WEA/WX	Weather
WI	Within
WKDAYS	Monday through Friday
WKEND	Saturday and Sunday
WND	Wind
WP	Waypoint
WSR	Wet Snow on Runway/s
WTR	Water on Runway/s
WX	Weather
/	And
+	In Addition/Also

5–1–4. Flight Plan – VFR Flights

a. Except for operations in or penetrating a Coastal or Domestic ADIZ or DEWIZ a flight plan is not required for VFR flight.

REFERENCE–
AIM, National Security, Paragraph 5–6–1

b. It is strongly recommended that a flight plan (for a VFR flight) be filed with an FAA FSS. This will ensure that you receive VFR Search and Rescue Protection.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Search and Rescue, Paragraph 6–2–7gives the proper method of filing a VFR flight plan.

c. To obtain maximum benefits from the flight plan program, flight plans should be filed directly with the nearest FSS. For your convenience, FSSs provide aeronautical and meteorological briefings

while accepting flight plans. Radio may be used to file if no other means are available.

NOTE–
Some states operate aeronautical communications facilities which will accept and forward flight plans to the FSS for further handling.

d. When a "stopover" flight is anticipated, it is recommended that a separate flight plan be filed for each "leg" when the stop is expected to be more than 1 hour duration.

e. Pilots are encouraged to give their departure times directly to the FSS serving the departure airport or as otherwise indicated by the FSS when the flight plan is filed. This will ensure more efficient flight plan service and permit the FSS to advise you of significant changes in aeronautical facilities or meteorological conditions. When a VFR flight plan is filed, it will be held by the FSS until 1 hour after the proposed departure time unless:

1. The actual departure time is received.

2. A revised proposed departure time is received.

3. At a time of filing, the FSS is informed that the proposed departure time will be met, but actual time cannot be given because of inadequate communications (assumed departures).

f. On pilot's request, at a location having an active tower, the aircraft identification will be forwarded by the tower to the FSS for reporting the actual departure time. This procedure should be avoided at busy airports.

g. Although position reports are not required for VFR flight plans, periodic reports to FAA FSSs along the route are good practice. Such contacts permit significant information to be passed to the transiting aircraft and also serve to check the progress of the flight should it be necessary for any reason to locate the aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
1. *Bonanza 314K, over Kingfisher at (time), VFR flight plan, Tulsa to Amarillo.*

2. *Cherokee 5133J, over Oklahoma City at (time), Shreveport to Denver, no flight plan.*

h. Pilots not operating on an IFR flight plan and when in level cruising flight, are cautioned to conform with VFR cruising altitudes appropriate to the direction of flight.

i. When filing VFR flight plans, indicate aircraft equipment capabilities by appending the appropriate suffix to aircraft type in the same manner as that prescribed for IFR flight.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Flight Plan– IFR Flights, Paragraph 5–1–8

j. Under some circumstances, ATC computer tapes can be useful in constructing the radar history of a downed or crashed aircraft. In each case, knowledge of the aircraft's transponder equipment is necessary in determining whether or not such computer tapes might prove effective.

FIG 5–1–1
FAA Flight Plan
Form 7233–1 (8–82)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
FLIGHT PLAN

(FAA USE ONLY) ☐ PILOT BRIEFING ☐ VNR ☐ STOPOVER | TIME STARTED | SPECIALIST INITIALS

1. TYPE	2. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION	3. AIRCRAFT TYPE/ SPECIAL EQUIPMENT	4. TRUE AIRSPEED	5. DEPARTURE POINT	6. DEPARTURE TIME		7. CRUISING ALTITUDE
VFR / IFR / DVFR			KTS		PROPOSED (Z)	ACTUAL (Z)	

8. ROUTE OF FLIGHT

9. DESTINATION (Name of airport and city)	10. EST. TIME ENROUTE		11. REMARKS
	HOURS	MINUTES	

12. FUEL ON BOARD		13. ALTERNATE AIRPORT(S)	14. PILOT'S NAME, ADDRESS & TELEPHONE NUMBER & AIRCRAFT HOME BASE	15. NUMBER ABOARD
HOURS	MINUTES		17. DESTINATION CONTACT/TELEPHONE (OPTIONAL)	

16. COLOR OF AIRCRAFT

CIVIL AIRCRAFT PILOTS, FAR 91 requires you file an IFR flight plan to operate under instrument flight rules in controlled airspace. Failure to file could result in a civil penalty not to exceed $1,000 for each violation (Section 901 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958, as amended). Filing of a VFR flight plan is recommended as a good operating practice. See also Part 99 for requirements concerning DVFR flight plans.

FAA Form 7233-1 (8-82) CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN WITH _____ FSS ON ARRIVAL

k. Flight Plan Form – (See FIG 5–1–1).

l. Explanation of VFR Flight Plan Items.

1. Block 1. Check the type flight plan. Check both the VFR and IFR blocks if composite VFR/IFR.

2. Block 2. Enter your complete aircraft identification including the prefix "N" if applicable.

3. Block 3. Enter the designator for the aircraft, or if unknown, consult an FSS briefer.

4. Block 4. Enter your true airspeed (TAS).

5. Block 5. Enter the departure airport identifier code, or if unknown, the name of the airport.

6. Block 6. Enter the proposed departure time in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) (Z). If airborne, specify the actual or proposed departure time as appropriate.

7. Block 7. Enter the appropriate VFR altitude (to assist the briefer in providing weather and wind information).

8. Block 8. Define the route of flight by using NAVAID identifier codes and airways.

9. Block 9. Enter the destination airport identifier code, or if unknown, the airport name.

NOTE–
Include the city name (or even the state name) if needed for clarity.

10. Block 10. Enter your estimated time en route in hours and minutes.

11. Block 11. Enter only those remarks pertinent to ATC or to the clarification of other flight plan information, such as the appropriate radiotelephony (call sign) associated with the designator filed in Block 2. Items of a personal nature are not accepted.

12. Block 12. Specify the fuel on board in hours and minutes.

13. Block 13. Specify an alternate airport if desired.

14. Block 14. Enter your complete name, address, and telephone number. Enter sufficient information to identify home base, airport, or operator.

NOTE–
This information is essential in the event of search and rescue operations.

15. Block 15. Enter total number of persons on board (POB) including crew.

16. Block 16. Enter the predominant colors.

17. Block 17. Record the FSS name for closing the flight plan. If the flight plan is closed with a different FSS or facility, state the recorded FSS name that would normally have closed your flight plan.

NOTE–
1. ***Optional****– record a destination telephone number to assist search and rescue contact should you fail to report or cancel your flight plan within 1/2 hour after your estimated time of arrival (ETA).*

2. *The information transmitted to the destination FSS will consist only of flight plan blocks 2, 3, 9, and 10. Estimated time en route (ETE) will be converted to the correct ETA.*

5–1–5. Operational Information System (OIS)

a. The FAA's Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) maintains a web site with near real–time National Airspace System (NAS) status information. NAS operators are encouraged to access the web site at **http://www.fly.faa.gov** prior to filing their flight plan.

b. The web site consolidates information from advisories. An advisory is a message that is disseminated electronically by the ATCSCC that contains information pertinent to the NAS.

1. Advisories are normally issued for the following items:

(a) Ground Stops.

(b) Ground Delay Programs.

(c) Route Information.

(d) Plan of Operations.

(e) Facility Outages and Scheduled Facility Outages.

(f) Volcanic Ash Activity Bulletins.

(g) Special Traffic Management Programs.

2. This list is not all–inclusive. Any time there is information that may be beneficial to a large number of people, an advisory may be sent. Additionally, there may be times when an advisory is not sent due to workload or the short length of time of the activity.

3. Route information is available on the web site and in specific advisories. Some route information, subject to the 56–day publishing cycle, is located on the "OIS" under "Products," Route Management Tool (RMT), and "What's New" Playbook. The RMT and Playbook contain routings for use by Air Traffic and NAS operators when they are coordinated "real–time" and are then published in an ATCSCC advisory.

4. Route advisories are identified by the word "Route" in the header; the associated action is required (RQD), recommended (RMD), planned (PLN), or for your information (FYI). Operators are expected to file flight plans consistent with the Route RQD advisories.

5. Electronic System Impact Reports are on the intranet at http://www.atcscc.faa.gov/ois/ under "System Impact Reports." This page lists scheduled outages/events/projects that significantly impact the NAS; for example, runway closures, air shows, and construction projects. Information includes anticipated delays and traffic management initiatives (TMI) that may be implemented.

5–1–6. Flight Plan– Defense VFR (DVFR) Flights

VFR flights into a Coastal or Domestic ADIZ/DEWIZ are required to file DVFR flight plans for security purposes. Detailed ADIZ procedures are found in Section 6, National Security and Interception Procedures, of this chapter. (See 14 CFR Part 99.)

5–1–7. Composite Flight Plan (VFR/IFR Flights)

a. Flight plans which specify VFR operation for one portion of a flight, and IFR for another portion, will be accepted by the FSS at the point of departure. If VFR flight is conducted for the first portion of the flight, pilots should report their departure time to the FSS with whom the VFR/IFR flight plan was filed;

and, subsequently, close the VFR portion and request ATC clearance from the FSS nearest the point at which change from VFR to IFR is proposed. Regardless of the type facility you are communicating with (FSS, center, or tower), it is the pilot's responsibility to request that facility to "CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN." The pilot must remain in VFR weather conditions until operating in accordance with the IFR clearance.

b. When a flight plan indicates IFR for the first portion of flight and VFR for the latter portion, the pilot will normally be cleared to the point at which the change is proposed. After reporting over the clearance limit and not desiring further IFR clearance, the pilot should advise ATC to cancel the IFR portion of the flight plan. Then, the pilot should contact the nearest FSS to activate the VFR portion of the flight plan. If the pilot desires to continue the IFR flight plan beyond the clearance limit, the pilot should contact ATC at least 5 minutes prior to the clearance limit and request further IFR clearance. If the requested clearance is not received prior to reaching the clearance limit fix, the pilot will be expected to enter into a standard holding pattern on the radial or course to the fix unless a holding pattern for the clearance limit fix is depicted on a U.S. Government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low or high altitude enroute, area or STAR chart. In this case the pilot will hold according to the depicted pattern.

5–1–8. Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233–1)– Domestic IFR Flights

NOTE–

1. *Procedures outlined in this section apply to operators filing FAA Form 7233–1 (Flight Plan) and to flights that will be conducted entirely within U.S. domestic airspace.*

2. *Filers utilizing FAA Form 7233–1 may not be eligible for assignment of RNAV SIDs and STARs. Filers desiring assignment of these procedures should file using FAA Form 7233–4 (International Flight Plan), as described in paragraph 5–1–9.*

a. General

1. Prior to departure from within, or prior to entering controlled airspace, a pilot must submit a complete flight plan and receive an air traffic clearance, if weather conditions are below VFR minimums. Instrument flight plans may be submitted to the nearest FSS or ATCT either in person or by telephone (or by radio if no other means are available). Pilots should file IFR flight plans at least 30 minutes prior to estimated time of departure to preclude possible delay in receiving a departure clearance from ATC. In order to provide FAA traffic management units strategic route planning capabilities, nonscheduled operators conducting IFR operations above FL 230 are requested to voluntarily file IFR flight plans at least 4 hours prior to estimated time of departure (ETD). To minimize your delay in entering Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas at destination when IFR weather conditions exist or are forecast at that airport, an IFR flight plan should be filed before departure. Otherwise, a 30 minute delay is not unusual in receiving an ATC clearance because of time spent in processing flight plan data. Traffic saturation frequently prevents control personnel from accepting flight plans by radio. In such cases, the pilot is advised to contact the nearest FSS for the purpose of filing the flight plan.

NOTE–

1. *There are several methods of obtaining IFR clearances at nontower, non–FSS, and outlying airports. The procedure may vary due to geographical features, weather conditions, and the complexity of the ATC system. To determine the most effective means of receiving an IFR clearance, pilots should ask the nearest FSS the most appropriate means of obtaining the IFR clearance.*

2. *When requesting an IFR clearance, it is highly recommended that the departure airport be identified by stating the city name and state and/or the airport location identifier in order to clarify to ATC the exact location of the intended airport of departure.*

2. When filing an IFR flight plan, include as a prefix to the aircraft type, the number of aircraft when more than one and/or heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate.

EXAMPLE–

H/DC10/A
2/F15/A

3. When filing an IFR flight plan, identify the equipment capability by adding a suffix, preceded by a slant, to the AIRCRAFT TYPE, as shown in TBL 5–1–2, Aircraft Suffixes.

NOTE–

1. *ATC issues clearances based on filed suffixes. Pilots should determine the appropriate suffix based upon desired services and/or routing. For example, if a desired route/procedure requires GPS, a pilot should file /G even if the aircraft also qualifies for other suffixes.*

2. *For procedures requiring GPS, if the navigation system does not automatically alert the flight crew of a loss of GPS, the operator must develop procedures to verify correct GPS operation.*

3. *The suffix is not to be added to the aircraft identification or be transmitted by radio as part of the aircraft identification.*

4. It is recommended that pilots file the maximum transponder or navigation capability of their aircraft in the equipment suffix. This will provide ATC with the necessary information to utilize all facets of navigational equipment and transponder capabilities available.

5. When filing an IFR flight plan via telephone or radio, it is highly recommended that the departure airport be clearly identified by stating the city name and state and/or airport location identifier. With cell phone use and flight service specialists covering larger areas of the country, clearly identifying the departure airport can prevent confusing your airport of departure with those of identical or similar names in other states.

TBL 5–1–2
Aircraft Suffixes

Suffix	Equipment Capability
	NO DME
/X	No transponder
/T	Transponder with no Mode C
/U	Transponder with Mode C
	DME
/D	No transponder
/B	Transponder with no Mode C
/A	Transponder with Mode C
	TACAN ONLY
/M	No transponder
/N	Transponder with no Mode C
/P	Transponder with Mode C
	AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)
/Y	LORAN, VOR/DME, or INS with no transponder
/C	LORAN, VOR/DME, or INS, transponder with no Mode C
/I	LORAN, VOR/DME, or INS, transponder with Mode C
	ADVANCED RNAV WITH TRANSPONDER AND MODE C (If an aircraft is unable to operate with a transponder and/or Mode C, it will revert to the appropriate code listed above under Area Navigation.)
/E	Flight Management System (FMS) with DME/DME and IRU position updating
/F	FMS with DME/DME position updating
/G	Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS), including GPS or Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS), with en route and terminal capability.
/R	Required Navigational Performance (RNP). The aircraft meets the RNP type prescribed for the route segment(s), route(s) and/or area concerned.
	REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMUM (RVSM). Prior to conducting RVSM operations within the U.S., the operator must obtain authorization from the FAA or from the responsible authority, as appropriate.
/J	/E with RVSM
/K	/F with RVSM
/L	/G with RVSM
/Q	/R with RVSM
/W	RVSM

11. Block 11. Enter only those remarks pertinent to ATC or to the clarification of other flight plan information, such as the appropriate radiotelephony (call sign) associated with the designator filed in Block 2. Items of a personal nature are not accepted. Do not assume that remarks will be automatically transmitted to every controller. Specific ATC or en route requests should be made directly to the appropriate controller.

NOTE–
"DVRSN" should be placed in Block 11 only if the pilot/company is requesting priority handling to their original destination from ATC as a result of a diversion as defined in the Pilot/Controller Glossary.

12. Block 12. Specify the fuel on board, computed from the departure point.

13. Block 13. Specify an alternate airport if desired or required, but do not include routing to the alternate airport.

14. Block 14. Enter the complete name, address, and telephone number of pilot-in-command, or in the case of a formation flight, the formation commander. Enter sufficient information to identify home base, airport, or operator.

NOTE–
This information would be essential in the event of search and rescue operation.

15. Block 15. Enter the total number of persons on board including crew.

16. Block 16. Enter the predominant colors.

NOTE–
Close IFR flight plans with tower, approach control, or ARTCC, or if unable, with FSS. When landing at an airport with a functioning control tower, IFR flight plans are automatically canceled.

g. The information transmitted to the ARTCC for IFR flight plans will consist of only flight plan blocks 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11.

h. A description of the International Flight Plan Form is contained in the International Flight Information Manual (IFIM).

5–1–9. International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233–4)– IFR Flights (For Domestic or International Flights)

a. General

Use of FAA Form 7233–4 is recommended for domestic IFR flights and is mandatory for all IFR flights that will depart U.S. domestic airspace.

NOTE–
1. *An abbreviated description of FAA Form 7233–4 (International Flight Plan) may be found in this section. A detailed description of FAA Form 7233–4 may be found on the FAA website at:*
http://www.faa.gov/about/office_org/headquarters_offices/ato/service_units/enroute/flight_plan_filing/

2. *Filers utilizing FAA Form 7233–1 (Flight Plan) may not be eligible for assignment of RNAV SIDs and STARs. Filers desiring assignment of these procedures should file using FAA Form 7233–4, as described in this section.*

3. *When filing an IFR flight plan using FAA Form 7233–4, it is recommended that filers include all operable navigation, communication, and surveillance equipment capabilities by adding appropriate equipment qualifiers as shown in Tables 5–1–3 and 5–1–4. These equipment qualifiers should be filed in Item 10 of FAA Form 7233–4.*

4. *ATC issues clearances based on equipment qualifiers filed in Items 10 and aircraft capabilities filed in Item 18 (NAV/) of FAA Form 7233–4. Operators should file all equipment qualifiers for which the aircraft is certified and capable. They should also file aircraft capabilities, following the NAV/ indicator in Item 18.*

b. Explanation of Items Filed in FAA Form 7233–4

Procedures and other information provided in this section are designed to assist operators using FAA Form 7233–4 to file IFR flight plans for flights that will be conducted entirely within U.S. domestic airspace. Requirements and procedures for operating outside U.S. domestic airspace may vary significantly from country to country. It is, therefore, recommended that operators planning flights outside U.S. domestic airspace become familiar with applicable international documents, including Aeronautical Information Publications (AIP); International Flight Information Manuals (IFIM); and ICAO Document 4444, Procedures for Air Navigation Services/Air Traffic Management, Appendix 2.

NOTE–
FAA Form 7233–4 is shown in FIG 5–1–3. The filer is normally responsible for providing the information required in Items 3 through 19.

FIG 5−1−3

FAA International Flight Plan Form 7233−4 (9−06)

Form Approved OMB No. 2120-0026
09/30/2006

U S Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

International Flight Plan

PRIORITY
<=FF

ADDRESSEE(S)

<=

FILING TIME

ORIGINATOR <=

SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION OF ADDRESSEE(S) AND / OR ORIGINATOR

3 MESSAGE TYPE
<=(FPL

7 AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

8 FLIGHT RULES

TYPE OF FLIGHT <=

9 NUMBER

TYPE OF AIRCRAFT

WAKE TURBULENCE CAT. /

10 EQUIPMENT / <=

13 DEPARTURE AERODROME

TIME <=

15 CRUISING SPEED

LEVEL

ROUTE

<=

16 DESTINATION AERODROME

TOTAL EET HR MIN

ALTN AERODROME

2ND ALTN AERODROME <=

18 OTHER INFORMATION

<=

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (NOT TO BE TRANSMITTED IN FPL MESSAGES)

19 ENDURANCE HR MIN
E/

PERSONS ON BOARD
P/

EMERGENCY RADIO
R/ UHF VHF ELBA

SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT
/ POLAR DESERT MARITIME JUNGLE

JACKETS
/ LIGHT FLUORES UHF VHF

DINGHIES
D / NUMBER CAPACITY COVER COLOR <=

AIRCRAFT COLOR AND MARKINGS
A/

REMARKS
N / <=

PILOT-IN-COMMAND
C/)<=

FILED BY | ACCEPTED BY | ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

FAA Form 7233-4 (7-93)

Pre-Flight Pilot Checklist

Aircraft Identification			Time of Briefing			
Weather (Destination) (Alternate)	☐ Present	Remarks	**Report Weather Conditions Aloft**			
	☐ Forecast		*Report immediately weather conditions encountered---particularly cloud tops, upper cloud layers, thunderstorms, ice, turbulence, winds and temperature*			
			Position	Altitude	Time	Weather Conditions
Weather (En Route)	☐ Present					
	☐ Forecast					
	☐ Pireps					
Winds Aloft	Best Crzg. Alt.					
Nav. Aid & Comm. Status.	☐ Destination					
	☐ En Route					
Airport Conditions	☐ Destination					
	☐ Alternate					
ADIZ	☐ Airspace Restrictions					

Civil Aircraft Pilots

FAR Part 91 states that each person operating a civil aircraft of U S. registry over the high seas shall comply with Annex 2 to the Convention of International Civil Aviation, International Standards - Rules of the Air. Annex 2 requires the submission of a flight plan containing items 1-1 9 prior to operating any flight across international waters. Failure to file could result in a civil penalty not to exceed $1,000 for each violation (Section 901 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958, as amended).

International briefing information may not be current or complete. Data should be secured, at the first opportunity, from the country in whose airspace the flight will be conducted.

Paperwork Reduction Act Statement: Flight Plan information is collected for the protection and identification of aircraft and property and persons on the ground. Air Traffic uses the information to provide control services and search and rescue services. An individual respondent would require about 2.5 minutes to provide the information. FAR Part 91 requires an Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight plan to operate under IFR in controlled airspace. Filing a Visual Flight Rules flight plan is recommended but not mandatory. It is FAA policy to make factual information available to persons properly and directly concerned except information held confidential for good cause, i.e., pilot's address/telephone number. All flight plan data is destroyed when 15 days old except for data retained due to an accident/incident investigation. An agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. The OMB control number associated with this collection is 2120-0026. Comments concerning the accuracy of this burden and suggestions for reducing the burden should be directed to the FAA at: 800 Independence Ave SW, Washington, DC 20591, Attn: Information Collection Clearance Officer, ABA-20

1. Item 7. Aircraft Identification. Insert the full registration number of the aircraft, or the approved FAA/ICAO company or organizational designator, followed by the flight number.

EXAMPLE–
N235RA, AAL3342, BONGO33

NOTE–
Callsigns filed in this item must begin with a letter followed by 1–6 additional alphanumeric characters.

2. Item 8. Flight Rules and Type of Flight.

(a) Flight Rules. Insert the character "I" to indicate IFR

(b) Type of Flight. Insert one of the following letters to denote the type of flight:

(1) S if scheduled air service

(2) N if non–scheduled air transport operation

(3) G if general aviation

(4) M if military

(5) X if other than any of the defined categories above.

NOTE–
Type of flight is optional for flights that will be conducted entirely within U.S. domestic airspace.

3. Item 9. Number, Type of Aircraft, and Wake Turbulence Category.

(a) Number. Insert the number of aircraft, if more than 1 (maximum 99).

(b) Type of Aircraft.

(1) Insert the appropriate designator as specified in ICAO Doc 8643, Aircraft Type Designators;

(2) Or, if no such designator has been assigned, or in the case of formation flights consisting of more than one type;

(3) Insert ZZZZ, and specify in Item 18, the (numbers and) type(s) of aircraft preceded by TYP/.

(c) Wake Turbulence Category. Insert an oblique stroke followed by one of the following letters to indicate the wake turbulence category of the aircraft:

(1) H — HEAVY, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated takeoff weight of 300,000 pounds (136 000 kg), or more;

(2) M — MEDIUM, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated takeoff weight of less than 300,000 pounds (136,000 kg), but more than 15,500 pounds (7,000 kg);

(3) L — LIGHT, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated takeoff weight of 15,500 pounds (7,000 kg) or less.

4. Item 10. Equipment

TBL 5–1–3

Aircraft COM, NAV, and Approach Equipment Qualifiers

INSERT one letter as follows:

N if no COM/NAV/approach aid equipment for the route to be flown is carried, or the equipment is unserviceable,

(OR)

S if standard COM/NAV/approach aid equipment for the route to be flown is carried and serviceable (see Note 1),

(AND/OR)

INSERT one or more of the following letters to indicate the COM/NAV/approach aid equipment available and serviceable:

A	(Not allocated)		
B	(Not allocated)	O	VOR
C	LORAN C	P	(Not allocated)
D	DME	Q	(Not allocated)
E	(Not allocated)	R	RNP type certification – *see Note 5*
F	ADF	T	TACAN
G	(GNSS)	U	UHF RTF
H	HF RTF	V	VHF RTF
I	Inertial navigation	W	RVSM Certififed
J	(Data link) – *see Note 3*	X	When prescribed by ATS
K	(MLS)	Y	When prescribed by ATS
L	ILS	Z	Other equipment carried – *see Note 2*

NOTE–

1. *Standard equipment is considered to be VHF RTF, ADF, VOR, and ILS within U.S. domestic airspace.*

2. *If the letter Z is used, specify in Item 18 the other equipment carried, preceded by COM/ and/or NAV/, as appropriate.*

3. *If the letter J is used, specify in Item 18 the equipment carried, preceeded by DAT/ followed by one or more letters as appropriate.*

4. *Information on navigation capability is provided to ATC for clearance and routing purposes.*

5. *Inclusion of letter R indicates that an aircraft meets the RNP type prescribed for the route segment(s), route(s), and/or area concerned.*

TBL 5–1–4
Aircraft Surveillance Equipment

	INSERT one or two of the following letters to describe the serviceable surveillance equipment carried:
N	Nil
A	Transponder — Mode A (4 digits — 4 096 codes)
C	Transponder — Mode A (4 digits — 4 096 codes) and Mode C
X	Transponder — Mode S without both aircraft identification and pressure–altitude transmission
P	Transponder — Mode S, including pressure–altitude transmission, but no aircraft identification transmission
I	Transponder — Mode S, including aircraft identification transmission, but no pressure–altitude transmission
S	Transponder — Mode S, including both pressure–altitude and aircraft identification transmission
	ADS equipment
D	ADS capability

EXAMPLE–

1. *OFLV/C {VOR, ADF, ILS, VHF, Transponder, Mode C}*

2. *S/C {VOR, ADF, ILS, VHF, Transponder, Mode C}*

3. *OLVDGWZ/S {VOR, ILS, VHF, DME, GPS, RVSM, Other, Mode S w/ altitude reporting}*

NOTE–
The equipment qualifier Z indicates that additional equipment or capability information can be found in Item 18, following the NAV/ indicator. Operators requesting assignment of RNAV SIDs and/or STARs are required to include a Z in Item 10 and associated RNAV capabilities in Item 18 following the NAV/ indicator.

5. Item 13. Departure Aerodrome/Time

(a) Insert the ICAO four–letter location indicator of the departure aerodrome, or

NOTE–
ICAO location indicators must consist of 4 letters. Airport identifiers such as 5IA7, 39LL and Z40 are not in ICAO standard format.

(b) If no four–letter location indicator has been assigned to the departure aerodrome, insert ZZZZ and specify the non–ICAO location identifier, or fix/radial/distance from a nearby navaid, followed the name of the aerodrome, in Item 18, following characters DEP/,

(c) Then, without a space, insert the estimated off–block time.

EXAMPLE–

1. *KSMF2215*

2. *ZZZZ0330*

6. Item 15. Cruise Speed, Level and Route

(a) Cruise Speed (maximum 5 characters). Insert the true airspeed for the first or the whole cruising portion of the flight, in terms of knots, expressed as N followed by 4 digits (e.g. N0485), or Mach number to the nearest hundredth of unit Mach, expressed as M followed by 3 digits (for example, M082).

(b) Cruising level (maximum 5 characters). Insert the planned cruising level for the first or the whole portion of the route to be flown, in terms of flight level, expressed as F followed by 3 figures (for example, F180; F330), or altitude in hundreds of feet, expressed as A followed by 3 figures (for example, A040; A170).

(c) Route. Insert the requested route of flight in accordance with guidance below.

NOTE–
Speed and/or altitude changes en route will be accepted by FAA computer systems, but will not be processed or forwarded to controllers. Pilots are expected to maintain the last assigned altitude and request revised altitude clearances directly from ATC.

(d) Insert the desired route of flight using a combination of published routes and/or fixes in the following formats:

(1) Consecutive fixes, navaids and waypoints should be separated by the characters "DCT", meaning direct.

EXAMPLE–
FLACK DCT IRW DCT IRW125023

NOTE–
IRW125023 identifies the fix located on the Will Rogers VORTAC 125 radial at 23 DME.

(2) Combinations of published routes, and fixes, navaids or waypoints should be separated by a single space.

EXAMPLE–
WORTH5 MQP V66 ABI V385

(3) Although it is recommended that filed airway junctions be identified using a named junction fix when possible, there may be cases where it is necessary to file junctioning airways without a named fix. In these cases, separate consecutive airways with a space.

EXAMPLE–
V325 V49

NOTE–
This method of filing an airway junction may result in a processing ambiguity. This might cause the flight plan to be rejected in some cases.

7. Item 16. Destination Aerodrome, Total EET, Alternate and 2nd Alternate Aerodrome

(a) Destination Aerodrome and Total Estimated Elapsed Time (EET).

(1) Insert the ICAO four–letter location identifier for the destination aerodrome; or, if no ICAO location identifier has been assigned, (Location identifiers, such as WY66, A08, and 5B1, are not an ICAO standard format),

(2) Insert ZZZZ and specify the non–ICAO location identifier, or fix/radial/distance from a nearby navaid, followed the name of the aerodrome, in Item 18, following characters DEST/,

(3) Then, without a space, insert the total estimated time en route to the destination.

EXAMPLE–
1. *KOKC0200*

2. *ZZZZ0330*

(b) Alternate and 2nd Alternate Aerodrome (Optional).

(1) Following the intended destination, insert the ICAO four–letter location identifier(s) of alternate aerodromes; or, if no location identifier(s) have been assigned;

(2) Insert ZZZZ and specify the name of the aerodrome in Item 18, following the characters ALTN/.

EXAMPLE–
1. *KDFW0234 KPWA*

2. *KBOS0304 ZZZZ*

NOTE–
Although alternate airport information filed in an FPL will be accepted by air traffic computer systems, it will not be presented to controllers. If diversion to an alternate airport becomes necessary, pilots are expected to notify ATC and request an amended clearance.

8. Item 18. Other Information

(a) Insert 0 (zero) if no other information; or, any other necessary information in the preferred sequence shown hereunder, in the form of the appropriate indicator followed by an oblique stroke and the information to be recorded:

(1) EET/ Significant points or FIR boundary designators and accumulated estimated elapsed times to such points or FIR boundaries.

EXAMPLE–
EET/KZLA0745 KZAB0830

(2) REG/ The registration markings of the aircraft, if different from the aircraft identification in Item 7.

(3) CODE/ Aircraft address (expressed in the form of an alphanumerical code of six hexadecimal characters) when required by the appropriate ATS authority.

EXAMPLE–
"F00001" is the lowest aircraft address contained in the specific block administered by ICAO.

(4) SEL/ SELCAL code.

(5) OPR/ Name of the operator, if not obvious from the aircraft identification in Item 7.

(6) STS/ Reason for special handling by ATS.

EXAMPLE–
STS/HOSP

(7) TYP/ Insert the type of aircraft if ZZZZ was entered in Item 9. If necessary, insert the number and type(s) of aircraft in a formation.

EXAMPLE–
1. *TYP/Homebuilt*

2. *TYP/2 P51 B17 B24*

(8) COM/ Significant data related to communication.

(9) NAV/ Significant data related to navigation equipment.

(b) In addition to filing appropriate equipment qualifiers in Item10, operators requesting assignment of RNAV departure and/or arrival procedures should file appropriate RNAV capabilities for each segment of flight, following the NAV/ indicator.

NOTE–
Aircraft certification requirements for RNAV operations within U.S. airspace are defined in Advisory Circular AC 90–45A,Approval of Area Navigation Systems for Use in the U.S. National Airspace System, and AC 90–100A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, as amended.

(c) Operators should file their maximum capabilities in order to qualify for the most advanced procedures.

EXAMPLE–
1. *NAV/RNVD1E2A1, or*

2. *NAV/RNVE99*

(d) Explanation:

(1) NAV/ = Indicates the beginning of additional navigation information.

(2) RNV = Precedes RNAV capability for each phase of flight.

(3) D# = Departure segment RNAV capability.

(4) E# = En route segment RNAV capability.

(5) A# = Arrival segment RNAV capability.

NOTE–
In the examples above, "#" indicates the numeric RNAV accuracy values, based on aircraft certification and capabilities.

(e) Follow each flight segment indicator with appropriate numeric RNAV accuracy values as defined in the Advisory Circulars below.

(f) Operators equipped for advanced RNAV procedures in accordance with AC 90–100A, may file any or all of the following, as appropriate:

EXAMPLE–
NAV/RNVD1E2A1

(g) Operators equipped for Point–to–Point (PTP) RNAV only, in accordance with AC 90–45A, should file the en route segment only, with a value of "E99".

EXAMPLE–
NAV/RNVE99

NOTE–
Operators filing FAA Form 7233–4 may suppress application of RNAV procedures by omitting, or filing a 0 (zero) value in Item 18 data for any or all segments of flight.

(h) DEP/ Insert the non–ICAO identifier, or fix/radial/distance from navaid, followed by the name of the departure aerodrome, if ZZZZ is inserted in Item 13.

EXAMPLE–
1. *DEP/T23 ALBANY MUNI*

2. *DEP/UKW197011 TICK HOLLR RANCH*

(i) DEST/ Name of destination aerodrome, if ZZZZ is inserted in Item 16.

EXAMPLE–
1. *DEST/T23 ALBANY MUNI*

2. *DEST/PIE335033 LEXI DUNES*

(j) ALTN/ Name of destination alternate aerodrome(s), if ZZZZ is inserted in Item 16.

EXAMPLE–
1. *ALTN/F35 POSSUM KINGDOM*

2. *ALTN/TCC233016 LAZY S RANCH*

(k) RMK/ Any other plain–language remarks when required by the ATC or deemed necessary.

EXAMPLE–
1. *RMK/LIFEGUARD*

2. *RMK/DRVSN*

9. Item 19. Supplementary Information

NOTE–
Item 19 data must be included when completing FAA Form 7233–4. This information will be retained by the facility/organization that transmits the flight plan to Air Traffic Control (ATC), for Search and Rescue purposes, but it will not be transmitted to ATC as part of the FPL.

(a) E/ (ENDURANCE). Insert 4–digits group giving the fuel endurance in hours and minutes.

(b) P/ (PERSONS ON BOARD). Insert the total number of persons (passengers and crew) on board.

(c) Emergency and survival equipment

(1) R/ (RADIO).

[a] Cross out "UHF" if frequency 243.0 MHz is not available.

[b] Cross out "VHF" frequency 121.5 MHz is not available.

[c] Cross out "ELBA" if emergency locator transmitter (ELT) is not available.

(2) S/ (SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT).

[a] Cross out "POLAR" if polar survival equipment is not carried.

[b] Cross out "DESERT" if desert survival equipment is not carried.

[c] Cross out "MARITIME" if maritime survival equipment is not carried.

[d] Cross out J if "JUNGLE" survival equipment is not carried.

(3) J/ (JACKETS).

[a] Cross out "LIGHT" if life jackets are not equipped with lights.

[b] Cross out "FLUORES" if life jackets are not equipped with fluorescein.

[c] Cross out "UHF" or "VHF" or both as in R/ above to indicate radio capability of jackets, if any.

(4) D/ (DINGHIES).

[a] NUMBER. Cross out indicators "NUMBER" and "CAPACITY" if no dinghies are carried, or insert number of dinghies carried; and

[b] CAPACITY. Insert total capacity, in persons, of all dinghies carried; and

[c] COVER. Cross out indicator "COVER" if dinghies are not covered; and

[d] COLOR. Insert color of dinghies if carried.

(5) A/ (AIRCRAFT COLOR AND MARKINGS). Insert color of aircraft and significant markings.

(6) N/ (REMARKS). Cross out indicator N if no remarks, or indicate any other survival equipment carried and any other remarks regarding survival equipment.

(7) C/ (PILOT). Insert name of pilot–in–command.

5–1–10. IFR Operations to High Altitude Destinations

a. Pilots planning IFR flights to airports located in mountainous terrain are cautioned to consider the necessity for an alternate airport even when the forecast weather conditions would technically relieve them from the requirement to file one.

REFERENCE–
14 CFR Section 91.167.
AIM, Tower En Route Control (TEC), Paragraph 4–1–19

b. The FAA has identified three possible situations where the failure to plan for an alternate airport when flying IFR to such a destination airport could result in a critical situation if the weather is less than forecast and sufficient fuel is not available to proceed to a suitable airport.

1. An IFR flight to an airport where the Minimum Descent Altitudes (MDAs) or landing visibility minimums for *all instrument approaches* are higher than the forecast weather minimums specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). For example, there are 3 high altitude airports in the U.S. with approved instrument approach procedures where all of the MDAs are greater than 2,000 feet and/or the landing visibility minimums are greater than 3 miles (Bishop, California; South Lake Tahoe, California; and Aspen–Pitkin Co./Sardy Field, Colorado). In the case of these airports, it is possible for a pilot to elect, on the basis of forecasts, not to carry sufficient fuel to get to an alternate when the ceiling and/or visibility is actually lower than that necessary to complete the approach.

2. A small number of other airports in mountainous terrain have MDAs which are slightly (100 to 300 feet) below 2,000 feet AGL. In situations where there is an option as to whether to plan for an alternate, pilots should bear in mind that just a slight worsening of the weather conditions from those forecast could place the airport below the published IFR landing minimums.

3. An IFR flight to an airport which requires special equipment; i.e., DME, glide slope, etc., in order to make the available approaches to the lowest minimums. Pilots should be aware that all other minimums on the approach charts may require weather conditions better than those specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). An inflight equipment malfunction could result in the inability to comply with the published approach procedures or, again, in the position of having the airport below the published IFR landing minimums for all remaining instrument approach alternatives.

5–1–11. Flights Outside the U.S. and U.S. Territories

a. When conducting flights, particularly extended flights, outside the U.S. and its territories, full account should be taken of the amount and quality of air navigation services available in the airspace to be traversed. Every effort should be made to secure information on the location and range of navigational aids, availability of communications and meteorological services, the provision of air traffic services, including alerting service, and the existence of search and rescue services.

b. Pilots should remember that there is a need to continuously guard the VHF emergency frequency 121.5 MHz when on long over-water flights, except when communications on other VHF channels, equipment limitations, or cockpit duties prevent simultaneous guarding of two channels. Guarding of 121.5 MHz is particularly critical when operating in proximity to Flight Information Region (FIR) boundaries, for example, operations on Route R220 between Anchorage and Tokyo, since it serves to facilitate communications with regard to aircraft which may experience in-flight emergencies, communications, or navigational difficulties.

REFERENCE–
ICAO Annex 10, Vol II, Paras 5.2.2.1.1.1 and 5.2.2.1.1.2.

c. The filing of a flight plan, always good practice, takes on added significance for extended flights outside U.S. airspace and is, in fact, usually required by the laws of the countries being visited or overflown. It is also particularly important in the case of such flights that pilots leave a complete itinerary and schedule of the flight with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight's progress. If serious doubt arises as to the safety of the flight, that person should first contact the appropriate FSS. Round Robin Flight Plans to Mexico are not accepted.

d. All pilots should review the foreign airspace and entry restrictions published in the IFIM during the flight planning process. Foreign airspace penetration without official authorization can involve both danger to the aircraft and the imposition of severe penalties and inconvenience to both passengers and crew. A flight plan on file with ATC authorities does not necessarily constitute the prior permission required by certain other authorities. The possibility of fatal consequences cannot be ignored in some areas of the world.

e. Current NOTAMs for foreign locations must also be reviewed. The publication Notices to Airmen, Domestic/International, published biweekly, contains considerable information pertinent to foreign flight. Current foreign NOTAMs are also available from the U.S. International NOTAM Office in Washington, D.C., through any local FSS.

f. When customs notification is required, it is the responsibility of the pilot to arrange for customs notification in a timely manner. The following guidelines are applicable:

1. When customs notification is required on flights to Canada and Mexico and a predeparture flight plan cannot be filed or an advise customs message (ADCUS) cannot be included in a predeparture flight plan, call the nearest en route domestic or International FSS as soon as radio communication can be established and file a VFR or DVFR flight plan, as required, and include as the last item the advise customs information. The station with which such a flight plan is filed will forward it to the appropriate FSS who will notify the customs office responsible for the destination airport.

2. If the pilot fails to include ADCUS in the radioed flight plan, it will be assumed that other

arrangements have been made and FAA will not advise customs.

3. The FAA assumes no responsibility for any delays in advising customs if the flight plan is given too late for delivery to customs before arrival of the aircraft. **It is still the pilot's responsibility to give timely notice even though a flight plan is given to FAA**.

4. Air Commerce Regulations of the Treasury Department's Customs Service require all private aircraft arriving in the U.S. via:

(a) The U.S./Mexican border or the Pacific Coast from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 33 degrees north latitude and between 97 degrees and 120 degrees west longitude; or

(b) The Gulf of Mexico and Atlantic Coasts from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 30 degrees north latitude, shall furnish a notice of arrival to the Customs service at the nearest designated airport. This notice may be furnished directly to Customs by:

(1) Radio through the appropriate FAA Flight Service Station.

(2) Normal FAA flight plan notification procedures (a flight plan filed in Mexico does not meet this requirement due to unreliable relay of data); or

(3) Directly to the district Director of Customs or other Customs officer at place of first intended landing but must be furnished at least 1 hour prior to crossing the U.S./Mexican border or the U.S. coastline.

(c) This notice will be valid as long as actual arrival is within 15 minutes of the original ETA, otherwise a new notice must be given to Customs. Notices will be accepted up to 23 hours in advance. Unless an exemption has been granted by Customs, private aircraft are required to make first landing in the U.S. at one of the following designated airports nearest to the point of border of coastline crossing:

Designated Airports

ARIZONA
Bisbee Douglas Intl Airport
Douglas Municipal Airport
Nogales Intl Airport
Tucson Intl Airport
Yuma MCAS−Yuma Intl Airport

CALIFORNIA
Calexico Intl Airport
Brown Field Municipal Airport (San Diego)

FLORIDA
Fort Lauderdale Executive Airport
Fort Lauderdale/Hollywood Intl Airport
Key West Intl Airport (Miami Intl Airport)
Opa Locka Airport (Miami)
Kendall−Tamiami Executive Airport (Miami)
St. Lucie County Intl Airport (Fort Pierce)
Tampa Intl Airport
Palm Beach Intl Airport (West Palm Beach)

LOUISANA
New Orleans Intl Airport (Moisant Field)
New Orleans Lakefront Airport

NEW MEXICO
Las Cruces Intl Airport

NORTH CAROLINA
New Hanover Intl Airport (Wilmington)

TEXAS
Brownsville/South Padre Island Intl Airport
Corpus Christi Intl Airport
Del Rio Intl Airport
Eagle Pass Municipal Airport
El Paso Intl Airport
William P. Hobby Airport (Houston)
Laredo Intl Airport
McAllen Miller Intl Airport
Presidio Lely Intl Airport

5–1–12. Change in Flight Plan

In addition to altitude or flight level, destination and/or route changes, increasing or decreasing the speed of an aircraft constitutes a change in a flight plan. Therefore, at any time the average true airspeed at cruising altitude between reporting points varies or is expected to vary from that given in the flight plan by *plus or minus 5 percent, or 10 knots, whichever is greater,* ATC should be advised.

5–1–13. Change in Proposed Departure Time

a. To prevent computer saturation in the en route environment, parameters have been established to delete proposed departure flight plans which have not been activated. Most centers have this parameter set so as to delete these flight plans a minimum of 1 hour after the proposed departure time. To ensure that a flight plan remains active, pilots whose actual departure time will be delayed 1 hour or more beyond their filed departure time, are requested to notify ATC of their departure time.

b. Due to traffic saturation, control personnel frequently will be unable to accept these revisions via radio. It is recommended that you forward these revisions to the nearest FSS.

5–1–14. Closing VFR/DVFR Flight Plans

A pilot is responsible for ensuring that his/her VFR or DVFR flight plan is canceled. You should close your flight plan with the nearest FSS, or if one is not available, you may request any ATC facility to relay your cancellation to the FSS. Control towers do not automatically close VFR or DVFR flight plans since they do not know if a particular VFR aircraft is on a flight plan. If you fail to report or cancel your flight plan within $^{1}/_{2}$ hour after your ETA, search and rescue procedures are started.

REFERENCE–
14 CFR Section 91.153.
14 CFR Section 91.169.

5–1–15. Canceling IFR Flight Plan

a. 14 CFR Sections 91.153 and 91.169 include the statement "When a flight plan has been activated, the pilot-in-command, upon canceling or completing the flight under the flight plan, shall notify an FAA Flight Service Station or ATC facility."

b. An IFR flight plan may be canceled at any time the flight is operating in VFR conditions outside Class A airspace by pilots stating "CANCEL MY IFR FLIGHT PLAN" to the controller or air/ground station with which they are communicating. Immediately after canceling an IFR flight plan, a pilot should take the necessary action to change to the appropriate air/ground frequency, VFR radar beacon code and VFR altitude or flight level.

c. ATC separation and information services will be discontinued, including radar services (where applicable). Consequently, if the canceling flight desires VFR radar advisory service, the pilot must specifically request it.

NOTE–
Pilots must be aware that other procedures may be applicable to a flight that cancels an IFR flight plan within an area where a special program, such as a designated TRSA, Class C airspace, or Class B airspace, has been established.

d. If a DVFR flight plan requirement exists, the pilot is responsible for filing this flight plan to replace the canceled IFR flight plan. If a subsequent IFR operation becomes necessary, a new IFR flight plan must be filed and an ATC clearance obtained before operating in IFR conditions.

e. If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport with a functioning control tower, the flight plan is automatically closed upon landing.

f. If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport where there is no functioning control tower, the pilot must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan. This can be done after landing if there is a functioning FSS or other means of direct communications with ATC. In the event there is no FSS and/or air/ground communications with ATC is not possible below a certain altitude, the pilot should, weather conditions permitting, cancel the IFR flight plan while still airborne and able to communicate with ATC by radio. This will not only save the time and expense of canceling the flight plan by telephone but will quickly release the airspace for use by other aircraft.

5–1–16. RNAV and RNP Operations

a. During the pre–flight planning phase the availability of the navigation infrastructure required for the intended operation, including any non–RNAV contingencies, must be confirmed for the period of intended operation. Availability of the onboard navigation equipment necessary for the route to be flown must be confirmed.

b. If a pilot determines a specified RNP level cannot be achieved, revise the route or delay the operation until appropriate RNP level can be ensured.

c. The onboard navigation database must be current and appropriate for the region of intended operation and must include the navigation aids,

waypoints, and coded terminal airspace procedures for the departure, arrival and alternate airfields.

d. During system initialization, pilots of aircraft equipped with a Flight Management System or other RNAV–certified system, must confirm that the navigation database is current, and verify that the aircraft position has been entered correctly. Flight crews should crosscheck the cleared flight plan against charts or other applicable resources, as well as the navigation system textual display and the aircraft map display. This process includes confirmation of the waypoints sequence, reasonableness of track angles and distances, any altitude or speed constraints, and identification of fly–by or fly–over waypoints. A procedure shall not be used if validity of the navigation database is in doubt.

e. Prior to commencing takeoff, the flight crew must verify that the RNAV system is operating correctly and the correct airport and runway data have been loaded.

f. During the pre–flight planning phase RAIM prediction must be performed if TSO–C129() equipment is used to solely satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement. GPS RAIM availability must be confirmed for the intended route of flight (route and time) using current GPS satellite information. In the event of a predicted, continuous loss of RAIM of more than five (5) minutes for any part of the intended flight, the flight should be delayed, canceled, or re–routed where RAIM requirements can be met. Operators may satisfy the predictive RAIM requirement through any one of the following methods:

1. Operators may monitor the status of each satellite in its plane/slot position, by accounting for the latest GPS constellation status (e.g., NOTAMs or NANUs), and compute RAIM availability using model–specific RAIM prediction software;

2. Operators may use the FAA en route and terminal RAIM prediction website: www.raimprediction.net;

3. Operators may contact a Flight Service Station (not DUATS) to obtain non–precision approach RAIM;

4. Operators may use a third party interface, incorporating FAA/VOLPE RAIM prediction data without altering performance values, to predict RAIM outages for the aircraft's predicted flight path and times;

5. Operators may use the receiver's installed RAIM prediction capability (for TSO–C129a/Class A1/B1/C1 equipment) to provide non–precision approach RAIM, accounting for the latest GPS constellation status (e.g., NOTAMs or NANUs). Receiver non–precision approach RAIM should be checked at airports spaced at intervals not to exceed 60 NM along the RNAV 1 procedure's flight track. "Terminal" or "Approach" RAIM must be available at the ETA over each airport checked; or,

6. Operators not using model–specific software or FAA/VOLPE RAIM data will need FAA operational approval.

NOTE–
If TSO–C145/C146 equipment is used to satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement, the pilot/operator need not perform the prediction if WAAS coverage is confirmed to be available along the entire route of flight. Outside the U.S. or in areas where WAAS coverage is not available, operators using TSO–C145/C146 receivers are required to check GPS RAIM availability.

both a textual and a graphic DP, Section C should still be checked for additional information. The nonstandard takeoff minimums and minimum climb gradients found in TPP Section C also apply to charted DPs and radar vector departures unless different minimums are specified on the charted DP. Takeoff minimums and departure procedures apply to all runways unless otherwise specified. New graphic DPs will have all the information printed on the graphic depiction. As a general rule, ATC will only assign an ODP from a nontowered airport when compliance with the ODP is necessary for aircraft to aircraft separation. Pilots may use the ODP to help ensure separation from terrain and obstacles.

e. Responsibilities

1. Each pilot, prior to departing an airport on an IFR flight should:

(a) Consider the type of terrain and other obstacles on or in the vicinity of the departure airport;

(b) Determine whether an ODP is available;

(c) Determine if obstacle avoidance can be maintained visually or if the ODP should be flown; and

(d) Consider the effect of degraded climb performance and the actions to take in the event of an engine loss during the departure. Pilots should notify ATC as soon as possible of reduced climb capability in that circumstance.

NOTE–
Guidance concerning contingency procedures that address an engine failure on takeoff after V_1 speed on a large or turbine–powered transport category airplane may be found in AC 120–91, Airport Obstacle Analysis.

2. After an aircraft is established on an SID and subsequently vectored or cleared off of the SID or SID transition, pilots must consider the SID canceled, unless the controller adds "expect to resume SID." Aircraft may not be vectored off of an ODP until at or above the MVA/MIA, at which time the ODP is canceled.

3. Aircraft instructed to resume a SID that contains ATC altitude restrictions, shall be issued/reissued all applicable restrictions or shall be advised to comply with those restrictions.

4. If prior to or after takeoff an altitude restriction is issued by ATC, all previously issued "ATC" altitude restrictions are cancelled including those published on a SID.

5. ATC crossing altitude restrictions published on SIDs are identified on the chart with "(ATC)" following the altitude restriction. This will indicate to the pilot and the controller that this restriction is for ATC purposes and may be deleted by ATC. When an ATC crossing altitude has been established prior to the beginning of a transition route, a minimum altitude for obstruction clearance or other design constraints will also be published at the same fix adjacent/below the "(ATC)" altitude. The absence of "(ATC)" at a "minimum altitude" indicates the restriction is there to support obstacle clearance, airspace restrictions, Navaid reception, and/or other reason(s) that mandate compliance. These altitudes CANNOT be lowered or cancelled by ATC. A standalone "(ATC)" altitude restriction may also be located on a transition route; however, it must never be lower than the published Minimum Enroute Altitude (MEA).

6. Altitude restrictions published on an ODP are necessary for obstacle clearance and/or design constraints. Compliance with these restrictions is mandatory and CANNOT be lowered or cancelled by ATC.

f. RNAV Departure Procedures

All public RNAV SIDs and graphic ODPs are RNAV 1. These procedures generally start with an initial RNAV or heading leg near the departure runway end. In addition, these procedures require system performance currently met by GPS or DME/DME/IRU RNAV systems that satisfy the criteria discussed in AC 90–100A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations. RNAV 1 procedures require the aircraft's total system error remain bounded by ± 1 NM for 95% of the total flight time.

will be received from ARTCC to contact approach control on a specified frequency.

b. Radar Approach Control.

1. Where radar is approved for approach control service, it is used not only for radar approaches (Airport Surveillance Radar [ASR] and Precision Approach Radar [PAR]) but is also used to provide vectors in conjunction with published nonradar approaches based on radio NAVAIDs (ILS, MLS, VOR, NDB, TACAN). Radar vectors can provide course guidance and expedite traffic to the final approach course of any established IAP or to the traffic pattern for a visual approach. Approach control facilities that provide this radar service will operate in the following manner:

(a) Arriving aircraft are either cleared to an outer fix most appropriate to the route being flown with vertical separation and, if required, given holding information or, when radar handoffs are effected between the ARTCC and approach control, or between two approach control facilities, aircraft are cleared to the airport or to a fix so located that the handoff will be completed prior to the time the aircraft reaches the fix. When radar handoffs are utilized, successive arriving flights may be handed off to approach control with radar separation in lieu of vertical separation.

(b) After release to approach control, aircraft are vectored to the final approach course (ILS, MLS, VOR, ADF, etc.). Radar vectors and altitude or flight levels will be issued as required for spacing and separating aircraft. *Therefore, pilots must not deviate from the headings issued by approach control.* Aircraft will normally be informed when it is necessary to vector across the final approach course for spacing or other reasons. If approach course crossing is imminent and the pilot has not been informed that the aircraft will be vectored across the final approach course, the pilot should query the controller.

(c) The pilot is not expected to turn inbound on the final approach course unless an approach clearance has been issued. This clearance will normally be issued with the final vector for interception of the final approach course, and the vector will be such as to enable the pilot to establish the aircraft on the final approach course prior to reaching the final approach fix.

(d) In the case of aircraft already inbound on the final approach course, approach clearance will be issued prior to the aircraft reaching the final approach fix. When established inbound on the final approach course, radar separation will be maintained and the pilot will be expected to complete the approach utilizing the approach aid designated in the clearance (ILS, MLS, VOR, radio beacons, etc.) as the primary means of navigation. Therefore, once established on the final approach course, pilots must not deviate from it unless a clearance to do so is received from ATC.

(e) After passing the final approach fix on final approach, aircraft are expected to continue inbound on the final approach course and complete the approach or effect the missed approach procedure published for that airport.

2. ARTCCs are approved for and may provide approach control services to specific airports. The radar systems used by these centers do not provide the same precision as an ASR/PAR used by approach control facilities and towers, and the update rate is not as fast. Therefore, pilots may be requested to report established on the final approach course.

3. Whether aircraft are vectored to the appropriate final approach course or provide their own navigation on published routes to it, radar service is automatically terminated when the landing is completed or when instructed to change to advisory frequency at uncontrolled airports, whichever occurs first.

5–4–4. Advance Information on Instrument Approach

a. When landing at airports with approach control services and where two or more IAPs are published, pilots will be provided in advance of their arrival with the type of approach to expect or that they may be vectored for a visual approach. This information will be broadcast either by a controller or on ATIS. It will not be furnished when the visibility is three miles or better and the ceiling is at or above the highest initial approach altitude established for any low altitude IAP for the airport.

b. The purpose of this information is to aid the pilot in planning arrival actions; however, it is not an ATC clearance or commitment and is subject to change. Pilots should bear in mind that fluctuating weather, shifting winds, blocked runway, etc., are

conditions which may result in changes to approach information previously received. It is important that pilots advise ATC immediately they are unable to execute the approach ATC advised will be used, or if they prefer another type of approach.

c. Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports, which have automated weather data with broadcast capability, should monitor the ASOS/AWSS/AWOS frequency to ascertain the current weather for the airport. The pilot must advise ATC when he/she has received the broadcast weather and state his/her intentions.

NOTE–

1. *ASOS/AWSS/AWOS should be set to provide one–minute broadcast weather updates at uncontrolled airports that are without weather broadcast capability by a human observer.*

2. *Controllers will consider the long line disseminated weather from an automated weather system at an uncontrolled airport as trend and planning information only and will rely on the pilot for current weather information for the airport. If the pilot is unable to receive the current broadcast weather, the last long line disseminated weather will be issued to the pilot. When receiving IFR services, the pilot/aircraft operator is responsible for determining if weather/visibility is adequate for approach/landing.*

d. When making an IFR approach to an airport not served by a tower or FSS, after ATC advises "CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED" you should broadcast your intentions, including the type of approach being executed, your position, and when over the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or when over the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach). Continue to monitor the appropriate frequency (UNICOM, etc.) for reports from other pilots.

5–4–5. Instrument Approach Procedure Charts

a. 14 CFR Section 91.175(a), Instrument approaches to civil airports, requires the use of SIAPs prescribed for the airport in 14 CFR Part 97 unless otherwise authorized by the Administrator (including ATC). If there are military procedures published at a civil airport, aircraft operating under 14 CFR Part 91 must use the civil procedure(s). Civil procedures are defined with "FAA" in parenthesis; e.g., (FAA), at the top, center of the procedure chart. DOD procedures are defined using the abbreviation of the applicable military service in parenthesis; e.g., (USAF), (USN), (USA). 14 CFR Section 91.175(g), Military airports, requires civil pilots flying into or out of military airports to comply with the IAPs and takeoff and landing minimums prescribed by the authority having jurisdiction at those airports. Unless an emergency exists, civil aircraft operating at military airports normally require advance authorization, commonly referred to as "Prior Permission Required" or "PPR." Information on obtaining a PPR for a particular military airport can be found in the Airport/Facility Directory.

NOTE–

Civil aircraft may conduct practice VFR approaches using DOD instrument approach procedures when approved by the air traffic controller.

1. IAPs (standard and special, civil and military) are based on joint civil and military criteria contained in the U.S. Standard for TERPS. The design of IAPs based on criteria contained in TERPS, takes into account the interrelationship between airports, facilities, and the surrounding environment, terrain, obstacles, noise sensitivity, etc. Appropriate altitudes, courses, headings, distances, and other limitations are specified and, once approved, the procedures are published and distributed by government and commercial cartographers as instrument approach charts.

2. Not all IAPs are published in chart form. Radar IAPs are established where requirements and facilities exist but they are printed in tabular form in appropriate U.S. Government Flight Information Publications.

3. The navigation equipment required to join and fly an instrument approach procedure is indicated by the title of the procedure and notes on the chart.

(a) Straight–in IAPs are identified by the navigational system providing the final approach guidance and the runway to which the approach is aligned (e.g., VOR RWY 13). Circling only approaches are identified by the navigational system providing final approach guidance and a letter (e.g., VOR A). More than one navigational system separated by a slash indicates that more than one type of equipment must be used to execute the **final approach** (e.g., VOR/DME RWY 31). More than one navigational system separated by the word "or" indicates either type of equipment may be used to

execute the **final approach** (e.g., VOR or GPS RWY 15).

(b) In some cases, other types of navigation systems including radar may be required to execute other portions of the approach or to navigate to the IAF (e.g., an NDB procedure turn to an ILS, an NDB in the missed approach, or radar required to join the procedure or identify a fix). When radar or other equipment is required for procedure entry from the en route environment, a note will be charted in the **planview** of the approach procedure chart (e.g., RADAR REQUIRED or ADF REQUIRED). When radar or other equipment is required on portions of the procedure outside the final approach segment, including the missed approach, a note will be charted in the **notes box** of the pilot briefing portion of the approach chart (e.g., RADAR REQUIRED or DME REQUIRED). Notes are not charted when VOR is required outside the final approach segment. Pilots should ensure that the aircraft is equipped with the required NAVAID(s) in order to execute the approach, including the missed approach.

NOTE–
Some military (i.e., U.S. Air Force and U.S. Navy) IAPs have these "additional equipment required" notes charted only in the planview of the approach procedure and do not conform to the same application standards used by the FAA.

(c) The FAA has initiated a program to provide a new notation for LOC approaches when charted on an ILS approach requiring other navigational aids to fly the final approach course. The LOC minimums will be annotated with the NAVAID required (e.g., "DME Required" or "RADAR Required"). During the transition period, ILS approaches will still exist without the annotation.

(d) Many ILS approaches having minima based on RVR are eligible for a landing minimum of RVR 1800. Some of these approaches are to runways that have touchdown zone and centerline lights. For many runways that do not have touchdown and centerline lights, it is still possible to allow a landing minimum of RVR 1800. For these runways, the normal ILS minimum of RVR 2400 can be annotated with a single or double asterisk or the dagger symbol "†"; for example "** 696/24 200 (200/1/2)." A note is included on the chart stating "**RVR 1800 authorized with use of FD or AP or HUD to DA." The pilot must use the flight director, or autopilot with an approved approach coupler, or head up display to decision altitude or to the initiation of a missed approach. In the interest of safety, single pilot operators should not fly approaches to 1800 RVR minimums on runways without touchdown and centerline lights using only a flight director, unless accompanied by the use of an autopilot with an approach coupler.

(e) The naming of multiple approaches of the same type to the same runway is also changing. Multiple approaches with the same guidance will be annotated with an alphabetical suffix beginning at the end of the alphabet and working backwards for subsequent procedures (e.g., ILS Z RWY 28, ILS Y RWY 28, etc.). The existing annotations such as ILS 2 RWY 28 or Silver ILS RWY 28 will be phased out and replaced with the new designation. The Cat II and Cat III designations are used to differentiate between multiple ILSs to the same runway unless there are multiples of the same type.

(f) RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV and LPV lines of minima using WAAS and RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV and LNAV/VNAV lines of minima using GPS are charted as RNAV (GPS) RWY (Number) (e.g., RNAV (GPS) RWY 21). VOR/DME RNAV approaches will continue to be identified as VOR/DME RNAV RWY (Number) (e.g., VOR/DME RNAV RWY 21). VOR/DME RNAV procedures which can be flown by GPS will be annotated with "or GPS" (e.g., VOR/DME RNAV or GPS RWY 31).

4. Approach minimums are based on the local altimeter setting for that airport, unless annotated otherwise; e.g., Oklahoma City/Will Rogers World approaches are based on having a Will Rogers World altimeter setting. When a different altimeter source is required, or more than one source is authorized, it will be annotated on the approach chart; e.g., use Sidney altimeter setting, if not received, use Scottsbluff altimeter setting. Approach minimums may be raised when a nonlocal altimeter source is authorized. When more than one altimeter source is authorized, and the minima are different, they will be shown by separate lines in the approach minima box or a note; e.g., use Manhattan altimeter setting; when not available use Salina altimeter setting and increase all MDAs 40 feet. When the altimeter must be obtained from a source other than air traffic a note will indicate the source; e.g., Obtain local altimeter setting on CTAF.

When the altimeter setting(s) on which the approach is based is not available, the approach is not authorized. Baro–VNAV must be flown using the local altimeter setting only. Where no local altimeter is available, the LNAV/VNAV line will still be published for use by WAAS receivers with a note that Baro–VNAV is not authorized. When a local and at least one other altimeter setting source is authorized and the local altimeter is not available Baro–VNAV is not authorized; however, the LNAV/VNAV minima can still be used by WAAS receivers using the alternate altimeter setting source.

NOTE–
Barometric Vertical Navigation (baro–VNAV). An RNAV system function which uses barometric altitude information from the aircraft's altimeter to compute and present a vertical guidance path to the pilot. The specified vertical path is computed as a geometric path, typically computed between two waypoints or an angle based computation from a single waypoint. Further guidance may be found in Advisory Circular 90–105.

5. A pilot adhering to the altitudes, flight paths, and weather minimums depicted on the IAP chart or vectors and altitudes issued by the radar controller, is assured of terrain and obstruction clearance and runway or airport alignment during approach for landing.

6. IAPs are designed to provide an IFR descent from the en route environment to a point where a safe landing can be made. They are prescribed and approved by appropriate civil or military authority to ensure a safe descent during instrument flight conditions at a specific airport. It is important that pilots understand these procedures and their use prior to attempting to fly instrument approaches.

7. TERPS criteria are provided for the following types of instrument approach procedures:

(a) Precision Approach (PA). An instrument approach based on a navigation system that provides course and glidepath deviation information meeting the precision standards of ICAO Annex 10. For example, PAR, ILS, and GLS are precision approaches.

(b) Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV). An instrument approach based on a navigation system that is not required to meet the precision approach standards of ICAO Annex 10 but provides course and glidepath deviation information. For example, Baro–VNAV, LDA with glidepath, LNAV/VNAV and LPV are APV approaches.

(c) Nonprecision Approach (NPA). An instrument approach based on a navigation system which provides course deviation information, but no glidepath deviation information. For example, VOR, NDB and LNAV. As noted in subparagraph i, Vertical Descent Angle (VDA) on Nonprecision Approaches, some approach procedures may provide a Vertical Descent Angle as an aid in flying a stabilized approach, without requiring its use in order to fly the procedure. This does not make the approach an APV procedure, since it must still be flown to an MDA and has not been evaluated with a glidepath.

b. The method used to depict prescribed altitudes on instrument approach charts differs according to techniques employed by different chart publishers. Prescribed altitudes may be depicted in four different configurations: minimum, maximum, mandatory, and recommended. The U.S. Government distributes charts produced by National Geospatial–Intelligence Agency (NGA) and FAA. Altitudes are depicted on these charts in the profile view with underscore, overscore, both or none to identify them as minimum, maximum, mandatory or recommended.

1. Minimum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value underscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or above the depicted value, e.g., $\underline{3000}$.

2. Maximum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or below the depicted value, e.g., $\overline{4000}$.

3. Mandatory altitude will be depicted with the altitude value both underscored and overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at the depicted value, e.g., $\overline{\underline{5000}}$.

4. Recommended altitude will be depicted with no overscore or underscore. These altitudes are depicted for descent planning, e.g., 6000.

NOTE–
Pilots are cautioned to adhere to altitudes as prescribed because, in certain instances, they may be used as the basis for vertical separation of aircraft by ATC. When a depicted altitude is specified in the ATC clearance, that altitude becomes mandatory as defined above.

c. Minimum Safe/Sector Altitudes (MSA) are published for emergency use on IAP charts. For conventional navigation systems, the MSA is

normally based on the primary omnidirectional facility on which the IAP is predicated. The MSA depiction on the approach chart contains the facility identifier of the NAVAID used to determine the MSA altitudes. For RNAV approaches, the MSA is based on the runway waypoint (RWY WP) for straight–in approaches, or the airport waypoint (APT WP) for circling approaches. For GPS approaches, the MSA center will be the missed approach waypoint (MAWP). MSAs are expressed in feet above mean sea level and normally have a 25 NM radius; however, this radius may be expanded to 30 NM if necessary to encompass the airport landing surfaces. Ideally, a single sector altitude is established and depicted on the plan view of approach charts; however, when necessary to obtain relief from obstructions, the area may be further sectored and as many as four MSAs established. When established, sectors may be no less than 90° in spread. MSAs provide 1,000 feet clearance over all obstructions but do not necessarily assure acceptable navigation signal coverage.

d. Terminal Arrival Area (TAA)

1. The objective of the TAA is to provide a seamless transition from the en route structure to the terminal environment for arriving aircraft equipped with Flight Management System (FMS) and/or Global Positioning System (GPS) navigational equipment. The underlying instrument approach procedure is an area navigation (RNAV) procedure described in this section. The TAA provides the pilot and air traffic controller with a very efficient method for routing traffic into the terminal environment with little required air traffic control interface, and with minimum altitudes depicted that provide standard obstacle clearance compatible with the instrument procedure associated with it. The TAA will not be found on all RNAV procedures, particularly in areas of heavy concentration of air traffic. When the TAA is published, it replaces the MSA for that approach procedure. See FIG 5–4–9 for a depiction of a RNAV approach chart with a TAA.

2. The RNAV procedure underlying the TAA will be the "T" design (also called the "Basic T"), or a modification of the "T." The "T" design incorporates from one to three IAFs; an intermediate fix (IF) that serves as a dual purpose IF (IAF); a final approach fix (FAF), and a missed approach point (MAP) usually located at the runway threshold. The three IAFs are normally aligned in a straight line perpendicular to the intermediate course, which is an extension of the final course leading to the runway, forming a "T." The initial segment is normally from 3–6 NM in length; the intermediate 5–7 NM, and the final segment 5 NM. Specific segment length may be varied to accommodate specific aircraft categories for which the procedure is designed. However, the published segment lengths will reflect the highest category of aircraft normally expected to use the procedure.

(a) A standard racetrack holding pattern may be provided at the center IAF, and if present may be necessary for course reversal and for altitude adjustment for entry into the procedure. In the latter case, the pattern provides an extended distance for the descent required by the procedure. Depiction of this pattern in U.S. Government publications will utilize the "hold–in–lieu–of–PT" holding pattern symbol.

(b) The published procedure will be annotated to indicate when the course reversal is not necessary when flying within a particular TAA area; e.g., "NoPT." Otherwise, the pilot is expected to execute the course reversal under the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.175. The pilot may elect to use the course reversal pattern when it is not required by the procedure, but must inform air traffic control and receive clearance to do so. (See FIG 5–4–1, FIG 5–4–2, FIG 5–4–9, and paragraph 5–4–9, Procedure Turn and Hold–in–lieu of Procedure Turn).

3. The "T" design may be modified by the procedure designers where required by terrain or air traffic control considerations. For instance, the "T" design may appear more like a regularly or irregularly shaped "Y", or may even have one or both outboard IAFs eliminated resulting in an upside down "L" or an "I" configuration. (See FIG 5–4–3 and FIG 5–4–10). Further, the leg lengths associated with the outboard IAFs may differ. (See FIG 5–4–5 and FIG 5–4–6).

4. Another modification of the "T" design may be found at airports with parallel runway configurations. Each parallel runway may be served by its own "T" IAF, IF (IAF), and FAF combination, resulting in parallel final approach courses. (See FIG 5–4–4).

Common IAFs may serve both runways; however, only the intermediate and final approach segments for the landing runway will be shown on the approach chart. (See FIG 5–4–5 and FIG 5–4–6).

FIG 5–4–1
Basic "T" Design

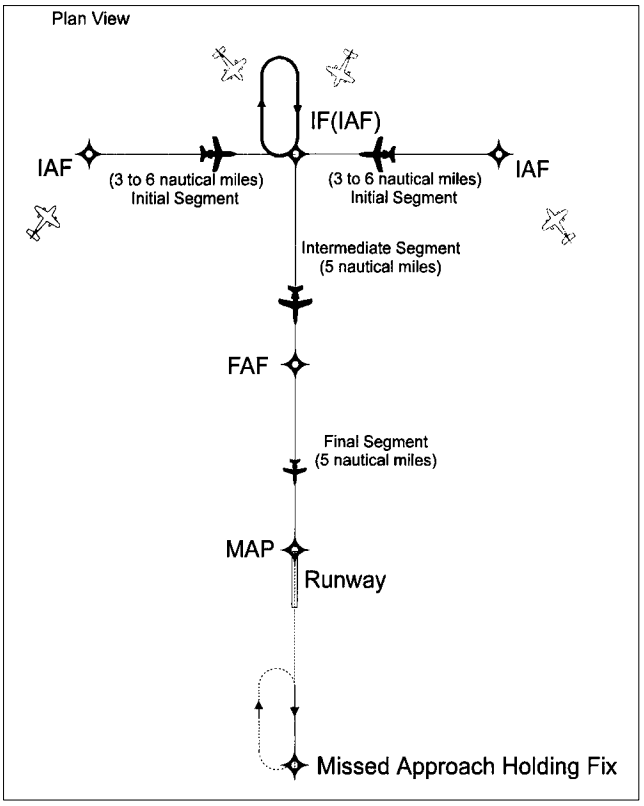


FIG 5–4–2
Basic "T" Design

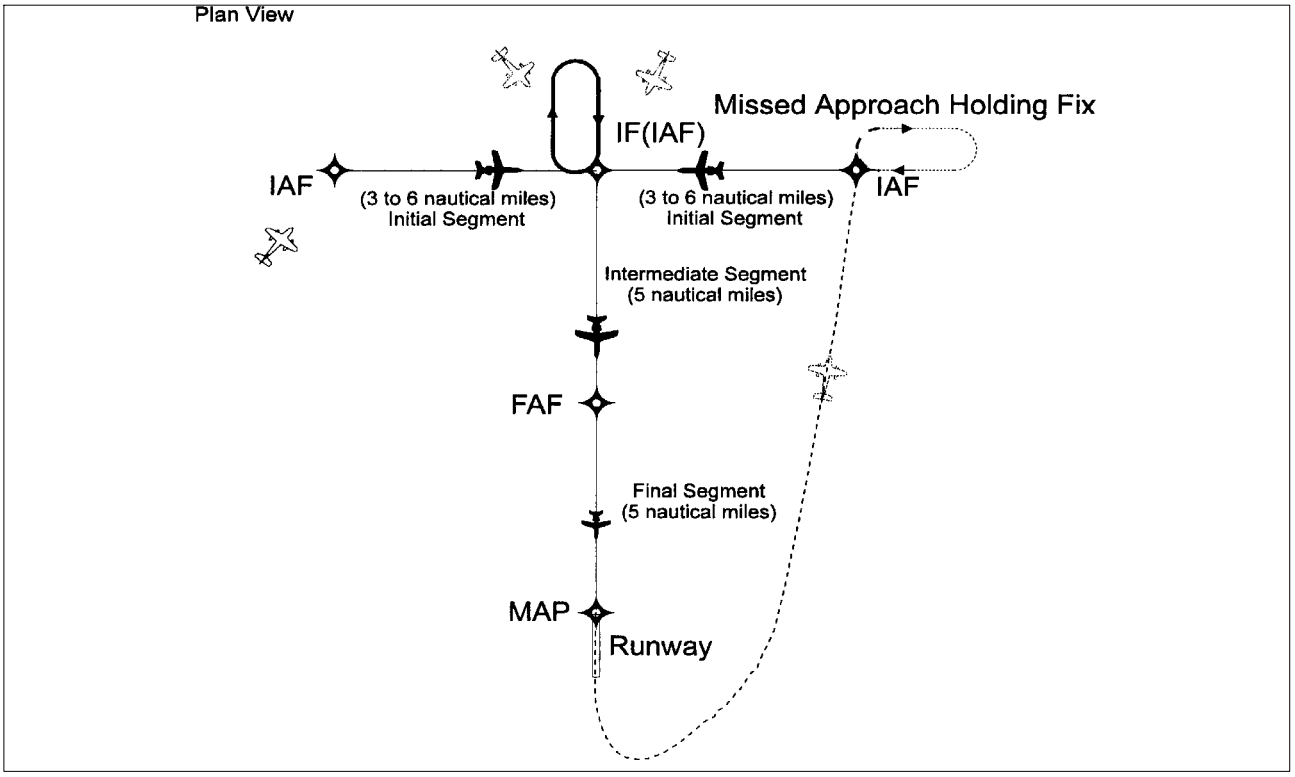


FIG 5–4–3
Modified Basic "T"

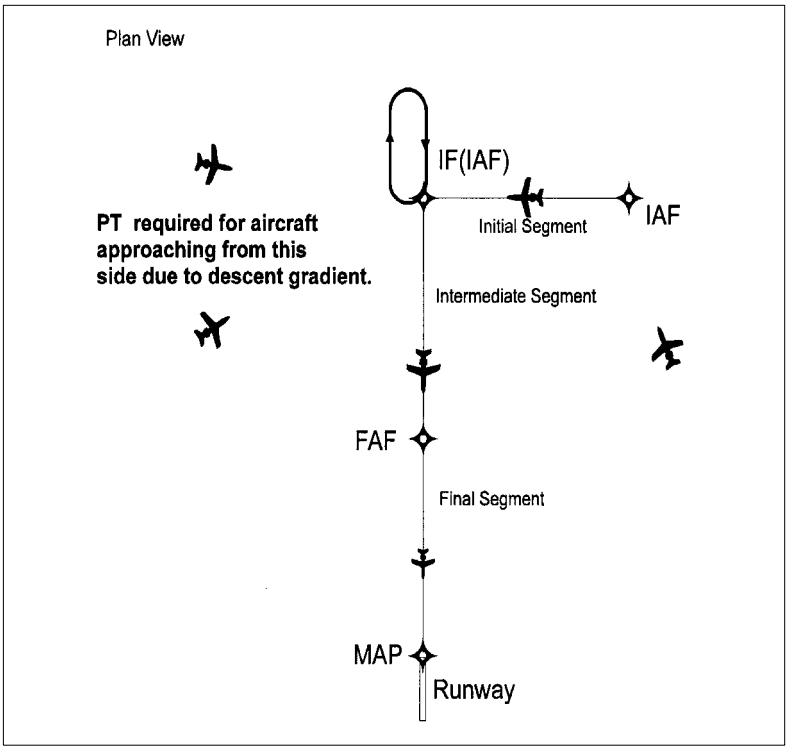


FIG 5–4–4
Modified "T" Approach to Parallel Runways

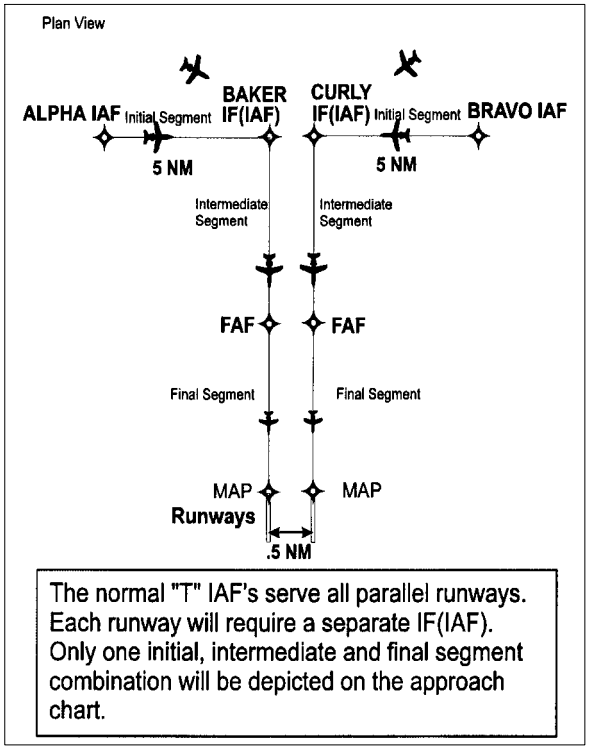


FIG 5–4–5

"T" Approach with Common IAFs to Parallel Runways

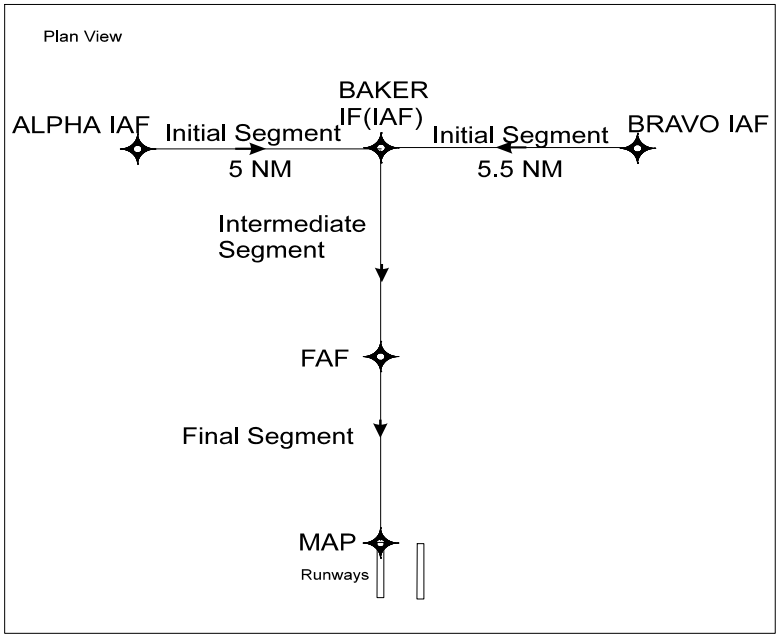


FIG 5–4–6

"T" Approach with Common IAFs to Parallel Runways

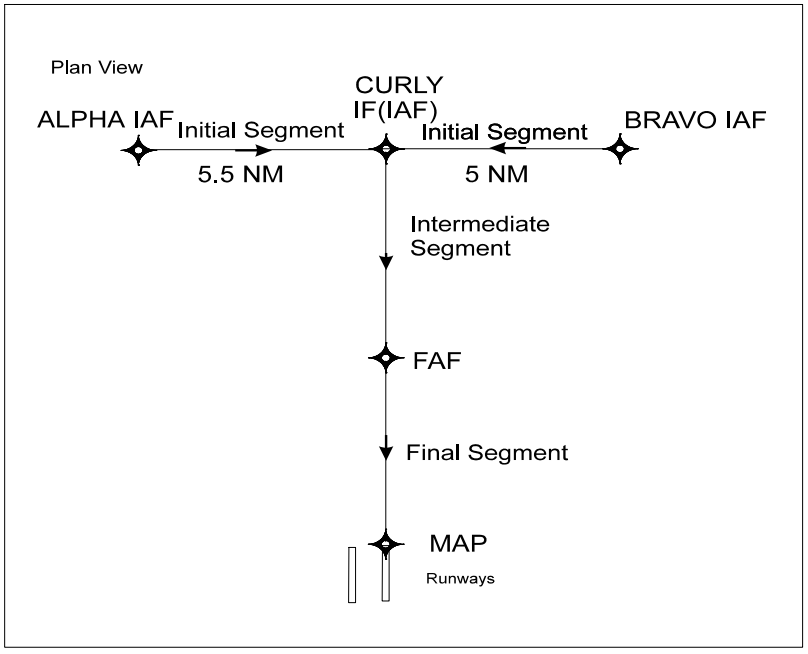
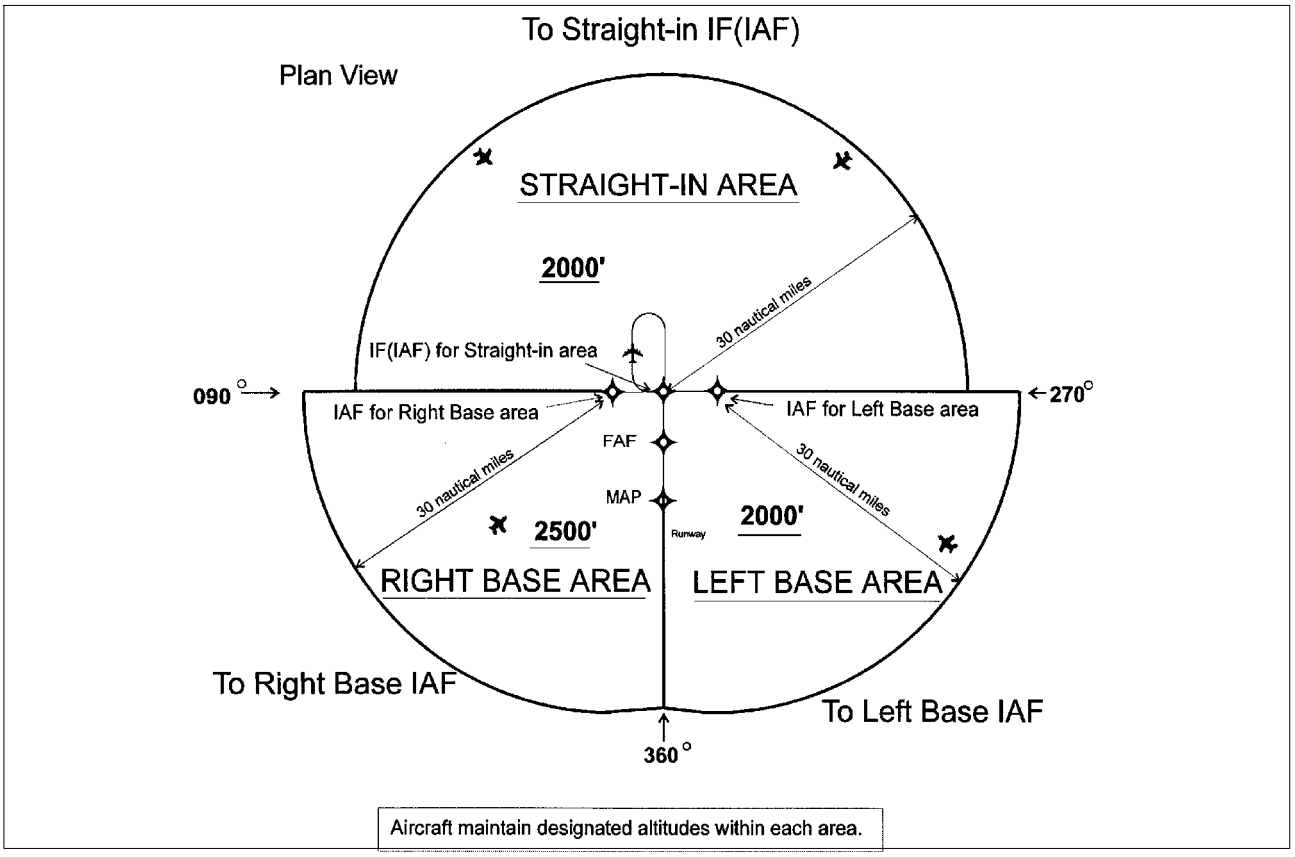


FIG 5–4–7
TAA Area

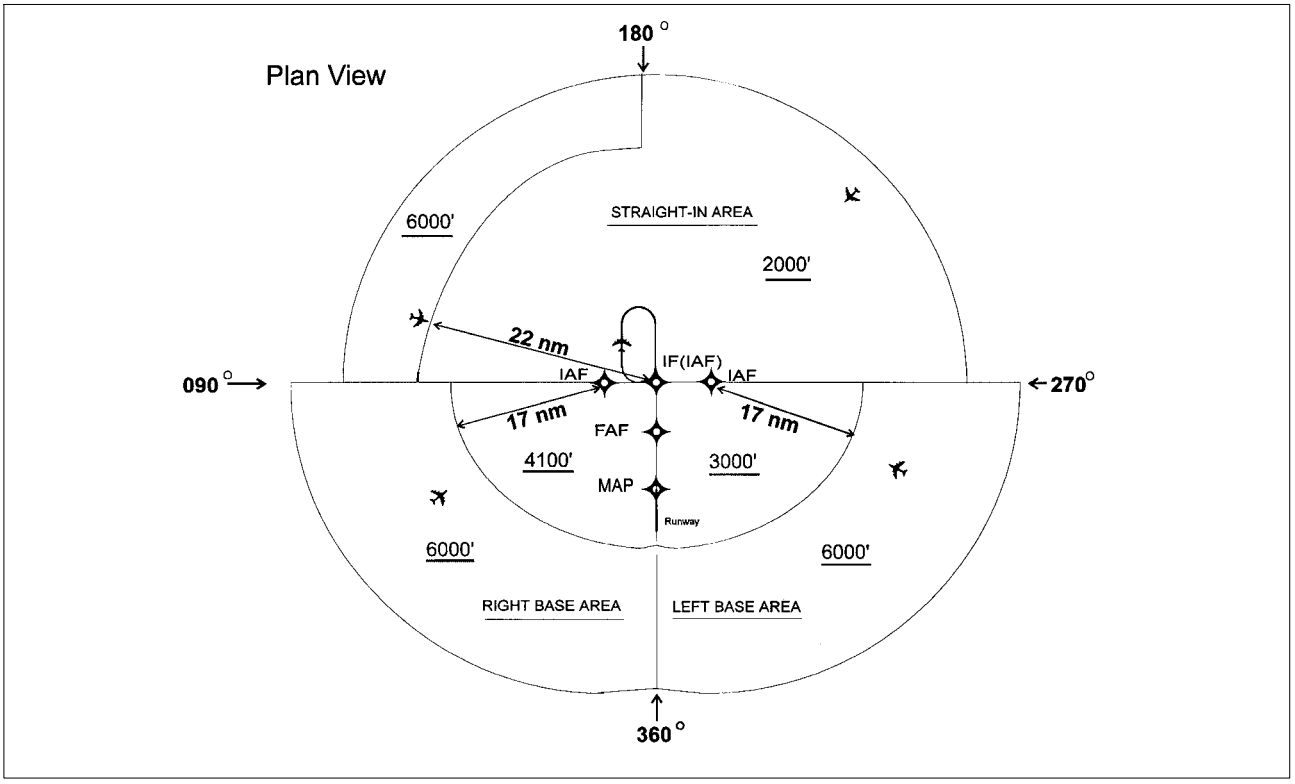


5. The standard TAA consists of three areas defined by the extension of the IAF legs and the intermediate segment course. These areas are called the straight–in, left–base, and right–base areas. (See FIG 5–4–7). TAA area lateral boundaries are identified by magnetic courses TO the IF (IAF). The straight–in area can be further divided into pie–shaped sectors with the boundaries identified by magnetic courses TO the IF (IAF), and may contain stepdown sections defined by arcs based on RNAV distances (DME or ATD) from the IF (IAF). The right/left–base areas can only be subdivided using arcs based on RNAV distances from the IAFs for those areas. Minimum MSL altitudes are charted within each of these defined areas/subdivisions that provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance, or more as necessary in mountainous areas.

(a) Prior to arriving at the TAA boundary, the pilot can determine which area of the TAA the aircraft will enter by selecting the IF (IAF) to determine the magnetic bearing TO the center IF (IAF). That bearing should then be compared with the published bearings that define the lateral boundaries of the TAA areas. Using the end IAFs may give a false indication of which area the aircraft will enter. This is critical when approaching the TAA near the extended boundary between the left and right–base areas, especially where these areas contain different minimum altitude requirements.

(b) Pilots entering the TAA and cleared by air traffic control, are expected to proceed directly to the IAF associated with that area of the TAA at the altitude depicted, unless otherwise cleared by air traffic control. Cleared direct to an Initial Approach Fix (IAF) without a clearance for the procedure does not authorize a pilot to descend to a lower TAA altitude. If a pilot desires a lower altitude without an approach clearance, request the lower TAA altitude. If a pilot is not sure of what they are authorized or expected to do by air traffic, they should ask air traffic or request a specific clearance. Pilots entering the TAA with two–way radio communications failure (14 CFR Section 91.185, IFR Operations: Two–way Radio Communications Failure), must maintain the highest altitude prescribed by Section 91.185(c)(2) until arriving at the appropriate IAF.

FIG 5–4–8
Sectored TAA Areas



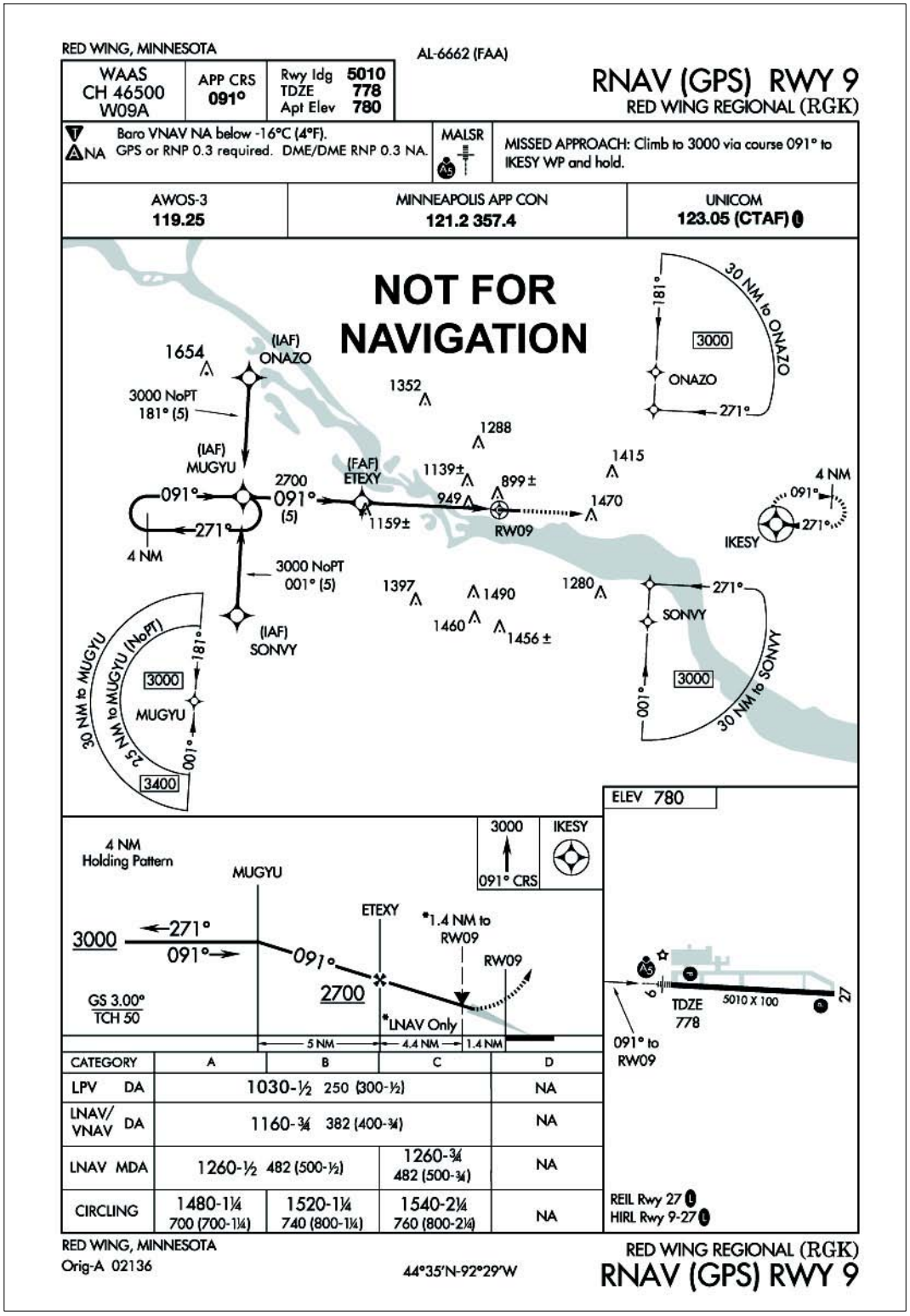
(c) Depiction of the TAA on U.S. Government charts will be through the use of icons located in the plan view outside the depiction of the actual approach procedure. (See FIG 5–4–9). Use of icons is necessary to avoid obscuring any portion of the "T" procedure (altitudes, courses, minimum altitudes, etc.). The icon for each TAA area will be located and oriented on the plan view with respect to the direction of arrival to the approach procedure, and will show all TAA minimum altitudes and sector/radius subdivisions for that area. The IAF for each area of the TAA is included on the icon where it appears on the approach, to help the pilot orient the icon to the approach procedure. The IAF name and the distance of the TAA area boundary from the IAF are included on the outside arc of the TAA area icon. Examples here are shown with the TAA around the approach to aid pilots in visualizing how the TAA corresponds to the approach and should not be confused with the actual approach chart depiction.

(d) Each waypoint on the "T", except the missed approach waypoint, is assigned a pronounceable 5–character name used in air traffic control communications, and which is found in the RNAV databases for the procedure. The missed approach waypoint is assigned a pronounceable name when it is not located at the runway threshold.

6. Once cleared to fly the TAA, pilots are expected to obey minimum altitudes depicted within the TAA icons, unless instructed otherwise by air traffic control. In FIG 5–4–8, pilots within the left or right–base areas are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 6,000 feet until within 17 NM of the associated IAF. After crossing the 17 NM arc, descent is authorized to the lower charted altitudes. Pilots approaching from the northwest are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 6,000 feet, and when within 22 NM of the IF (IAF), descend to a minimum altitude of 2,000 feet MSL until reaching the IF (IAF).

FIG 5–4–9

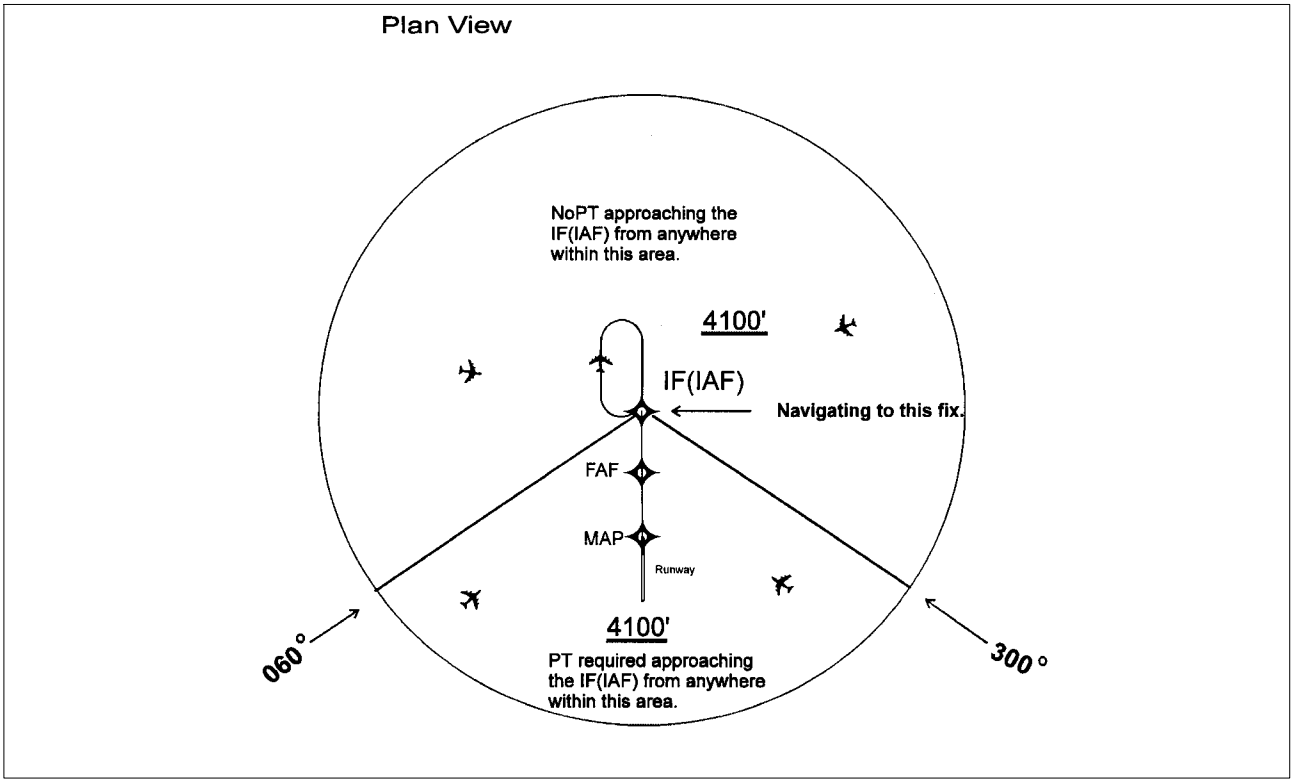
RNAV (GPS) Approach Chart



NOTE–

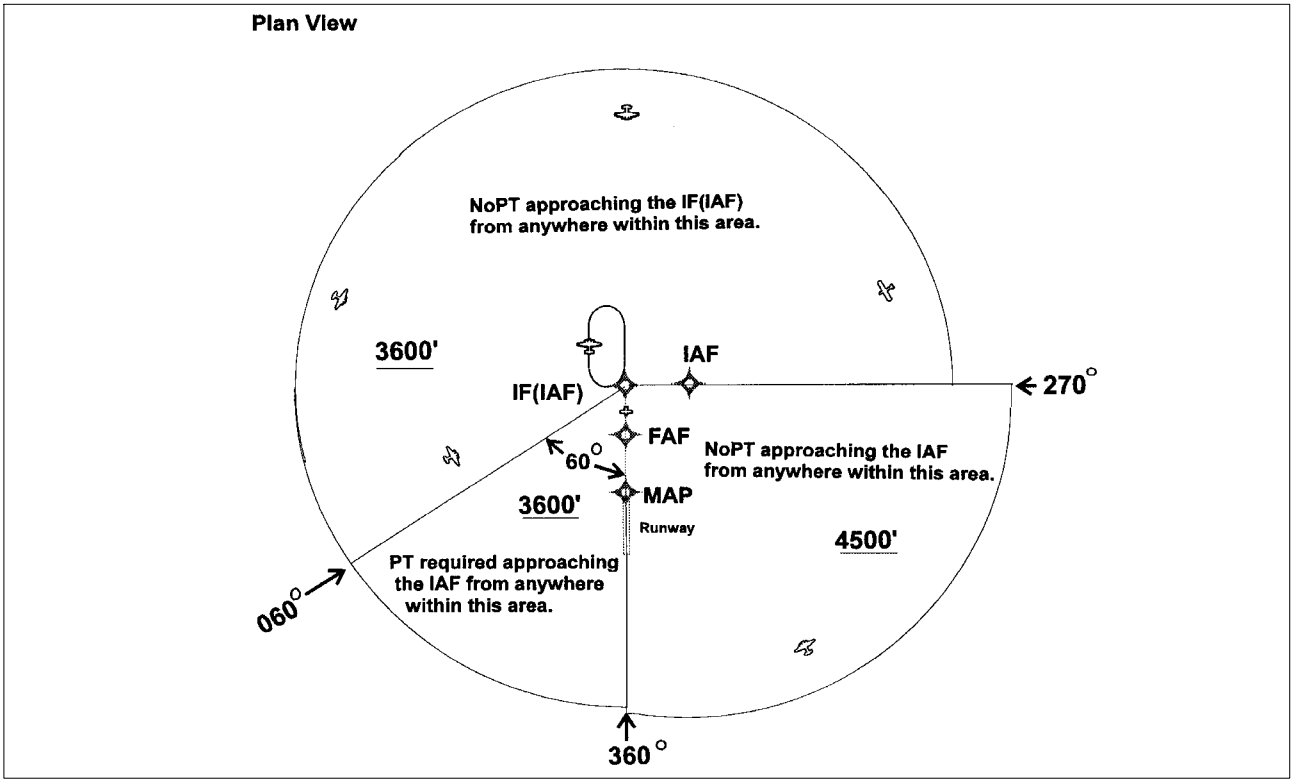
This chart has been modified to depict new concepts and may not reflect actual approach minima.

FIG 5–4–10
TAA with Left and Right Base Areas Eliminated



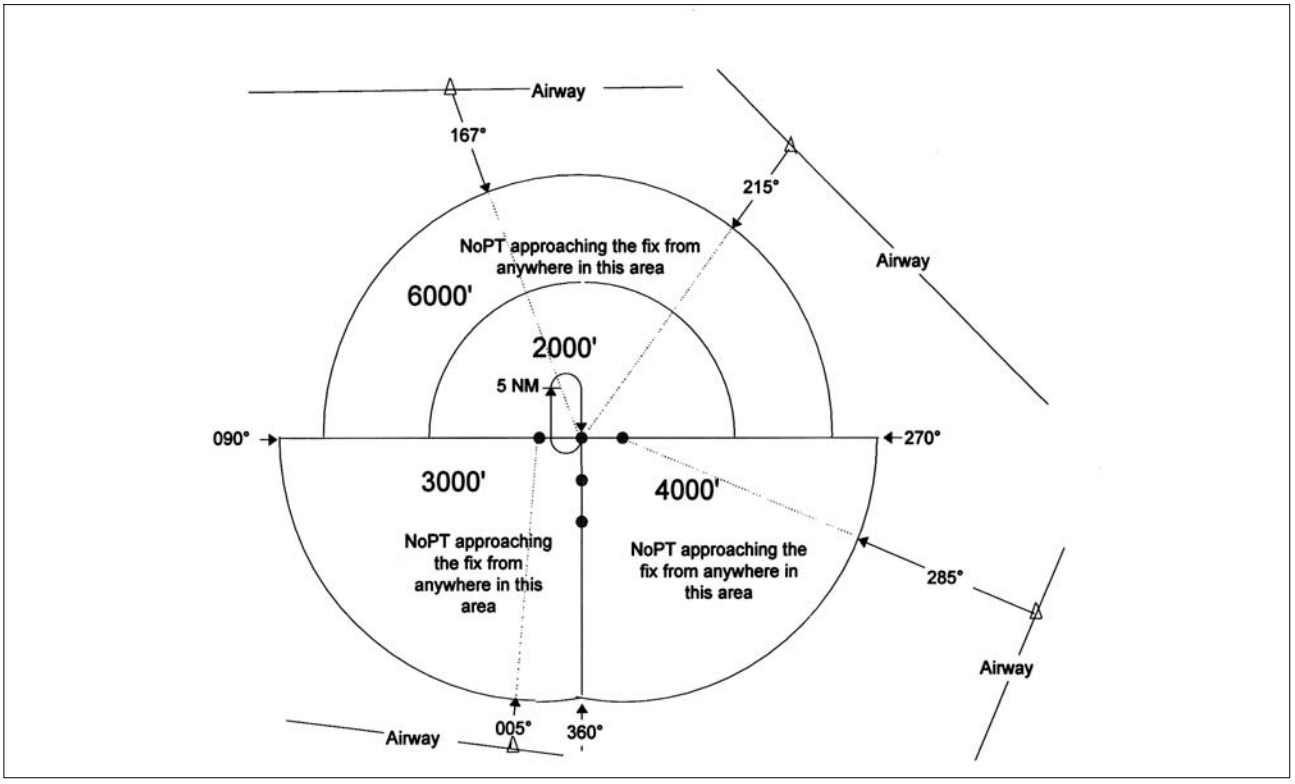
7. Just as the underlying "T" approach procedure may be modified in shape, the TAA may contain modifications to the defined area shapes and sizes. Some areas may even be eliminated, with other areas expanded as needed. FIG 5–4–10 is an example of a design limitation where a course reversal is necessary when approaching the IF (IAF) from certain directions due to the amount of turn required at the IF (IAF). Design criteria require a course reversal whenever this turn exceeds 120 degrees. In this generalized example, pilots approaching on a bearing TO the IF (IAF) from 300° clockwise through 060° are expected to execute a course reversal. The term "NoPT" will be annotated on the boundary of the TAA icon for the other portion of the TAA.

FIG 5–4–11
TAA with Right Base Eliminated



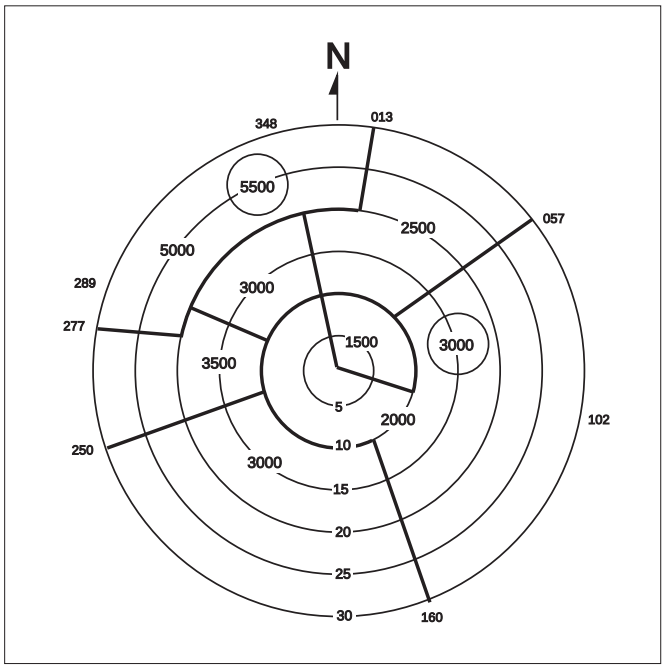
8. FIG 5–4–11 depicts another TAA modification that pilots may encounter. In this generalized example, the right–base area has been eliminated. Pilots operating within the TAA between 360° clockwise to 060° bearing TO the IF (IAF) are expected to execute the course reversal in order to properly align the aircraft for entry onto the intermediate segment. Aircraft operating in all other areas from 060° clockwise to 360° bearing TO the IF (IAF) need not perform the course reversal, and the term "NoPT" will be annotated on the TAA boundary of the icon in these areas. TAAs are no longer being produced with sections removed; however, some may still exist on previously published procedures.

FIG 5–4–12
Examples of a TAA with Feeders from an Airway



9. When an airway does not cross the lateral TAA boundaries, a feeder route will be established to provide a transition from the en route structure to the appropriate IAF. Each feeder route will terminate at the TAA boundary, and will be aligned along a path pointing to the associated IAF. Pilots should descend to the TAA altitude after crossing the TAA boundary and cleared by air traffic control. (See FIG 5–4–12).

FIG 5–4–13
Minimum Vectoring Altitude Charts



e. Minimum Vectoring Altitudes (MVAs) are established for use by ATC when radar ATC is exercised. MVA charts are prepared by air traffic facilities at locations where there are numerous different minimum IFR altitudes. Each MVA chart has sectors large enough to accommodate vectoring of aircraft within the sector at the MVA. Each sector boundary is at least 3 miles from the obstruction determining the MVA. To avoid a large sector with an excessively high MVA due to an isolated prominent obstruction, the obstruction may be enclosed in a buffer area whose boundaries are at least 3 miles from the obstruction. This is done to facilitate vectoring around the obstruction. (See FIG 5–4–13.)

1. The minimum vectoring altitude in each sector provides 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle in designated mountainous areas. Where lower MVAs are required in designated mountainous areas to achieve compatibility with terminal routes or to permit vectoring to an IAP, 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance may be authorized with the use of Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR). The minimum vectoring altitude will provide at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace.

NOTE–
OROCA is an off–route altitude which provides obstruction clearance with a 1,000 foot buffer in nonmountainous terrain areas and a 2,000 foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the U.S. This altitude may not provide signal coverage from ground–basednavigational aids, air traffic control radar, or communications coverage.

2. Because of differences in the areas considered for MVA, and those applied to other minimum altitudes, and the ability to isolate specific obstacles, some MVAs may be lower than the nonradar Minimum En Route Altitudes (MEAs), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitudes (MOCAs) or other minimum altitudes depicted on charts for a given location. While being radar vectored, IFR altitude assignments by ATC will be at or above MVA.

f. Visual Descent Points (VDPs) are being incorporated in nonprecision approach procedures. The VDP is a defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided visual reference required by 14 CFR Section 91.175(c)(3) is established. The VDP will normally be identified by DME on VOR and LOC

procedures and by along–track distance to the next waypoint for RNAV procedures. The VDP is identified on the profile view of the approach chart by the symbol: **V**.

1. VDPs are intended to provide additional guidance where they are implemented. No special technique is required to fly a procedure with a VDP. The pilot should not descend below the MDA prior to reaching the VDP and acquiring the necessary visual reference.

2. Pilots not equipped to receive the VDP should fly the approach procedure as though no VDP had been provided.

g. Visual Segment of a Published Instrument Approach Procedure. Instrument procedures designers perform a visual area obstruction evaluation off the approach end of each runway authorized for instrument landing, straight–in, or circling. Restrictions to instrument operations are imposed if penetrations of the obstruction clearance surfaces exist. These restrictions vary based on the severity of the penetrations, and may include increasing required visibility, denying VDPs, prohibiting night instrument operations to the runway, and/or provide a "Fly Visual" option to the landing surface.

1. In isolated cases, due to procedure design peculiarities, an IAP may contain a published visual flight path. These procedures are annotated "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow indicating the visual flight path will be included in the profile and plan views with an approximate heading and distance to the end of the runway. The depicted ground track associated with the visual segment should be flown as a "DR" course. When executing the visual segment, the flight visibility must not be less than that prescribed in the IAP, the pilot must remain clear of clouds and proceed to the airport maintaining visual contact with the ground. Altitude on the visual flight path is at the discretion of the pilot.

2. Since missed approach obstacle clearance is assured only if the missed approach is commenced at the published MAP or above the DA/MDA, the pilot should have preplanned climb out options based on aircraft performance and terrain features. Obstacle clearance is the sole responsibility of the pilot when the approach is continued beyond the MAP.

NOTE–
The FAA Administrator retains the authority to approve instrument approach procedures where the pilot may not necessarily have one of the visual references specified in CFR 14, part 91.175 and related rules. It is not a function of procedure design to ensure compliance with part 91.175. The annotation "Fly Visual to Airport" provides relief from part 91.175 requirements that the pilot have distinctly visible and identifiable visual references prior to descent below MDA/DA.

h. Charting of Close in Obstacles on Instrument Procedure Charts. Obstacles that are close to the airport may be depicted in either the planview of the instrument approach chart or the airport sketch. Obstacles are charted in only one of the areas, based on space available and distance from the runway. These obstacles could be in the visual segment of the instrument approach procedure. On nonprecision approaches, these obstacles should be considered when determining where to begin descent from the MDA (see "Pilot Operational Considerations When Flying Nonprecision Approaches" in this paragraph).

i. Vertical Descent Angle (VDA) on Nonprecision Approaches. FAA policy is to publish VDAs on all nonprecision approaches. Published along with VDA is the threshold crossing height (TCH) that was used to compute the angle. The descent angle may be computed from either the final approach fix (FAF), or a stepdown fix, to the runway threshold at the published TCH. A stepdown fix is only used as the start point when an angle computed from the FAF would place the aircraft below the stepdown fix altitude. The descent angle and TCH information are charted on the profile view of the instrument approach chart following the fix the angle was based on. The optimum descent angle is 3.00 degrees; and whenever possible the approach will be designed using this angle.

1. The VDA provides the pilot with information not previously available on nonprecision approaches. It provides a means for the pilot to establish a stabilized descent from the FAF or stepdown fix to the MDA. Stabilized descent is a key factor in the reduction of controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) incidents. However, pilots should be aware that **the published angle is for information only** – it is strictly advisory in nature. There is no implicit additional obstacle protection below the MDA. Pilots must still respect the published minimum descent altitude (MDA) unless the visual cues stated 14 CFR Section 91.175 are present and they can visually

acquire and avoid obstacles once below the MDA. The presence of a VDA does not guarantee obstacle protection in the visual segment and does not change any of the requirements for flying a nonprecision approach.

2. Additional protection for the visual segment below the MDA is provided if a VDP is published and descent below the MDA is started at or after the VDP. Protection is also provided, if a Visual Glide Slope Indicator (VGSI); e.g., VASI or PAPI, is installed and the aircraft remains on the VGSI glide path angle from the MDA. In either case, a chart note will indicate if the VDP or VGSI are not coincident with the VDA. On RNAV approach charts, a small shaded arrowhead shaped symbol (see the legend of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books, page H1) from the end of the VDA to the runway indicates that the 34:1 visual surface is clear.

3. Pilots may use the published angle and estimated/actual groundspeed to find a target rate of descent from the rate of descent table published in the back of the U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication. This rate of descent can be flown with the Vertical Velocity Indicator (VVI) in order to use the VDA as an aid to flying a stabilized descent. No special equipment is required.

4. Since one of the reasons for publishing a circling only instrument landing procedure is that the descent rate required exceeds the maximum allowed for a straight in approach, circling only procedures may have VDAs which are considerably steeper than the standard 3 degree angle on final. In this case, the VDA provides the crew with information about the descent rate required to land straight in from the FAF or step down fix to the threshold. This is not intended to imply that landing straight ahead is recommended, or even possible, since the descent rate may exceed the capabilities of many aircraft. The pilot must determine how to best maneuver the aircraft within the circling obstacle clearance area in order to land.

5. In rare cases the LNAV minima may have a lower HAT than minima with a glide path due to the location of the obstacles. This should be a clear indication to the pilot that obstacles exist below the MDA which the pilot must see in order to ensure adequate clearance. In those cases, the glide path may be treated as a VDA and used to descend to the LNAV MDA as long as all the rules for a nonprecision approach are applied at the MDA. However, the pilot must keep in mind the information in this paragraph and in paragraph 5−4−5j.

j. Pilot Operational Considerations When Flying Nonprecision Approaches. The missed approach point (MAP) on a nonprecision approach is not designed with any consideration to where the aircraft must begin descent to execute a safe landing. It is developed based on terrain, obstructions, NAVAID location and possibly air traffic considerations. Because the MAP may be located anywhere from well prior to the runway threshold to past the opposite end of the runway, the descent from the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) to the runway threshold cannot be determined based on the MAP location. Descent from MDA at the MAP when the MAP is located close to the threshold would require an excessively steep descent gradient to land in the normal touchdown zone. Any turn from the final approach course to the runway heading may also be a factor in when to begin the descent.

1. Pilots are cautioned that descent to a straight−in landing from the MDA at the MAP may be inadvisable or impossible, on a nonprecision approach, even if current weather conditions meet the published ceiling and visibility. Aircraft speed, height above the runway, descent rate, amount of turn and runway length are some of the factors which must be considered by the pilot to determine if a landing can be accomplished.

2. Visual descent points (VDPs) provide pilots with a reference for the optimal location to begin descent from the MDA, based on the designed vertical descent angle (VDA) for the approach procedure, assuming required visual references are available. Approaches without VDPs have not been assessed for terrain clearance below the MDA, and may not provide a clear vertical path to the runway at the normally expected descent angle. Therefore, pilots must be especially vigilant when descending below the MDA at locations without VDPs. This does not necessarily prevent flying the normal angle; it only means that obstacle clearance in the visual segment could be less and greater care should be exercised in looking for obstacles in the visual segment. Use of visual glide slope indicator (VGSI) systems can aid the pilot in determining if the aircraft is in a position to make the descent from the MDA. However, when the visibility is close to minimums, the VGSI may not be visible at the start descent point

for a "normal" glidepath, due to its location down the runway.

3. Accordingly, pilots are advised to carefully review approach procedures, prior to initiating the approach, to identify the optimum position(s), and any unacceptable positions, from which a descent to landing can be initiated (in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.175(c)).

k. Area Navigation (RNAV) Instrument Approach Charts. Reliance on RNAV systems for instrument operations is becoming more commonplace as new systems such as GPS and augmented GPS such as the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) are developed and deployed. In order to support full integration of RNAV procedures into the National Airspace System (NAS), the FAA developed a new charting format for IAPs (See FIG 5–4–9). This format avoids unnecessary duplication and proliferation of instrument approach charts. The original stand alone GPS charts, titled simply "GPS," are being converted to the newer format as the procedures are revised. One reason for the revision is the addition of WAAS based minima to the approach chart. The reformatted approach chart is titled "RNAV (GPS) RWY XX." Up to four lines of minima are included on these charts. Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS) was a placeholder for future WAAS and LAAS minima, and the minima was always listed as N/A. The GLS minima line has now been replaced by the WAAS LPV (Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance) minima on most RNAV (GPS) charts. LNAV/VNAV (lateral navigation/vertical navigation) was added to support both WAAS electronic vertical guidance and Barometric VNAV. LPV and LNAV/VNAV are both APV procedures as described in paragraph 5–4–5a7. The original GPS minima, titled "S–XX," for straight in runway XX, is retitled LNAV (lateral navigation). Circling minima may also be published. A new type of nonprecision WAAS minima will also be published on this chart and titled LP (localizer performance). LP will be published in locations where vertically guided minima cannot be provided due to terrain and obstacles and therefore, no LPV or LNAV/VNAV minima will be published. Current plans call for LAAS based procedures to be published on a separate chart and for the GLS minima line to be used only for LAAS. ATC clearance for the RNAV procedure authorizes a properly certified pilot to utilize any minimums for which the aircraft is certified: e.g. a WAAS equipped aircraft utilize the LPV or LP minima but a GPS only aircraft may not. The RNAV chart includes information formatted for quick reference by the pilot or flight crew at the top of the chart. This portion of the chart, developed based on a study by the Department of Transportation, Volpe National Transportation System Center, is commonly referred to as the pilot briefing.

1. The minima lines are:

(a) GLS. "GLS" is the acronym for Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System. GBAS is the ICAO term for Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS). This line was originally published as a placeholder for both WAAS and LAAS minima and marked as N/A since no minima was published. As the concepts for LAAS and WAAS procedure publication have evolved, GLS will now be used only for LAAS minima, which will be on a separate approach chart. Most RNAV(GPS) approach charts have had the GLS minima line replaced by a WAAS LPV line of minima.

(b) LPV. "LPV" is the acronym for localizer performance with vertical guidance. RNAV (GPS) approaches to LPV lines of minima take advantage of the improved accuracy of WAAS lateral and vertical guidance to provide an approach that is very similar to a Category I Instrument Landing System (ILS). The approach to LPV line of minima is designed for angular guidance with increasing sensitivity as the aircraft gets closer to the runway. The sensitivities are nearly identical to those of the ILS at similar distances. This was done intentionally to allow the skills required to proficiently fly an ILS to readily transfer to flying RNAV (GPS) approaches to the LPV line of minima. Just as with an ILS, the LPV has vertical guidance and is flown to a DA. Aircraft can fly this minima line with a statement in the Aircraft Flight Manual that the installed equipment supports LPV approaches. This includes Class 3 and 4 TSO–C146 WAAS equipment.

(c) LNAV/VNAV. LNAV/VNAV identifies APV minimums developed to accommodate an RNAV IAP with vertical guidance, usually provided by approach certified Baro–VNAV, but with lateral and vertical integrity limits larger than a precision approach or LPV. LNAV stands for Lateral Navigation; VNAV stands for Vertical Navigation. This minima line can be flown by aircraft with a statement in the Aircraft Flight Manual that the

installed equipment supports GPS approaches and has an approach–approved barometric VNAV, or if the aircraft has been demonstrated to support LNAV/VNAV approaches. This includes Class 2, 3 and 4 TSO–C146 WAAS equipment. Aircraft using LNAV/VNAV minimums will descend to landing via an internally generated descent path based on satellite or other approach approved VNAV systems. Since electronic vertical guidance is provided, the minima will be published as a DA. Other navigation systems may be specifically authorized to use this line of minima, see Section A, Terms/Landing Minima Data, of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.

(d) LP. "LP" is the acronym for localizer performance. Approaches to LP lines of minima take advantage of the improved accuracy of WAAS to provide approaches, with lateral guidance and angular guidance. Angular guidance does not refer to a glideslope angle but rather to the increased lateral sensitivity as the aircraft gets closer to the runway, similar to localizer approaches. However, the LP line of minima is a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) rather than a DA (H). Procedures with LP lines of minima will not be published with another approach that contains approved vertical guidance (LNAV/VNAV or LPV). It is possible to have LP and LNAV published on the same approach chart but LP will only be published if it provides lower minima than an LNAV line of minima. LP is not a fail–down mode for LPV. LP will only be published if terrain, obstructions, or some other reason prevent publishing a vertically guided procedure. WAAS avionics may provide GNSS–based advisory vertical guidance during an approach to an LP line of minima (reference section 9.b for further information on advisory vertical guidance). Barometric altimeter information remains the primary altitude reference for complying with any altitude restrictions. WAAS equipment may not support LP, even if it supports LPV, if it was approved before TSO C–145B and TSO C–146B. Receivers approved under previous TSOs may require an upgrade by the manufacturer in order to be used to fly to LP minima. Receivers approved for LP must have a statement in the approved Flight Manual or Supplemental Flight Manual including LP as one of the approved approach types.

(e) LNAV. This minima is for lateral navigation only, and the approach minimum altitude will be published as a minimum descent altitude (MDA). LNAV provides the same level of service as the present GPS stand alone approaches. LNAV minimums support the following navigation systems: WAAS, when the navigation solution will not support vertical navigation; and, GPS navigation systems which are presently authorized to conduct GPS approaches. Existing GPS approaches continue to be converted to the RNAV (GPS) format as they are revised or reviewed.

NOTE–
GPS receivers approved for approach operations in accordance with: AC 20–138, Airworthiness Approval of Global Positioning System (GPS) Navigation Equipment for Use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System, for stand–alone Technical Standard Order (TSO) TSO–C129 Class A(1) systems; or AC 20–130A, Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors, for GPS as part of a multi–sensor system, qualify for this minima. WAAS navigation equipment must be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in TSO–C145or TSO–C146 and installed in accordance with Advisory Circular AC 20–138A, Airworthiness Approval of Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) Equipment.

2. Other systems may be authorized to utilize these approaches. See the description in Section A of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books for details. Operational approval must also be obtained for Baro–VNAV systems to operate to the LNAV/VNAV minimums. Baro–VNAV may not be authorized on some approaches due to other factors, such as no local altimeter source being available. Baro–VNAV is not authorized on LPV procedures. Pilots are directed to their local Flight Standards District Office (FSDO) for additional information.

NOTE–
RNAV and Baro–VNAV systems must have a manufacturer supplied electronic database which shall include the waypoints, altitudes, and vertical data for the procedure to be flown. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints.

3. ILS or RNAV (GPS) charts.

(a) Some RNAV (GPS) charts will also contain an ILS line of minima to make use of the ILS precision final in conjunction with the RNAV GPS capabilities for the portions of the procedure prior to the final approach segment and for the missed approach. Obstacle clearance for the portions of the procedure other than the final approach segment is still based on GPS criteria.

NOTE–
*Some GPS receiver installations inhibit GPS navigation whenever **ANY** ILS frequency is tuned. Pilots flying aircraft with receivers installed in this manner must wait until they are on the intermediate segment of the procedure prior to the PFAF (PFAF is the active waypoint) to tune the ILS frequency and must tune the ILS back to a VOR frequency in order to fly the GPS based missed approach.*

(b) Charting. There are charting differences between ILS, RNAV (GPS), and GLS approaches.

(1) The LAAS procedure is titled "GLS RWY XX" on the approach chart.

(2) The VDB provides information to the airborne receiver where the guidance is synthesized.

(3) The LAAS procedure is identified by a four alpha–numeric character field referred to as the RPI or approach ID and is similar to the IDENT feature of the ILS.

(4) The RPI is charted.

(5) Most RNAV(GPS) approach charts have had the GLS (NA) minima line replaced by an LPV line of minima.

(6) Since the concepts for LAAS and WAAS procedure publication have evolved, GLS will now be used only for LAAS minima, which will be on a separate approach chart.

4. Required Navigation Performance (RNP)

(a) Pilots are advised to refer to the "TERMS/LANDING MINIMUMS DATA" (Section A) of the U.S. Government Terminal Procedures books for aircraft approach eligibility requirements by specific RNP level requirements.

(b) Some aircraft have RNP approval in their AFM without a GPS sensor. The lowest level of sensors that the FAA will support for RNP service is DME/DME. However, necessary DME signal may not be available at the airport of intended operations. For those locations having an RNAV chart published with LNAV/VNAV minimums, a procedure note may be provided such as "DME/DME RNP–0.3 NA." This means that RNP aircraft dependent on DME/DME to achieve RNP–0.3 are not authorized to conduct this approach. Where DME facility availability is a factor, the note may read "DME/DME RNP–0.3 Authorized; ABC and XYZ Required." This means that ABC and XYZ facilities have been determined by flight inspection to be required in the navigation solution to assure RNP–0.3. VOR/DME updating must not be used for approach procedures.

5. Chart Terminology

(a) Decision Altitude (DA) replaces the familiar term Decision Height (DH). DA conforms to the international convention where altitudes relate to MSL and heights relate to AGL. DA will eventually be published for other types of instrument approach procedures with vertical guidance, as well. DA indicates to the pilot that the published descent profile is flown to the DA (MSL), where a missed approach will be initiated if visual references for landing are not established. Obstacle clearance is provided to allow a momentary descent below DA while transitioning from the final approach to the missed approach. The aircraft is expected to follow the missed instructions while continuing along the published final approach course to at least the published runway threshold waypoint or MAP (if not at the threshold) before executing any turns.

(b) Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) has been in use for many years, and will continue to be used for the LNAV only and circling procedures.

(c) Threshold Crossing Height (TCH) has been traditionally used in "precision" approaches as the height of the glide slope above threshold. With publication of LNAV/VNAV minimums and RNAV descent angles, including graphically depicted descent profiles, TCH also applies to the height of the "descent angle," or glidepath, at the threshold. Unless otherwise required for larger type aircraft which may be using the IAP, the typical TCH is 30 to 50 feet.

6. The MINIMA FORMAT will also change slightly.

(a) Each line of minima on the RNAV IAP is titled to reflect the level of service available; e.g., GLS, LPV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, and LNAV. CIRCLING minima will also be provided.

(b) The minima title box indicates the nature of the minimum altitude for the IAP. For example:

(1) DA will be published next to the minima line title for minimums supporting vertical guidance such as for GLS, LPV or LNAV/VNAV.

(2) MDA will be published where the minima line was designed to support aircraft with only lateral guidance available, such as LNAV or LP. Descent below the MDA, including during the missed

approach, is not authorized unless the visual conditions stated in 14 CFR Section 91.175 exist.

(3) Where two or more systems, such as LPV and LNAV/VNAV, share the same minima, each line of minima will be displayed separately.

7. Chart Symbology changed slightly to include:

(a) Descent Profile. The published descent profile and a graphical depiction of the vertical path to the runway will be shown. Graphical depiction of the RNAV vertical guidance will differ from the traditional depiction of an ILS glide slope (feather) through the use of a shorter vertical track beginning at the decision altitude.

(1) It is FAA policy to design IAPs with minimum altitudes established at fixes/waypoints to achieve optimum stabilized (constant rate) descents within each procedure segment. This design can enhance the safety of the operations and contribute toward reduction in the occurrence of controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) accidents. Additionally, the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) recently emphasized that pilots could benefit from publication of the appropriate IAP descent angle for a stabilized descent on final approach. The RNAV IAP format includes the descent angle to the hundredth of a degree; e.g., **3.00 degrees.** The angle will be provided in the graphically depicted descent profile.

(2) The stabilized approach may be performed by reference to vertical navigation information provided by WAAS or LNAV/VNAV systems; or for LNAV–only systems, by the pilot determining the appropriate aircraft attitude/groundspeed combination to attain a constant rate descent which best emulates the published angle. To aid the pilot, U.S. Government Terminal Procedures Publication charts publish an expanded Rate of Descent Table on the inside of the back hard cover for use in planning and executing precision descents under known or approximate groundspeed conditions.

(b) Visual Descent Point (VDP). A VDP will be published on most RNAV IAPs. VDPs apply only to aircraft utilizing LP or LNAV minima, not LPV or LNAV/VNAV minimums.

(c) Missed Approach Symbology. In order to make missed approach guidance more readily understood, a method has been developed to display missed approach guidance in the profile view through the use of quick reference icons. Due to limited space in the profile area, only four or fewer icons can be shown. However, the icons may not provide representation of the entire missed approach procedure. The entire set of textual missed approach instructions are provided at the top of the approach chart in the pilot briefing. (See FIG 5–4–9).

(d) Waypoints. All RNAV or GPS stand–alone IAPs are flown using data pertaining to the particular IAP obtained from an onboard database, including the sequence of all WPs used for the approach and missed approach, except that step down waypoints may not be included in some TSO–C129 receiver databases. Included in the database, in most receivers, is coding that informs the navigation system of which WPs are fly–over (FO) or fly–by (FB). The navigation system may provide guidance appropriately – including leading the turn prior to a fly–by WP; or causing overflight of a fly–over WP. Where the navigation system does not provide such guidance, the pilot must accomplish the turn lead or waypoint overflight manually. Chart symbology for the FB WP provides pilot awareness of expected actions. Refer to the legend of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.

(e) TAAs are described in paragraph 5–4–5d, Terminal Arrival Area (TAA). When published, the RNAV chart depicts the TAA areas through the use of "icons" representing each TAA area associated with the RNAV procedure (See FIG 5–4–9). These icons are depicted in the plan view of the approach chart, generally arranged on the chart in accordance with their position relative to the aircraft's arrival from the en route structure. The WP, to which navigation is appropriate and expected within each specific TAA area, will be named and depicted on the associated TAA icon. Each depicted named WP is the IAF for arrivals from within that area. TAAs may not be used on all RNAV procedures because of airspace congestion or other reasons.

(f) Hot and Cold Temperature Limitations. A minimum and maximum temperature limitation is published on procedures which authorize Baro–VNAV operation. These temperatures represent the airport temperature above or below which Baro–VNAV is not authorized to

LNAV/VNAV minimums. As an example, the limitation will read: "Uncompensated Baro–VNAV NA below –8°C (–18°F) or above 47°C (117°F)." This information will be found in the upper left hand box of the pilot briefing. When the temperature is above the high temperature or below the low temperature limit, Baro–VNAV may be used to provide a stabilized descent to the LNAV MDA; however, extra caution should be used in the visual segment to ensure a vertical correction is not required. If the VGSI is aligned with the published glidepath, and the aircraft instruments indicate on glidepath, an above or below glidepath indication on the VGSI may indicate that temperature error is causing deviations to the glidepath. These deviations should be considered if the approach is continued below the MDA.

NOTE–
Many systems which apply Baro–VNAV temperature compensation only correct for cold temperature. In this case, the high temperature limitation still applies. Also, temperature compensation may require activation by maintenance personnel during installation in order to be functional, even though the system has the feature. Some systems may have a temperature correction capability, but correct the Baro–altimeter all the time, rather than just on the final, which would create conflicts with other aircraft if the feature were activated. Pilots should be aware of compensation capabilities of the system prior to disregarding the temperature limitations.

NOTE–
Temperature limitations do not apply to flying the LNAV/VNAV line of minima using approach certified WAAS receivers when LPV or LNAV/VNAV are annunciated to be available.

(g) WAAS Channel Number/Approach ID. The WAAS Channel Number is an optional equipment capability that allows the use of a 5–digit number to select a specific final approach segment without using the menu method. The Approach ID is an airport unique 4–character combination for verifying the selection and extraction of the correct final approach segment information from the aircraft database. It is similar to the ILS ident, but displayed visually rather than aurally. The Approach ID consists of the letter W for WAAS, the runway number, and a letter other than L, C or R, which could be confused with Left, Center and Right, e.g., W35A. Approach IDs are assigned in the order that WAAS approaches are built to that runway number at that airport. The WAAS Channel Number and Approach ID are displayed in the upper left corner of the approach procedure pilot briefing.

(h) At locations where outages of WAAS vertical guidance may occur daily due to initial system limitations, a negative W symbol (W) will be placed on RNAV (GPS) approach charts. Many of these outages will be very short in duration, but may result in the disruption of the vertical portion of the approach. The W symbol indicates that NOTAMs or Air Traffic advisories are not provided for outages which occur in the WAAS LNAV/VNAV or LPV vertical service. Use LNAV minima for flight planning at these locations, whether as a destination or alternate. For flight operations at these locations, when the WAAS avionics indicate that LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. Should an outage occur during the procedure, reversion to LNAV minima may be required. As the WAAS coverage is expanded, the W will be removed.

5–4–6. Approach Clearance

a. An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and subsequently "cleared . . . approach" has not received new routing. Even though clearance for the approach may have been issued prior to the aircraft reaching the holding fix, ATC would expect the pilot to proceed via the holding fix (his/her last assigned route), and the feeder route associated with that fix (if a feeder route is published on the approach chart) to the initial approach fix (IAF) to commence the approach. *WHEN CLEARED FOR THE APPROACH, THE PUBLISHED OFF AIRWAY (FEEDER) ROUTES THAT LEAD FROM THE EN ROUTE STRUCTURE TO THE IAF ARE PART OF THE APPROACH CLEARANCE.*

b. If a feeder route to an IAF begins at a fix located along the route of flight prior to reaching the holding fix, and clearance for an approach is issued, a pilot should commence the approach via the published feeder route; i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly the feeder route and return to it. The pilot is expected to commence the approach in a similar manner at the IAF, if the IAF for the procedure is located along the route of flight to the holding fix.

c. If a route of flight directly to the initial approach fix is desired, it should be so stated by the controller with phraseology to include the words "direct . . . ,"

"proceed direct" or a similar phrase which the pilot can interpret without question. When uncertain of the clearance, immediately query ATC as to what route of flight is desired.

d. The name of an instrument approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, such as the glideslope on an Instrument Landing System, is inoperative or unreliable. The controller will use the name of the approach as published, but must advise the aircraft at the time an approach clearance is issued that the inoperative or unreliable approach aid component is unusable.

5–4–7. Instrument Approach Procedures

a. Aircraft approach category means a grouping of aircraft based on a speed of $V_{REF,}$ if specified, or if V_{REF} is not specified, 1.3 V_{SO} at the maximum certified landing weight. $V_{REF,}$ $V_{SO,}$ and the maximum certified landing weight are those values as established for the aircraft by the certification authority of the country of registry. A pilot must use the minima corresponding to the category determined during certification or higher. Helicopters may use Category A minima. If it is necessary to operate at a speed in excess of the upper limit of the speed range for an aircraft's category, the minimums for the higher category must be used. For example, an airplane which fits into Category B, but is circling to land at a speed of 145 knots, must use the approach Category D minimums. As an additional example, a Category A airplane (or helicopter) which is operating at 130 knots on a straight–in approach must use the approach Category C minimums. See the following category limits:

1. Category A: Speed less than 91 knots.

2. Category B: Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

3. Category C: Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

4. Category D: Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

5. Category E: Speed 166 knots or more.

NOTE–
V_{REF} in the above definition refers to the speed used in establishing the approved landing distance under the airworthiness regulations constituting the type certification basis of the airplane, regardless of whether that speed for a particular airplane is 1.3 $V_{SO,}$ 1.23 $V_{SR,}$ or some higher speed required for airplane controllability. This speed, at the maximum certificated landing weight, determines the lowest applicable approach category for all approaches regardless of actual landing weight.

b. When operating on an unpublished route or while being radar vectored, the pilot, when an approach clearance is received, shall, in addition to complying with the minimum altitudes for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177), maintain the last assigned altitude unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC, or until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP. After the aircraft is so established, published altitudes apply to descent within each succeeding route or approach segment unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC. Notwithstanding this pilot responsibility, for aircraft operating on unpublished routes or while being radar vectored, ATC will, except when conducting a radar approach, issue an IFR approach clearance only after the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP, or assign an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. For this purpose, the procedure turn of a published IAP shall not be considered a segment of that IAP until the aircraft reaches the initial fix or navigation facility upon which the procedure turn is predicated.

EXAMPLE–
Cross Redding VOR at or above five thousand, cleared VOR runway three four approach.
or
Five miles from outer marker, turn right heading three three zero, maintain two thousand until established on the localizer, cleared ILS runway three six approach.

NOTE–
The altitude assigned will assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or IAP. If uncertain of the meaning of the clearance, immediately request clarification from ATC.

c. Several IAPs, using various navigation and approach aids may be authorized for an airport. ATC may advise that a particular approach procedure is being used, primarily to expedite traffic. If issued a clearance that specifies a particular approach procedure, notify ATC immediately if a different one is desired. In this event it may be necessary for ATC to withhold clearance for the different approach until

such time as traffic conditions permit. However, a pilot involved in an emergency situation will be given priority. If the pilot is not familiar with the specific approach procedure, ATC should be advised and they will provide detailed information on the execution of the procedure.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Advance Information on Instrument Approach, Paragraph 5–4–4

d. At times ATC may not specify a particular approach procedure in the clearance, but will state "CLEARED APPROACH." Such clearance indicates that the pilot may execute any one of the authorized IAPs for that airport. This clearance does not constitute approval for the pilot to execute a contact approach or a visual approach.

e. Except when being radar vectored to the final approach course, when cleared for a specifically prescribed IAP; i.e., "cleared ILS runway one niner approach" or when "cleared approach" i.e., execution of any procedure prescribed for the airport, pilots shall execute the entire procedure commencing at an IAF or an associated feeder route as described on the IAP chart unless an appropriate new or revised ATC clearance is received, or the IFR flight plan is canceled.

f. Pilots planning flights to locations which are private airfields or which have instrument approach procedures based on private navigation aids should obtain approval from the owner. In addition, the pilot must be authorized by the FAA to fly special instrument approach procedures associated with private navigation aids (see paragraph 5–4–8). Owners of navigation aids that are not for public use may elect to turn off the signal for whatever reason they may have; e.g., maintenance, energy conservation, etc. Air traffic controllers are not required to question pilots to determine if they have permission to land at a private airfield or to use procedures based on privately owned navigation aids, and they may not know the status of the navigation aid. Controllers presume a pilot has obtained approval from the owner and the FAA for use of special instrument approach procedures and is aware of any details of the procedure if an IFR flight plan was filed to that airport.

g. Pilots should not rely on radar to identify a fix unless the fix is indicated as "RADAR" on the IAP. Pilots may request radar identification of an OM, but the controller may not be able to provide the service due either to workload or not having the fix on the video map.

h. If a missed approach is required, advise ATC and include the reason (unless initiated by ATC). Comply with the missed approach instructions for the instrument approach procedure being executed, unless otherwise directed by ATC.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Missed Approach, Paragraph 5–4–21
AIM, Missed Approach, Paragraph 5–5–5

i. ATC may clear aircraft that have filed an Advanced RNAV equipment suffix to the intermediate fix when clearing aircraft for an instrument approach procedure. ATC will take the following actions when clearing Advanced RNAV aircraft to the intermediate fix:

1. Provide radar monitoring to the intermediate fix.

2. Advise the pilot to expect clearance direct to the intermediate fix at least 5 miles from the fix.

NOTE–
This is to allow the pilot to program the RNAV equipment to allow the aircraft to fly to the intermediate fix when cleared by ATC.

3. Assign an altitude to maintain until the intermediate fix.

4. Insure the aircraft is on a course that will intercept the intermediate segment at an angle not greater than 90 degrees and is at an altitude that will permit normal descent from the intermediate fix to the final approach fix.

5–4–8. Special Instrument Approach Procedures

Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts reflect the criteria associated with the U.S. Standard for Terminal Instrument [Approach] Procedures (TERPs), which prescribes standardized methods for use in developing IAPs. Standard IAPs are published in the Federal Register (FR) in accordance with Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 97, and are available for use by appropriately qualified pilots operating properly equipped and airworthy aircraft in accordance with operating rules and procedures acceptable to the FAA. Special IAPs are also developed using TERPS but are not given public notice in the FR. The FAA authorizes only certain individual pilots and/or pilots in individual organizations to use special IAPs, and may require

additional crew training and/or aircraft equipment or performance, and may also require the use of landing aids, communications, or weather services not available for public use. Additionally, IAPs that service private use airports or heliports are generally special IAPs.

5–4–9. Procedure Turn and Hold–in–lieu of Procedure Turn

a. A procedure turn is the maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish the aircraft inbound on an intermediate or final approach course. The procedure turn or hold–in–lieu–of–PTis a required maneuver when it is depicted on the approach chart, unless cleared by ATC for a straight–in approach. Additionally, the procedure turn or hold–in–lieu–of–PT is not permitted when the symbol "No PT" is depicted on the initial segment being used, when a RADAR VECTOR to the final approach course is provided, or when conducting a timed approach from a holding fix. The altitude prescribed for the procedure turn is a minimum altitude until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. The maneuver must be completed within the distance specified in the profile view. For a hold–in–lieu–of–PT, the holding pattern direction must be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded.

NOTE–
The pilot may elect to use the procedure turn or hold–in–lieu–of–PT when it is not required by the procedure, but must first receive an amended clearance from ATC. When ATC is radar vectoring to the final approach course or to the intermediate fix, ATC may specify in the approach clearance "CLEARED STRAIGHT–IN (type) APPROACH" to ensure the procedure turn or hold–in–lieu–of–PT is not to be flown. If the pilot is uncertain whether the ATC clearance intends for a procedure turn to be conducted or to allow for a straight–in approach, the pilot shall immediately request clarification from ATC (14 CFR Section 91.123).

1. On U.S. Government charts, a barbed arrow indicates the maneuvering side of the outbound course on which the procedure turn is made. Headings are provided for course reversal using the 45 degree type procedure turn. However, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn is left to the discretion of the pilot (limited by the charted remain within xx NM distance). Some of the options are the 45 degree procedure turn, the racetrack pattern, the teardrop procedure turn, or the 80 degree ↔ 260 degree course reversal. Racetrack entries should be conducted on the maneuvering side where the majority of protected airspace resides. If an entry places the pilot on the non–maneuvering side of the PT, correction to intercept the outbound course ensures remaining within protected airspace. Some procedure turns are specified by procedural track. These turns must be flown exactly as depicted.

2. Descent to the procedure turn (PT) completion altitude from the PT fix altitude (when one has been published or assigned by ATC) must not begin until crossing over the PT fix or abeam and proceeding outbound. Some procedures contain a note in the chart profile view that says "Maintain (altitude) or above until established outbound for procedure turn" (See FIG 5–4–14). Newer procedures will simply depict an "at or above" altitude at the PT fix without a chart note (See FIG 5–4–15). Both are there to ensure required obstacle clearance is provided in the procedure turn entry zone (See FIG 5–4–16). Absence of a chart note or specified minimum altitude adjacent to the PT fix is an indication that descent to the procedure turn altitude can commence immediately upon crossing over the PT fix, regardless of the direction of flight. This is because the minimum altitudes in the PT entry zone and the PT maneuvering zone are the same.

FIG 5–4–14

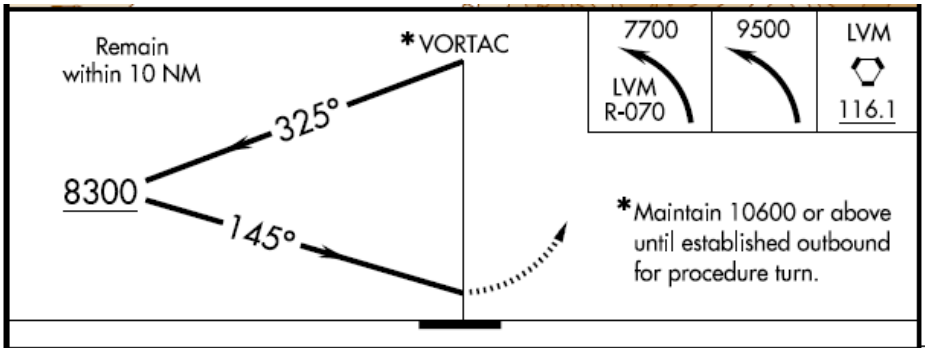


FIG 5–4–15

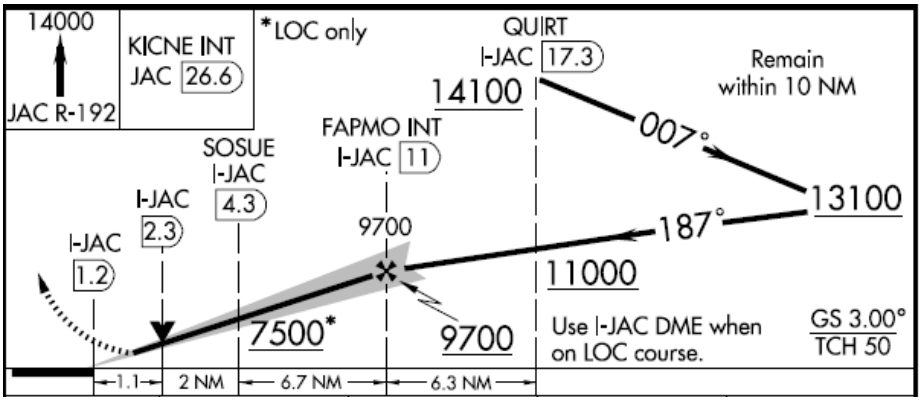
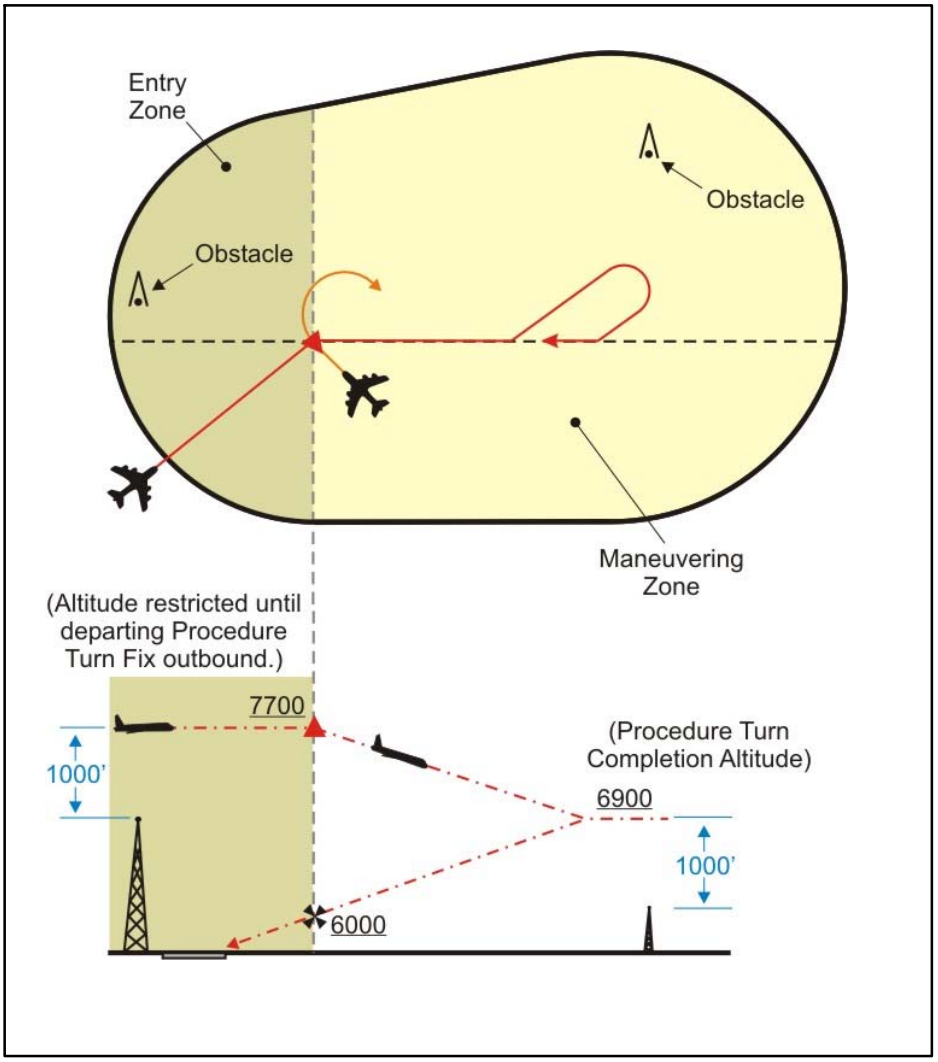


FIG 5–4–16



3. When the approach procedure involves a procedure turn, a maximum speed of not greater than 200 knots (IAS) should be observed from first overheading the course reversal IAF through the procedure turn maneuver to ensure containment within the obstruction clearance area. Pilots should begin the outbound turn immediately after passing the procedure turn fix. The procedure turn maneuver must be executed within the distance specified in the profile view. The normal procedure turn distance is 10 miles. This may be reduced to a minimum of 5 miles where only Category A or helicopter aircraft are to be operated or increased to as much as 15 miles to accommodate high performance aircraft.

4. A teardrop procedure or penetration turn may be specified in some procedures for a required course reversal. The teardrop procedure consists of departure from an initial approach fix on an outbound course followed by a turn toward and intercepting the inbound course at or prior to the intermediate fix or point. Its purpose is to permit an aircraft to reverse direction and lose considerable altitude within reasonably limited airspace. Where no fix is available to mark the beginning of the intermediate segment, it shall be assumed to commence at a point 10 miles prior to the final approach fix. When the facility is located on the airport, an aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn. However, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility.

5. A holding pattern in lieu of procedure turn may be specified for course reversal in some procedures. In such cases, the holding pattern is established over an intermediate fix or a final approach fix. The holding pattern distance or time specified in the profile view must be observed. For a hold–in–lieu–of–PT, the holding pattern direction must be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded. Maximum holding airspeed limitations as set forth for all holding patterns apply. The holding pattern maneuver is completed when the aircraft is established on the inbound course after executing the appropriate entry. If cleared for the approach prior to returning to the holding fix, and the aircraft is at the prescribed altitude, additional circuits of the holding pattern are not necessary nor expected by ATC. If pilots elect to make additional circuits to lose excessive altitude or to become better established on course, it is their responsibility to so advise ATC upon receipt of their approach clearance.

NOTE–
Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by Air Traffic Control. Holding at the same fix may also be depicted on the enroute chart. A hold–in–lieu of procedure turn is depicted by a "thick line" symbol, and is part of the instrument approach procedure as described in paragraph 5–4–9 (See U. S. Terminal Procedures booklets page G1 for both examples.)

6. A procedure turn is not required when an approach can be made directly from a specified intermediate fix to the final approach fix. In such cases, the term "NoPT" is used with the appropriate course and altitude to denote that the procedure turn is not required. If a procedure turn is desired, and when cleared to do so by ATC, descent below the procedure turn altitude should not be made until the aircraft is established on the inbound course, since some NoPT altitudes may be lower than the procedure turn altitudes.

b. Limitations on Procedure Turns

1. In the case of a radar initial approach to a final approach fix or position, or a timed approach from a holding fix, or where the procedure specifies NoPT, no pilot may make a procedure turn unless, when final approach clearance is received, the pilot so advises ATC and a clearance is received to execute a procedure turn.

2. When a teardrop procedure turn is depicted and a course reversal is required, this type turn must be executed.

3. When a holding pattern replaces a procedure turn, the holding pattern must be followed, except when RADAR VECTORING is provided or when NoPT is shown on the approach course. The recommended entry procedures will ensure the aircraft remains within the holding pattern's protected airspace. As in the procedure turn, the descent from the minimum holding pattern altitude to the final approach fix altitude (when lower) may not commence until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. Where a holding pattern is established in–lieu–of a procedure turn, the maximum holding pattern airspeeds apply.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Holding, Paragraph 5–3–7.2.

4. The absence of the procedure turn barb in the plan view indicates that a procedure turn is not authorized for that procedure.

5–4–10. Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix

a. TIMED APPROACHES may be conducted when the following conditions are met:

1. A control tower is in operation at the airport where the approaches are conducted.

2. Direct communications are maintained between the pilot and the center or approach controller until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

3. If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none require a course reversal.

4. If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met:

(a) Course reversal is not required; and,

(b) Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the IAP.

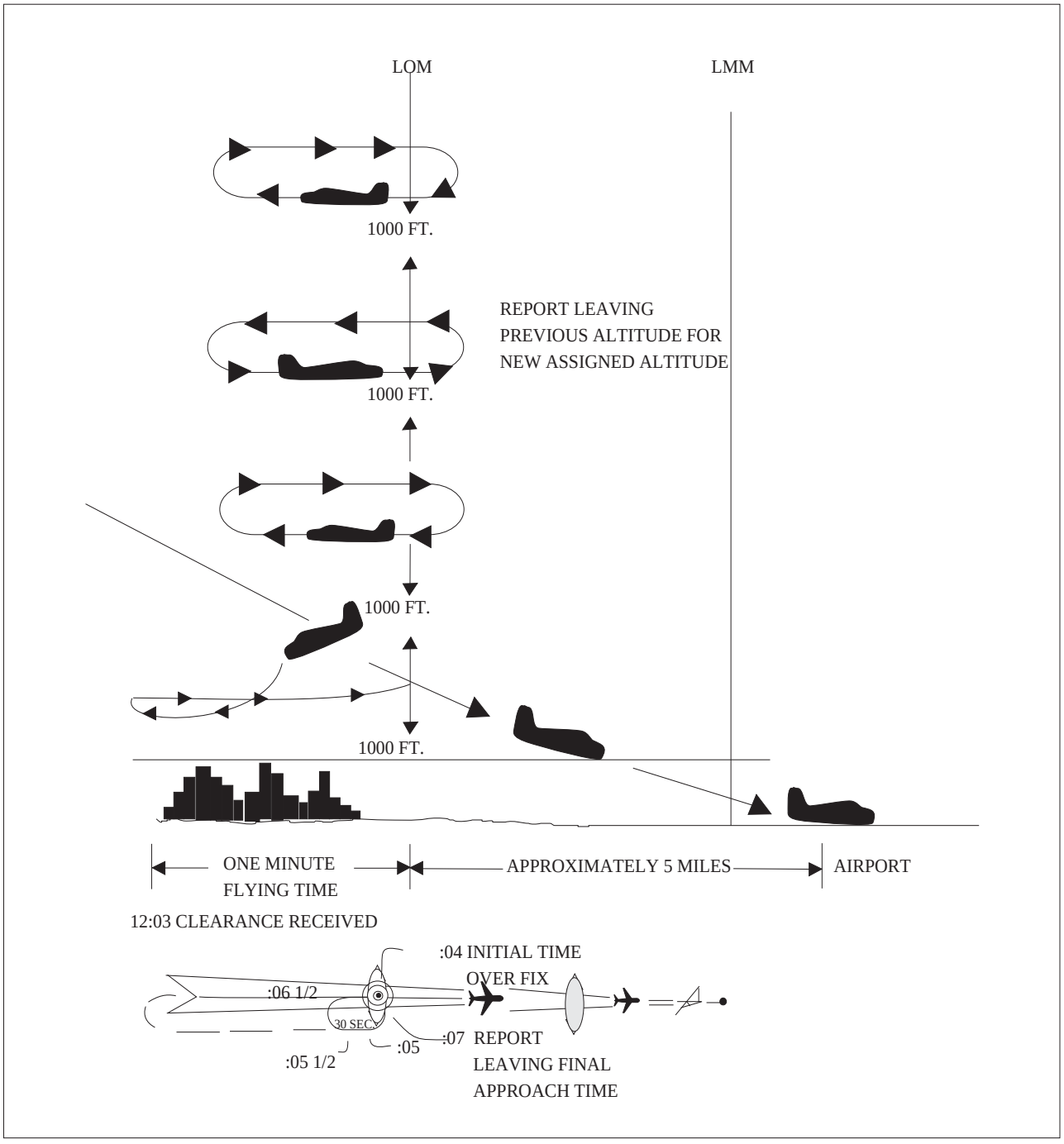
5. When cleared for the approach, pilots shall not execute a procedure turn. (14 CFR Section 91.175.)

b. Although the controller will not specifically state that "timed approaches are in progress," the assigning of a time to depart the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) is indicative that timed approach procedures are being utilized, or in lieu of holding, the controller may use radar vectors to the Final Approach Course to establish a mileage interval between aircraft that will insure the appropriate time sequence between the final approach fix/outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker and the airport.

c. Each pilot in an approach sequence will be given advance notice as to the time they should leave the holding point on approach to the airport. When a time to leave the holding point has been received, the pilot should adjust the flight path to leave the fix as closely as possible to the designated time. (See FIG 5–4–17.)

FIG 5–4–17

Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix



EXAMPLE–

At 12:03 local time, in the example shown, a pilot holding, receives instructions to leave the fix inbound at 12:07. These instructions are received just as the pilot has completed turn at the outbound end of the holding pattern and is proceeding inbound towards the fix. Arriving back over the fix, the pilot notes that the time is 12:04 and that there are 3 minutes to lose in order to leave the fix at the assigned time. Since the time remaining is more than two minutes, the pilot plans to fly a race track pattern rather than a 360 degree turn, which would use up 2 minutes. The turns at the ends of the race track pattern will consume approximately 2 minutes. Three minutes to go, minus 2 minutes required for the turns, leaves 1 minute for level flight. Since two portions of level flight will be required to get back to the fix inbound, the pilot halves the 1 minute remaining

and plans to fly level for 30 seconds outbound before starting the turn back to the fix on final approach. If the winds were negligible at flight altitude, this procedure would bring the pilot inbound across the fix precisely at the specified time of 12:07. However, if expecting headwind on final approach, the pilot should shorten the 30 second outbound course somewhat, knowing that the wind will carry the aircraft away from the fix faster while outbound and decrease the ground speed while returning to the fix. On the other hand, compensating for a tailwind on final approach, the pilot should lengthen the calculated 30 second outbound heading somewhat, knowing that the wind would tend to hold the aircraft closer to the fix while outbound and increase the ground speed while returning to the fix.

5–4–11. Radar Approaches

a. The only airborne radio equipment required for radar approaches is a functioning radio transmitter and receiver. The radar controller vectors the aircraft to align it with the runway centerline. The controller continues the vectors to keep the aircraft on course until the pilot can complete the approach and landing by visual reference to the surface. There are two types of radar approaches: Precision (PAR) and Surveillance (ASR).

b. A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to pilots of aircraft in distress or to expedite traffic, however, an ASR might not be approved unless there is an ATC operational requirement, or in an unusual or emergency situation. Acceptance of a PAR or ASR by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minimums for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The decision to make a radar approach when the reported weather is below the established minimums rests with the pilot.

c. PAR and ASR minimums are published on separate pages in the FAA Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP).

1. A PRECISION APPROACH (PAR) is one in which a controller provides highly accurate navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation to a pilot. Pilots are given headings to fly, to direct them to, and keep their aircraft aligned with the extended centerline of the landing runway. They are told to anticipate glidepath interception approximately 10 to 30 seconds before it occurs and when to start descent. The published Decision Height will be given only if the pilot requests it. If the aircraft is observed to deviate above or below the glidepath, the pilot is given the relative amount of deviation by use of terms “slightly” or “well” and is expected to adjust the aircraft’s rate of descent/ascent to return to the glidepath. Trend information is also issued with respect to the elevation of the aircraft and may be modified by the terms “rapidly” and “slowly”; e.g., “well above glidepath, coming down rapidly.” Range from touchdown is given at least once each mile. If an aircraft is observed by the controller to proceed outside of specified safety zone limits in azimuth and/or elevation and continue to operate outside these prescribed limits, the pilot will be directed to execute a missed approach or to fly a specified course unless the pilot has the runway environment (runway, approach lights, etc.) in sight. Navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation is provided the pilot until the aircraft reaches the published Decision Height (DH). Advisory course and glidepath information is furnished by the controller until the aircraft passes over the landing threshold, at which point the pilot is advised of any deviation from the runway centerline. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

2. A SURVEILLANCE APPROACH (ASR) is one in which a controller provides navigational guidance in azimuth only. The pilot is furnished headings to fly to align the aircraft with the extended centerline of the landing runway. Since the radar information used for a surveillance approach is considerably less precise than that used for a precision approach, the accuracy of the approach will not be as great and higher minimums will apply. Guidance in elevation is not possible but the pilot will be advised when to commence descent to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or, if appropriate, to an intermediate step-down fix Minimum Crossing Altitude and subsequently to the prescribed MDA. In addition, the pilot will be advised of the location of the Missed Approach Point (MAP) prescribed for the procedure and the aircraft’s position each mile on final from the runway, airport or heliport or MAP, as appropriate. If requested by the pilot, recommended altitudes will be issued at each mile, based on the descent gradient established for the procedure, down to the last mile that is at or above the MDA. Normally, navigational guidance will be provided until the aircraft reaches the MAP. Controllers will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach unless at the MAP the pilot has the runway,

airport or heliport in sight or, for a helicopter point-in-space approach, the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established. Also, if, at any time during the approach the controller considers that safe guidance for the remainder of the approach cannot be provided, the controller will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach. Similarly, guidance termination and missed approach will be effected upon pilot request and, for civil aircraft only, controllers may terminate guidance when the pilot reports the runway, airport/heliport or visual surface route (point-in-space approach) in sight or otherwise indicates that continued guidance is not required. Radar service is automatically terminated at the completion of a radar approach.

NOTE–

1. *The published MDA for straight–in approaches will be issued to the pilot before beginning descent. When a surveillance approach will terminate in a circle–to–land maneuver, the pilot must furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller. The controller will then provide the pilot with the appropriate MDA.*

2. *ASR APPROACHES ARE NOT AVAILABLE WHEN AN ATC FACILITY IS USING CENRAP.*

3. A NO-GYRO APPROACH is available to a pilot under radar control who experiences circumstances wherein the directional gyro or other stabilized compass is inoperative or inaccurate. When this occurs, the pilot should so advise ATC and request a No-Gyro vector or approach. Pilots of aircraft not equipped with a directional gyro or other stabilized compass who desire radar handling may also request a No-Gyro vector or approach. The pilot should make all turns at standard rate and should execute the turn immediately upon receipt of instructions. For example, “TURN RIGHT,” “STOP TURN.” When a surveillance or precision approach is made, the pilot will be advised after the aircraft has been turned onto final approach to make turns at half standard rate.

5–4–12. Radar Monitoring of Instrument Approaches

a. PAR facilities operated by the FAA and the military services at some joint-use (civil and military) and military installations monitor aircraft on instrument approaches and issue radar advisories to the pilot when weather is below VFR minimums (1,000 and 3), at night, or when requested by a pilot. This service is provided only when the PAR Final Approach Course coincides with the final approach of the navigational aid and only during the operational hours of the PAR. The radar advisories serve only as a secondary aid since the pilot has selected the navigational aid as the primary aid for the approach.

b. Prior to starting final approach, the pilot will be advised of the frequency on which the advisories will be transmitted. If, for any reason, radar advisories cannot be furnished, the pilot will be so advised.

c. Advisory information, derived from radar observations, includes information on:

1. Passing the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or passing the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach).

NOTE–

At this point, the pilot may be requested to report sighting the approach lights or the runway.

2. Trend advisories with respect to elevation and/or azimuth radar position and movement will be provided.

NOTE–

Whenever the aircraft nears the PAR safety limit, the pilot will be advised that the aircraft is well above or below the glidepath or well left or right of course. Glidepath information is given only to those aircraft executing a precision approach, such as ILS or MLS. Altitude information is not transmitted to aircraft executing other than precision approaches because the descent portions of these approaches generally do not coincide with the depicted PAR glidepath. At locations where the MLS glidepath and PAR glidepath are not coincidental, only azimuth monitoring will be provided.

3. If, after repeated advisories, the aircraft proceeds outside the PAR safety limit or if a radical deviation is observed, the pilot will be advised to execute a missed approach unless the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established.

d. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

5–4–13. ILS/MLS Approaches to Parallel Runways

a. ATC procedures permit ILS instrument approach operations to dual or triple parallel runway configurations. ILS/MLS approaches to parallel runways are grouped into three classes: Parallel (dependent) ILS/MLS Approaches; Simultaneous Parallel (independent) ILS/MLS Approaches; and Simultaneous Close Parallel (independent) ILS Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Approaches. (See FIG 5–4–18.) The classification of a parallel runway approach procedure is dependent on adjacent parallel runway centerline separation, ATC procedures, and airport ATC radar monitoring and communications capabilities. At some airports one or more parallel localizer courses may be offset up to 3 degrees. Offset localizer configurations result in loss of Category II capabilities and an increase in decision height (50').

b. Parallel approach operations demand heightened pilot situational awareness. A thorough Approach Procedure Chart review should be conducted with, as a minimum, emphasis on the following approach chart information: name and number of the approach, localizer frequency, inbound localizer/azimuth course, glide slope intercept altitude, decision height, missed approach instructions, special notes/procedures, and the assigned runway location/proximity to adjacent runways. Pilots will be advised that simultaneous ILS/MLS or simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches are in use. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

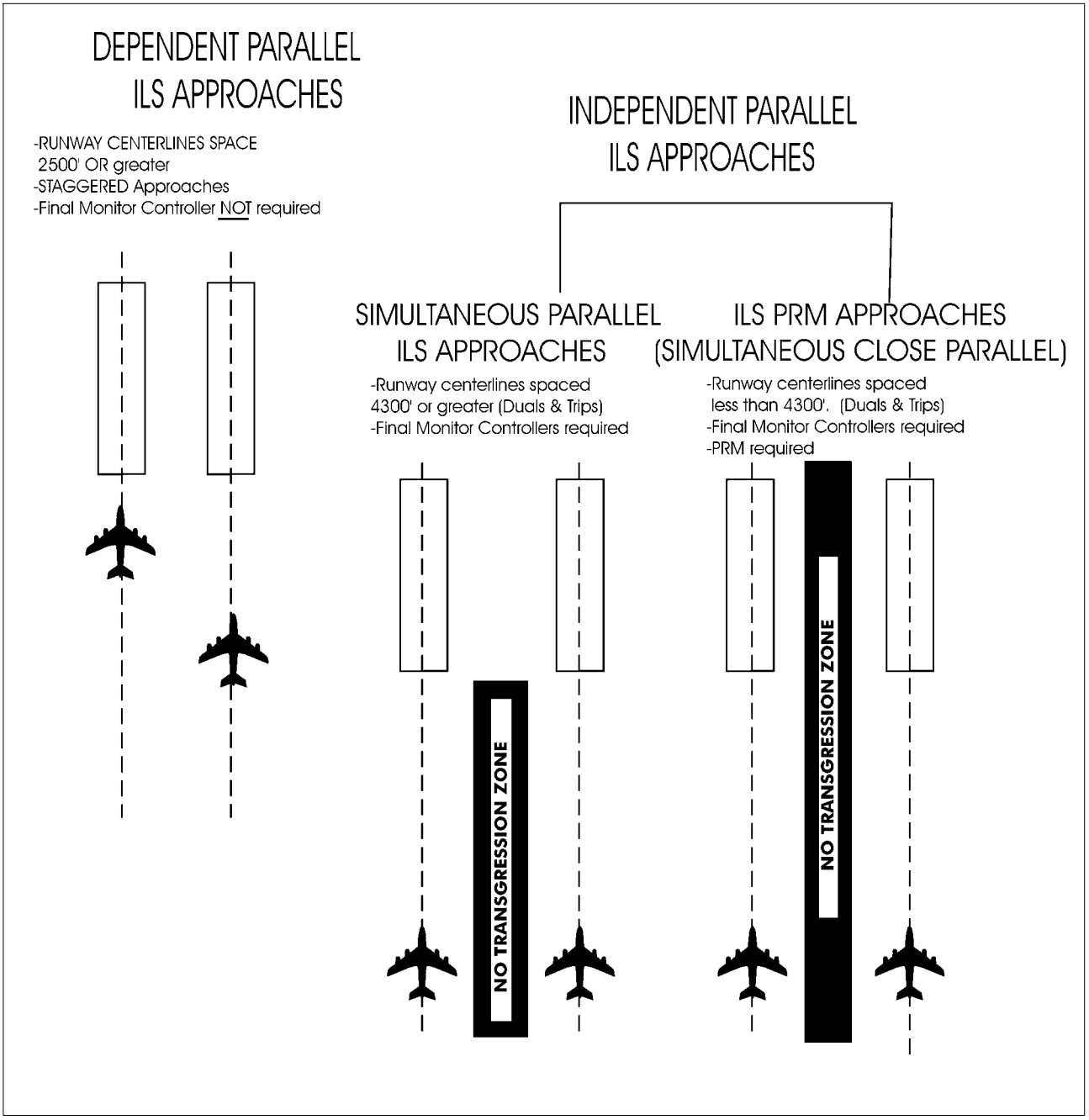
c. The close proximity of adjacent aircraft conducting simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches mandates strict pilot compliance with all ATC clearances. ATC assigned airspeeds, altitudes, and headings must be complied with in a timely manner. Autopilot coupled ILS/MLS approaches require pilot knowledge of procedures necessary to comply with ATC instructions. Simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches necessitate precise localizer tracking to minimize final monitor controller intervention, and unwanted No Transgression Zone (NTZ) penetration. In the unlikely event of a breakout, ATC will not assign altitudes lower than the minimum vectoring altitude. Pilots should notify ATC immediately if there is a degradation of aircraft or navigation systems.

d. Strict radio discipline is mandatory during parallel ILS/MLS approach operations. This includes an alert listening watch and the avoidance of lengthy, unnecessary radio transmissions. Attention must be given to proper call sign usage to prevent the inadvertent execution of clearances intended for another aircraft. Use of abbreviated call signs must be avoided to preclude confusion of aircraft with similar sounding call signs. Pilots must be alert to unusually long periods of silence or any unusual background sounds in their radio receiver. A stuck microphone may block the issuance of ATC instructions by the final monitor controller during simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Chapter 4, Section 2, Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques, gives additional communications information.

e. Use of Traffic Collision Avoidance Systems (TCAS) provides an additional element of safety to parallel approach operations. Pilots should follow recommended TCAS operating procedures presented in approved flight manuals, original equipment manufacturer recommendations, professional newsletters, and FAA publications.

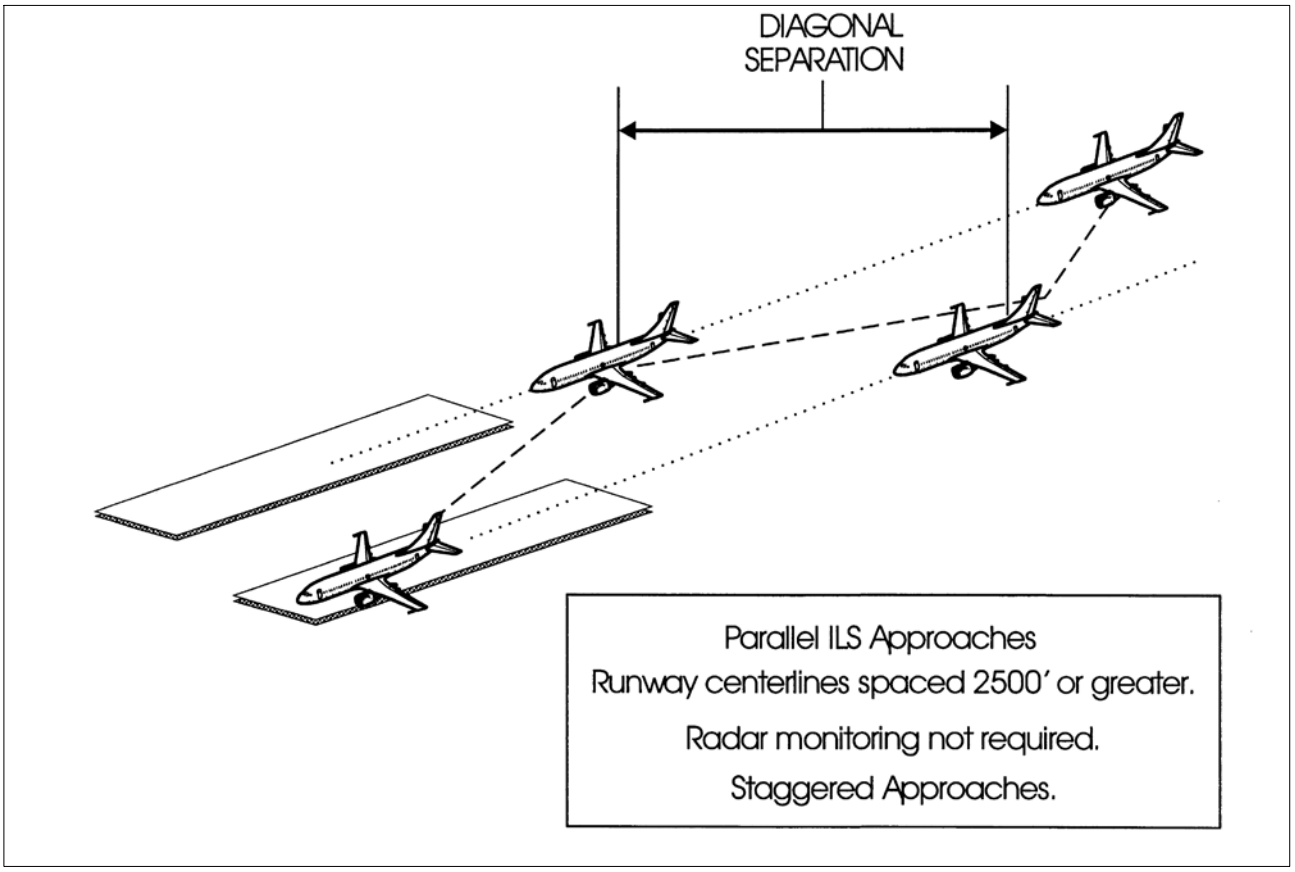
FIG 5–4–18
Parallel ILS Approaches



5–4–14. Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Dependent)

(See FIG 5–4–19.)

FIG 5–4–19
Staggered ILS Approaches



a. Parallel approaches are an ATC procedure permitting parallel ILS/MLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment.

b. A parallel (dependent) approach differs from a simultaneous (independent) approach in that, the minimum distance between parallel runway centerlines is reduced; there is no requirement for radar monitoring or advisories; and a staggered separation of aircraft on the adjacent localizer/azimuth course is required.

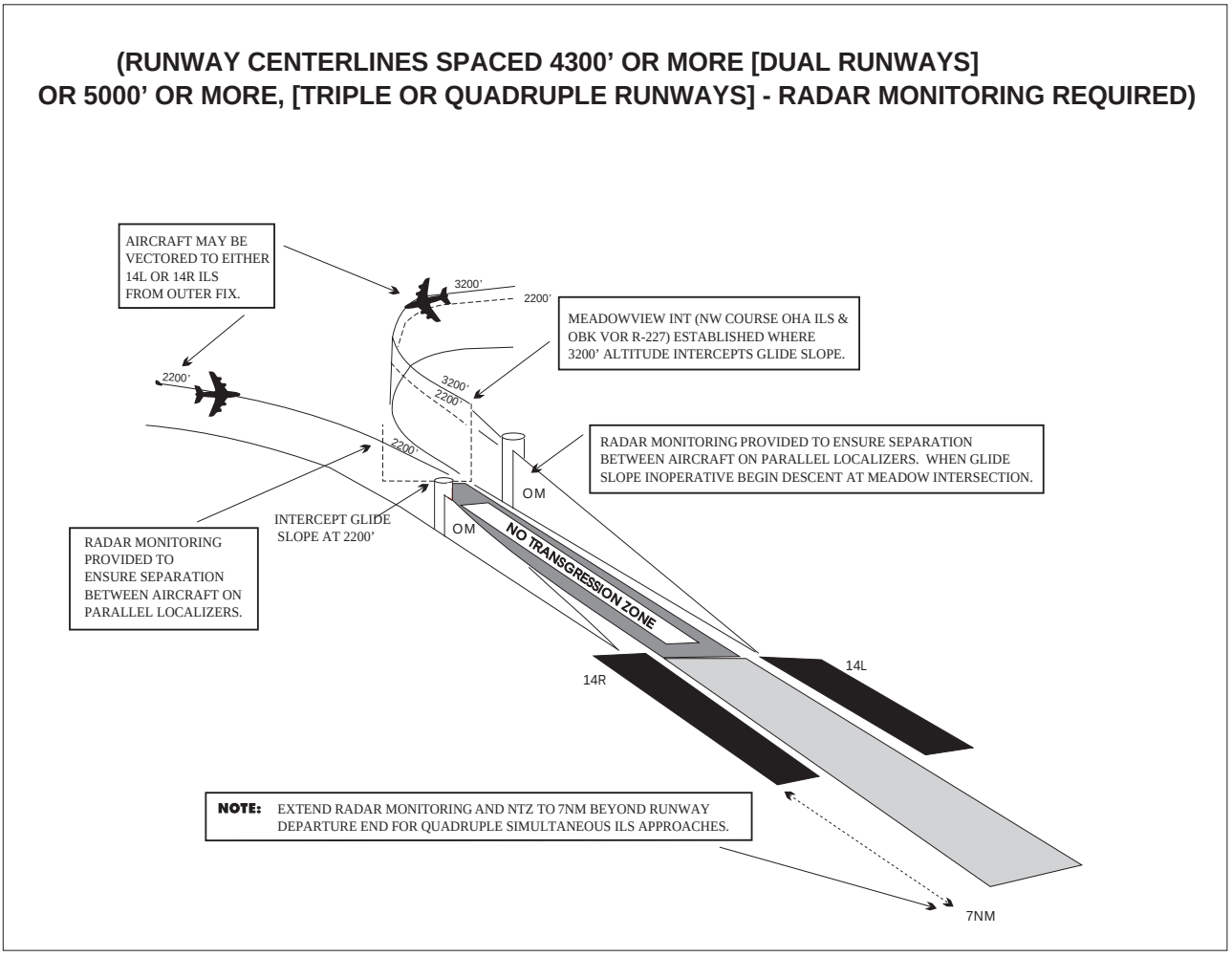
c. Aircraft are afforded a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on the adjacent localizer/azimuth course when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart. When runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart a minimum of 2 miles diagonal radar separation is provided. Aircraft on the same localizer/azimuth course within 10 miles of the runway end are provided a minimum of 2.5 miles radar separation. In addition, a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of three miles radar separation is provided between aircraft during turn on to the parallel final approach course.

d. Whenever parallel ILS/MLS approaches are in progress, pilots are informed that approaches to both runways are in use. In addition, the radar controller will have the interphone capability of communicating with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

5–4–15. Simultaneous Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Independent)

(See FIG 5–4–20.)

FIG 5–4–20
Simultaneous Parallel ILS Approaches



a. System. An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches to parallel runways with centerlines separated by 4,300 to 9,000 feet, and equipped with final monitor controllers. Simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches require radar monitoring to ensure separation between aircraft on the adjacent parallel approach course. Aircraft position is tracked by final monitor controllers who will issue instructions to aircraft observed deviating from the assigned localizer course. Staggered radar separation procedures are not utilized. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment. The Approach Procedure Chart permitting simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches will contain the note "simultaneous approaches authorized RWYS 14L and 14R," identifying the appropriate runways as the case may be. When advised that simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches are in progress, pilots shall advise approach control immediately of malfunctioning or inoperative receivers, or if a simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approach is not desired.

b. Radar Monitoring. This service is provided for each simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approach to ensure aircraft do not deviate from the final approach course. Radar monitoring includes instructions if an aircraft nears or penetrates the prescribed NTZ (an

area 2,000 feet wide located equidistant between parallel final approach courses). This service will be provided as follows:

1. During turn on to parallel final approach, aircraft will be provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum or 1,000 feet vertical separation. The assigned altitude must be maintained until intercepting the glide path, unless cleared otherwise by ATC. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than thirty degrees.

2. The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency.

3. Pilots will be instructed to monitor the tower frequency to receive advisories and instructions.

4. Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn-on or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may also issue missed approach or breakout instructions to the deviating aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"(Aircraft call sign) YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE,"

or

"(aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE."

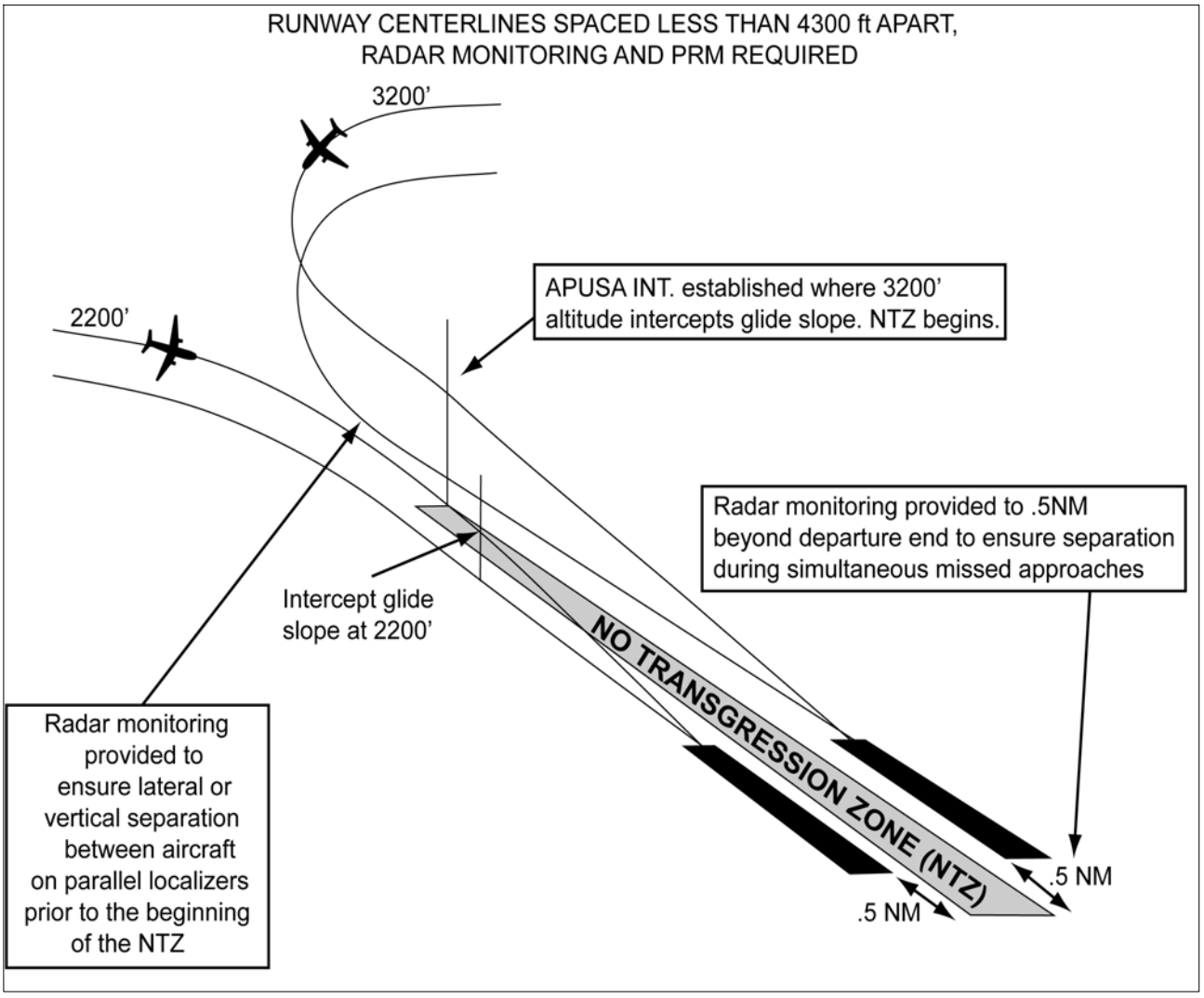
5. If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course may be instructed to alter course.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."

6. Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight, or the aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold (for runway centerlines spaced 4,300 feet or greater). Final monitor controllers will **not** advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

5–4–16. Simultaneous Close Parallel ILS PRM Approaches (Independent) and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA) (See FIG 5–4–21.)

FIG 5–4–21
ILS PRM Approaches
(Simultaneous Close Parallel)



a. System

1. ILS/PRM is an acronym for Instrument Landing System/Precision Runway Monitor.

(a) An approach system that permits simultaneous ILS/PRM approaches to dual runways with centerlines separated by **less** than 4,300 feet but at least 3,400 feet for parallel approach courses, and at least 3,000 feet if one ILS if offset by 2.5 to 3.0 degrees. The airspace between the final approach courses contains a No Transgression Zone (NTZ) with surveillance provided by two PRM monitor controllers, one for each approach course. To qualify for reduced lateral runway separation, monitor controllers must be equipped with high update radar and high resolution ATC radar displays, collectively called a PRM system. The PRM system displays almost instantaneous radar information. Automated tracking software provides PRM monitor controllers with aircraft identification, position, speed and a ten–second projected position, as well as visual and aural controller alerts. The PRM system is a supplemental requirement for simultaneous close parallel approaches in addition to the system

requirements for simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches described in paragraph 5–4–15, Simultaneous Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Independent).

(b) Simultaneous close parallel ILS/PRM approaches are depicted on a separate Approach Procedure Chart titled ILS/PRM Rwy XXX (Simultaneous Close Parallel).

2. SOIA is an acronym for Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach, a procedure used to conduct simultaneous approaches to runways spaced less than 3,000 feet, but at least 750 feet apart. The SOIA procedure utilizes an ILS/PRM approach to one runway and an offset Localizer Type Directional Aid (LDA)/PRM approach with glide slope to the adjacent runway.

(a) The ILS/PRM approach plates used in SOIA operations are identical to other ILS/PRM approach plates, with an additional note, which provides the separation between the two runways used for simultaneous approaches. The LDA/PRM approach plate displays the required notations for closely spaced approaches as well as depicting the visual segment of the approach, and a note that provides the separation between the two runways used for simultaneous operations.

(b) Controllers monitor the SOIA ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches with a PRM system using high update radar and high–resolution ATC radar displays in exactly the same manner as is done for ILS/PRM approaches. The procedures and system requirements for SOIA ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches are identical with those used for simultaneous close parallel ILS/PRM approaches until near the LDA/PRM approach missed approach point (MAP)–––where visual acquisition of the ILS aircraft by the LDA aircraft must be accomplished. Since the ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches are identical except for the visual segment in the SOIA concept, an understanding of the procedures for conducting ILS/PRM approaches is essential before conducting a SOIA ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM operation.

(c) In SOIA, the approach course separation (instead of the runway separation) meets established close parallel approach criteria. Refer to FIG 5–4–22 for the generic SOIA approach geometry. A visual segment of the LDA/PRM approach is established between the LDA MAP and the runway threshold. Aircraft transition in visual conditions from the LDA course, beginning at the LDA MAP, to align with the runway and can be stabilized by 500 feet above ground level (AGL) on the extended runway centerline. Aircraft will be “paired” in SOIA operations, with the ILS aircraft ahead of the LDA aircraft prior to the LDA aircraft reaching the LDA MAP. A cloud ceiling for the approach is established so that the LDA aircraft has nominally 30 seconds to acquire the leading ILS aircraft prior to the LDA aircraft reaching the LDA MAP. If visual acquisition is not accomplished, a missed approach must be executed.

b. Requirements

Besides system requirements as identified in subpara a above all pilots must have completed special training before accepting a clearance to conduct ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM Simultaneous Close Parallel Approaches.

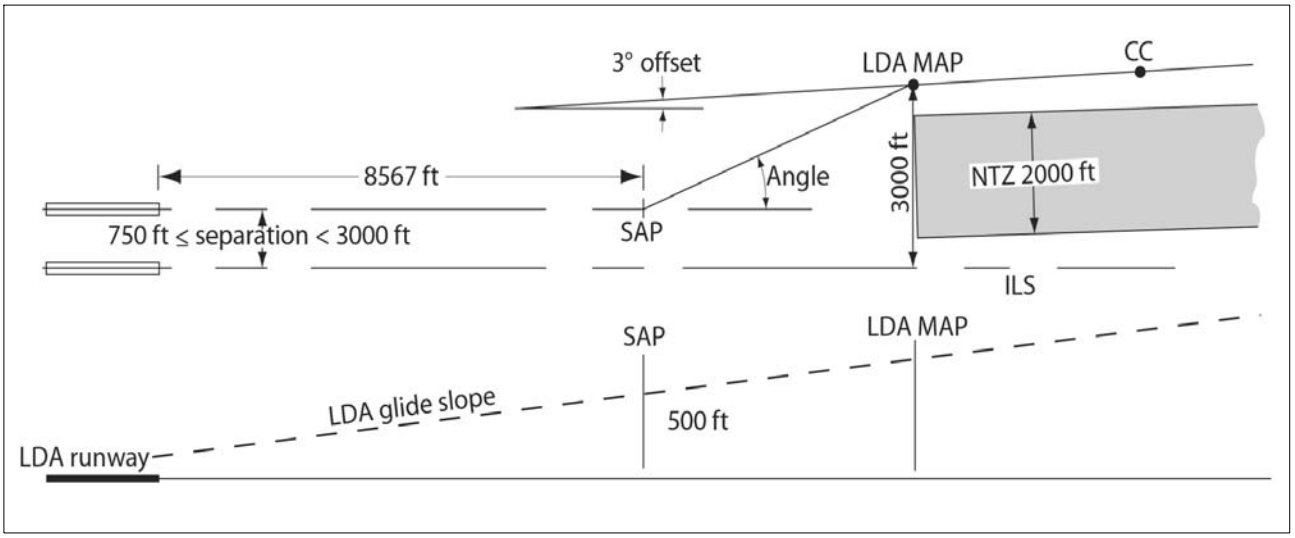
1. Pilot Training Requirement. Pilots must complete special pilot training, as outlined below, before accepting a clearance for a simultaneous close parallel ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approach.

(a) For operations under 14 CFR Parts 121, 129, and 135 pilots must comply with FAA approved company training as identified in their Operations Specifications. Training, at a minimum, must require pilots to view the FAA video “ILS PRM AND SOIA APPROACHES: INFORMATION FOR AIR CARRIER PILOTS.” Refer to **http://www.faa.gov** for additional information and to view or download the video.

(b) For operations under Part 91:

(1) Pilots operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM operations as contained in this section of the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM). In addition, pilots operating transport category aircraft must view the FAA video “ILS PRM AND SOIA APPROACHES: INFORMATION FOR AIR CARRIER PILOTS.” Refer to **http://www.faa.gov** for additional information and to view or download the video.

FIG 5–4–22
SOIA Approach Geometry



NOTE–

SAP	*The SAP is a design point along the extended centerline of the intended landing runway on the glide slope at 500 feet above the landing threshold. It is used to verify a sufficient distance is provided for the visual maneuver after the missed approach point (MAP) to permit the pilots to conform to approved, stabilized approach criteria.*
MAP	*The point along the LDA where the course separation with the adjacent ILS reaches 3,000 feet. The altitude of the glide slope at that point determines the approach minimum descent altitude and is where the NTZ terminates. Maneuvering inside the MAP is done in visual conditions.*
Angle	*Angle formed at the intersection of the extended LDA runway centerline and a line drawn between the LDA MAP and the SAP. The size of the angle is determined by the FAA SOIA computer design program, and is dependent on whether Heavy aircraft use the LDA and the spacing between the runways.*
Visibility	*Distance from MAP to runway threshold in statute miles (light credit applies).*
Procedure	*LDA aircraft must see the runway landing environment and, if less than standard radar separation exists between the aircraft on the adjacent ILS course, the LDA aircraft must visually acquire the ILS aircraft and report it in sight to ATC prior to the LDA MAP.*
CC	*Clear Clouds.*

(2) Pilots *not* operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM and SOIA operations as contained in this section of the AIM. The FAA strongly recommends that pilots *not* involved in transport category aircraft operations view the FAA video, "ILS PRM AND SOIA APPROACHES: INFORMATION FOR GENERAL AVIATION PILOTS." Refer to **http://www.faa.gov** for additional information and to view or download the video.

2. ATC Directed Breakout. An ATC directed "breakout" is defined as a vector off the ILS or LDA approach course in response to another aircraft penetrating the NTZ, the 2,000 foot wide area located equidistance between the two approach courses that is monitored by the PRM monitor controllers.

3. Dual Communications. The aircraft flying the ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approach must have the capability of enabling the pilot/s to listen to two communications frequencies simultaneously.

c. Radar Monitoring. Simultaneous close parallel ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches require that final monitor controllers utilize the PRM system to ensure prescribed separation standards are met. Procedures and communications phraseology are also described in paragraph 5–4–15, Simultaneous Parallel ILS/MLS Approaches (Independent). A minimum of 3 miles radar separation or 1,000 feet vertical separation will be provided during the turn–on to close parallel final approach courses. To ensure separation is maintained, and in order to avoid an imminent situation during simultaneous close parallel ILS/PRM or SOIA ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches, pilots must immediately comply with PRM monitor controller instructions. In the event of a missed approach, radar monitoring is provided to one–half mile beyond the most distant of the two runway departure ends for ILS/RPM approaches. In SOIA, PRM radar monitoring terminates at the LDA MAP. Final monitor controllers will **not** notify pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

d. Attention All Users Page (AAUP). ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approach charts have an AAUP associated with them that must be referred to in preparation for conducting the approach. This page contains the following instructions that must be followed if the pilot is unable to accept an ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approach.

1. At airports that conduct PRM operations, (ILS/PRM or, in the case of airports where SOIAs are conducted, ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches) pilots not qualified to except PRM approaches must contact the FAA Command Center prior to departure (1–800–333–4286) to obtain an arrival reservation (see FAA Advisory Circular 90–98, Simultaneous Closely Spaced Parallel Operations at Airports Using Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Systems). Arriving flights that are unable to participate in ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approaches and have not received an arrival reservation are subject to diversion to another airport or delays. Pilots en route to a PRM airport designated as an alternate, unable to reach their filed destination, and who are not qualified to participate in ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approaches must advise ATC as soon as practical that they are unable to participate. Pilots who are qualified to participate but experience an en route equipment failure that would preclude participation in PRM approaches should notify ATC as soon as practical.

2. The AAUP covers the following operational topics:

(a) ATIS. When the ATIS broadcast advises ILS/PRM approaches are in progress (or ILS PRM and LDA PRM approaches in the case of SOIA), pilots should brief to fly the ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approach. If later advised to expect the ILS or LDA approach (should one be published), the ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM chart may be used after completing the following briefing items:

(1) Minimums and missed approach procedures are unchanged.

(2) PRM Monitor frequency no longer required.

(3) ATC may assign a lower altitude for glide slope intercept.

NOTE–
In the case of the LDA/PRM approach, this briefing procedure only applies if an LDA approach is also published.

In the case of the SOIA ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM procedure, the AAUP describes the weather conditions in which simultaneous approaches are authorized:

Simultaneous approach weather minimums are X,XXX feet (ceiling), x miles (visibility).

(b) Dual VHF Communications Required. To avoid blocked transmissions, each runway will have two frequencies, a primary and a monitor frequency. The tower controller will transmit on both frequencies. The monitor controller's transmissions, if needed, will override both frequencies. Pilots will ONLY transmit on the tower controller's frequency, but will listen to both frequencies. Begin to monitor the PRM monitor controller when instructed by ATC to contact the tower. The volume levels should be set about the same on both radios so that the pilots will be able to hear transmissions on at least one frequency if the other is blocked. Site specific procedures take precedence over the general information presented in this paragraph. Refer to the AAUP for applicable procedures at specific airports.

(c) Breakouts. Breakouts differ from other types of abandoned approaches in that they can happen anywhere and unexpectedly. Pilots directed by ATC to break off an approach must assume that an aircraft is blundering toward them and a breakout must be initiated **immediately**.

(1) Hand–fly breakouts. All breakouts are to be hand–flown to ensure the maneuver is accomplished in the shortest amount of time.

(2) ATC Directed "Breakouts." ATC directed breakouts will consist of a turn and a climb or descent. Pilots must always initiate the breakout in response to an air traffic controller's instruction. Controllers will give a descending breakout only when there are no other reasonable options available, but in no case will the descent be below the minimum vectoring altitude (MVA) which provides at least 1,000 feet required obstruction clearance. The AAUP provides the MVA in the final approach segment as X,XXX feet at (Name) Airport.

NOTE–
"TRAFFIC ALERT." If an aircraft enters the "NO TRANSGRESSION ZONE" (NTZ), the controller will breakout the threatened aircraft on the adjacent approach. The phraseology for the breakout will be:

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC ALERT, (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY, HEADING (degrees), CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

(d) ILS/PRM Navigation. The pilot may find crossing altitudes along the final approach course. The pilot is advised that descending on the ILS glideslope ensures complying with any charted crossing restrictions.

SOIA AAUP differences from ILS PRM AAUP

(e) ILS/PRM LDA Traffic (only published on ILS/PRM AAUP when the ILS PRM approach is used in conjunctions with an LDA/PRM approach to the adjacent runway). To provide better situational awareness, and because traffic on the LDA may be visible on the ILS aircraft's TCAS, pilots are reminded of the fact that aircraft will be maneuvering behind them to align with the adjacent runway. While conducting the ILS/PRM approach to Runway XXX, other aircraft may be conducting the offset LDA/PRM approach to Runway XXX. These aircraft will approach from the (left/right)–rear and will realign with runway XXX after making visual contact with the ILS traffic. Under normal circumstances these aircraft will not pass the ILS traffic.

SOIA LDA/PRM AAUP Items. The AAUP for the SOIA LDA/PRM approach contains most information found on ILS/PRM AAUPs. It replaces certain information as seen below and provides pilots with the procedures to be used in the visual segment of the LDA/PRM approach, from the time the ILS aircraft is visually acquired until landing.

(f) SOIA LDA/PRM Navigation (replaces ILS/PRM (d) **and** (e) **above).** The pilot may find crossing altitudes along the final approach course. The pilot is advised that descending on the LDA glideslope ensures complying with any charted crossing restrictions. Remain on the LDA course until passing XXXXX (LDA MAP name) intersection prior to maneuvering to align with the centerline of runway XXX.

(g) SOIA (Name) Airport Visual Segment (replaces ILS/PRM (e) **above).** Pilot procedures for navigating beyond the LDA MAP are spelled out. If ATC advises that there is traffic on the adjacent ILS, pilots are authorized to continue past the LDA MAP to align with runway centerline when:

(1) the ILS traffic is in sight and is expected to remain in sight,

(2) ATC has been advised that "traffic is in sight."

(3) the runway environment is in sight.

Otherwise, a missed approach must be executed. Between the LDA MAP and the runway threshold, pilots of the LDA aircraft are responsible for separating themselves visually from traffic on the ILS approach, which means maneuvering the aircraft as necessary to avoid the ILS traffic until landing, and providing wake turbulence avoidance, if applicable. Pilots should advise ATC, as soon as practical, if visual contact with the ILS traffic is lost and execute a missed approach unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

e. SOIA LDA Approach Wake Turbulence. Pilots are responsible for wake turbulence avoidance when maneuvering between the LDA missed approach point and the runway threshold.

f. Differences between ILS and ILS/PRM approaches of importance to the pilot.

1. Runway Spacing. Prior to ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approaches, most ATC directed breakouts were the result of two aircraft in–trail on the same final approach course getting too close together. Two aircraft going in the same direction did not mandate quick reaction times. With PRM approaches, two aircraft could be along side each other, navigating on courses that are separated by less than 4,300 feet. In the unlikely event that an aircraft "blunders" off its course and makes a worst case turn of 30 degrees toward the adjacent final approach course, closing speeds of 135 feet per second could occur that constitute the need for quick reaction. A blunder has to be recognized by the monitor controller, and breakout instructions issued to the endangered aircraft. The pilot will not have any warning that a breakout is imminent because the blundering aircraft will be on another frequency. It is important that, when a pilot receives breakout instructions, he/she assumes that a blundering aircraft is about to or has penetrated the NTZ and is heading toward his/her approach course. The pilot must initiate a breakout as soon as safety allows. While conducting PRM approaches, pilots must maintain an increased sense of awareness in order to immediately react to an ATC instruction (**breakout**) and maneuver as instructed by ATC, away from a blundering aircraft.

2. Communications. To help in avoiding communication problems caused by stuck microphones and two parties talking at the same time, two frequencies for each runway will be in use during ILS/PRM and LDA/PRM approach operations, the primary tower frequency and the PRM monitor frequency. The tower controller transmits and receives in a normal fashion on the primary frequency and also transmits on the PRM monitor frequency. The monitor controller's transmissions override on both frequencies. The pilots flying the approach will listen to both frequencies but only transmit on the primary tower frequency. If the PRM monitor controller initiates a breakout and the primary frequency is blocked by another transmission, the breakout instruction will still be heard on the PRM monitor frequency.

3. Hand–flown Breakouts. The use of the autopilot is encouraged while flying an ILS/PRM or LDA/PRM approach, but the autopilot must be disengaged in the rare event that a breakout is issued. Simulation studies of breakouts have shown that a hand–flown breakout can be initiated consistently faster than a breakout performed using the autopilot.

4. TCAS. The ATC breakout instruction is the primary means of conflict resolution. TCAS, if installed, provides another form of conflict resolution in the unlikely event other separation standards would fail. TCAS is not required to conduct a closely spaced approach.

The TCAS provides only vertical resolution of aircraft conflicts, while the ATC breakout instruction provides both vertical and horizontal guidance for conflict resolutions. Pilots should always immediately follow the TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), whenever it is received. Should a TCAS RA be received before, during, or after an ATC breakout instruction is issued, the pilot should follow the RA, even if it conflicts with the climb/descent portion of the breakout maneuver. If following an RA requires deviating from an ATC clearance, the pilot shall advise ATC as soon as practical. While following an RA, it is extremely important that the pilot also comply with the turn portion of the ATC breakout instruction unless the pilot determines safety to be factor. Adhering to these procedures assures the pilot that acceptable "breakout" separation margins will always be provided, even in the face of a normal procedural or system failure.

5. Breakouts. The probability is extremely low that an aircraft will "blunder" from its assigned approach course and enter the NTZ, causing ATC to "breakout" the aircraft approaching on the adjacent ILS course. However, because of the close proximity of the final approach courses, it is essential that pilots follow the ATC breakout instructions precisely and expeditiously. The controller's "breakout" instructions provide conflict resolution for the threatened aircraft, with the turn portion of the "breakout" being the single most important element in achieving maximum protection. A descending breakout will only be issued when it is the only controller option. In no case will the controller descend an aircraft below the MVA, which will provide at least 1,000 feet clearance above obstacles.

The pilot is not expected to exceed 1,000 feet per minute rate of descent in the event a descending breakout is issued.

5–4–17. Simultaneous Converging Instrument Approaches

a. ATC may conduct instrument approaches simultaneously to converging runways; i.e., runways having an included angle from 15 to 100 degrees, at airports where a program has been specifically approved to do so.

b. The basic concept requires that dedicated, separate standard instrument approach procedures be developed for each converging runway included. Missed Approach Points must be at least 3 miles apart and missed approach procedures ensure that missed approach protected airspace does not overlap.

c. Other requirements are: radar availability, nonintersecting final approach courses, precision (ILS/MLS) approach systems on each runway and, if runways intersect, controllers must be able to apply visual separation as well as intersecting runway separation criteria. Intersecting runways also require minimums of at least 700 foot ceilings and 2 miles visibility. Straight in approaches and landings must be made.

d. Whenever simultaneous converging approaches are in progress, aircraft will be informed by the controller as soon as feasible after initial contact or via ATIS. Additionally, the radar controller will have direct communications capability with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

5–4–18. RNP SAAAR Instrument Approach Procedures

These procedures require authorization analogous to the special authorization required for Category II or III ILS procedures. Special aircraft and aircrew authorization required (SAAAR) procedures are to be conducted by aircrews meeting special training requirements in aircraft that meet the specified performance and functional requirements.

a. Unique characteristics of RNP SAAAR Approaches

1. RNP value. Each published line of minima has an associated RNP value. The indicated value defines the lateral and vertical performance requirements. A minimum RNP type is documented as part of the RNP SAAAR authorization for each operator and may vary depending on aircraft configuration or operational procedures (e.g., GPS inoperative, use of flight director vice autopilot).

2. Curved path procedures. Some RNP approaches have a curved path, also called a radius–to–a–fix (RF) leg. Since not all aircraft have the capability to fly these arcs, pilots are responsible for knowing if they can conduct an RNP approach with an arc or not. Aircraft speeds, winds and bank angles have been taken into consideration in the development of the procedures.

3. RNP required for extraction or not. Where required, the missed approach procedure may use RNP values less than RNP–1. The reliability of the navigation system has to be very high in order to conduct these approaches. Operation on these procedures generally requires redundant equipment, as no single point of failure can cause loss of both approach and missed approach navigation.

4. Non–standard speeds or climb gradients. RNP SAAAR approaches are developed based on standard approach speeds and a 200 ft/NM climb gradient in the missed approach. Any exceptions to these standards will be indicated on the approach procedure, and the operator should ensure they can comply with any published restrictions before conducting the operation.

5. Temperature Limits. For aircraft using barometric vertical navigation (without temperature compensation) to conduct the approach, low and high–temperature limits are identified on the procedure. Cold temperatures reduce the glidepath angle while high temperatures increase the glidepath angle. Aircraft using baro VNAV with temperature compensation or aircraft using an alternate means for vertical guidance (e.g., SBAS) may disregard the temperature restrictions. The charted temperature limits are evaluated for the final approach segment only. Regardless of charted temperature limits or temperature compensation by the FMS, the pilot may need to manually compensate for cold temperature on minimum altitudes and the decision altitude.

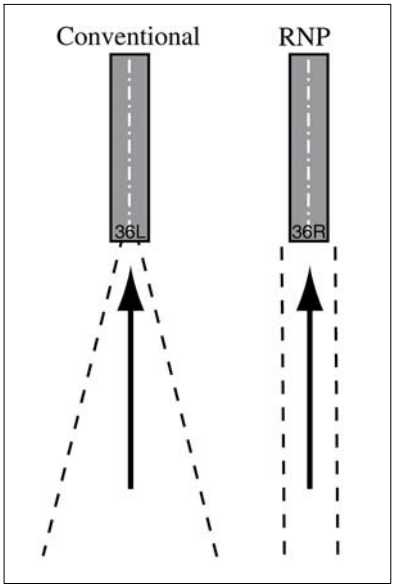
6. Aircraft size. The achieved minimums may be dependent on aircraft size. Large aircraft may require higher minimums due to gear height and/or wingspan. Approach procedure charts will be annotated with applicable aircraft size restrictions.

b. Types of RNP SAAAR Approach Operations

1. RNP Stand–alone Approach Operations. RNP SAAAR procedures can provide access to runways regardless of the ground–based NAVAID infrastructure, and can be designed to avoid obstacles, terrain, airspace, or resolve environmental constraints.

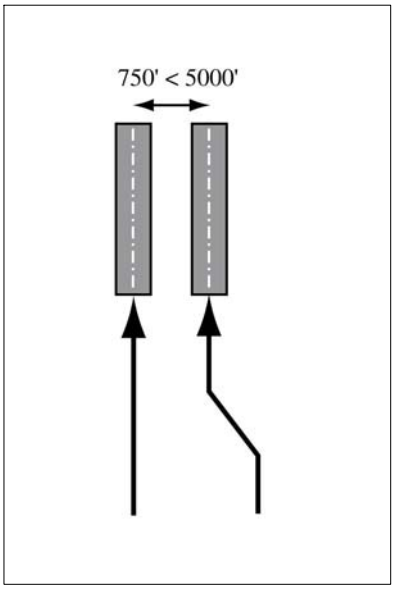
2. RNP Parallel Approach (RPA) Operations. RNP SAAAR procedures can be used for parallel approaches where the runway separation is adequate (See FIG 5–4–23). Parallel approach procedures can be used either simultaneously or as stand–alone operations. They may be part of either independent or dependent operations depending on the ATC ability to provide radar monitoring.

FIG 5–4–23



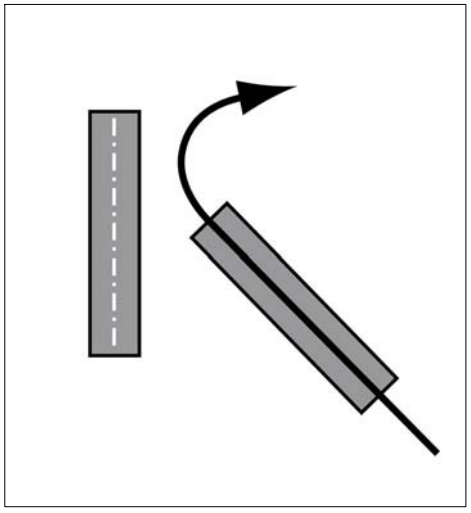
3. RNP Parallel Approach Runway Transitions (RPAT) Operations. RPAT approaches begin as a parallel IFR approach operation using simultaneous independent or dependent procedures. (See FIG 5–4–24). Visual separation standards are used in the final segment of the approach after the final approach fix, to permit the RPAT aircraft to transition in visual conditions along a predefined lateral and vertical path to align with the runway centerline.

FIG 5–4–24



4. RNP Converging Runway Operations. At airports where runways converge, but may or may not intersect, an RNP SAAAR approach can provide a precise curved missed approach path that conforms to aircraft separation minimums for simultaneous operations (See FIG 5–4–25). By flying this curved missed approach path with high accuracy and containment provided by RNP, dual runway operations may continue to be used to lower ceiling and visibility values than currently available. This type of operation allows greater capacity at airports where it can be applied.

FIG 5–4–25



5–4–19. Side-step Maneuver

a. ATC may authorize a standard instrument approach procedure which serves either one of parallel runways that are separated by 1,200 feet or less followed by a straight-in landing on the adjacent runway.

b. Aircraft that will execute a side-step maneuver will be cleared for a specified approach procedure and landing on the adjacent parallel runway. Example, "cleared ILS runway 7 left approach, side-step to runway 7 right." Pilots are expected to commence the side-step maneuver as soon as possible after the runway or runway environment is in sight. Compliance with minimum altitudes associated with stepdown fixes is expected even after the side–step maneuver is initiated.

NOTE–
Side–step minima are flown to a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) regardless of the approach authorized.

c. Landing minimums to the adjacent runway will be based on nonprecision criteria and therefore higher than the precision minimums to the primary runway, but will normally be lower than the published circling minimums.

5–4–20. Approach and Landing Minimums

a. Landing Minimums. The rules applicable to landing minimums are contained in 14 CFR Section 91.175. TBL 5–4–1 may be used to convert RVR to ground or flight visibility. For converting RVR values that fall between listed values, use the next higher RVR value; do not interpolate. For example, when converting 1800 RVR, use 2400 RVR with the resultant visibility of $^{1}/_{2}$ mile.

TBL 5–4–1
RVR Value Conversions

RVR	Visibility (statute miles)
1600	$^{1}/_{4}$
2400	$^{1}/_{2}$
3200	$^{5}/_{8}$
4000	$^{3}/_{4}$
4500	$^{7}/_{8}$
5000	1
6000	1 $^{1}/_{4}$

b. Obstacle Clearance. Final approach obstacle clearance is provided from the start of the final segment to the runway or missed approach point, whichever occurs last. Side-step obstacle protection is provided by increasing the width of the final approach obstacle clearance area.

1. Circling approach protected areas are defined by the tangential connection of arcs drawn from each runway end. The arc radii distance differs by aircraft approach category (see FIG 5–4–26). Because of obstacles near the airport, a portion of the circling area may be restricted by a procedural note: e.g., "Circling NA E of RWY 17–35." Obstacle clearance is provided at the published minimums (MDA) for the pilot who makes a straight–in approach, side–steps, or circles. Once below the MDA the pilot must see and avoid obstacles. Executing the missed approach after starting to maneuver usually places the aircraft beyond the MAP. The aircraft is clear of obstacles when at or above the MDA while inside the circling area, but simply joining the missed approach ground track from the circling maneuver may not provide vertical obstacle clearance once the aircraft exits the circling area. Additional climb inside the circling area may be required before joining the missed approach track. See paragraph 5–4–21,

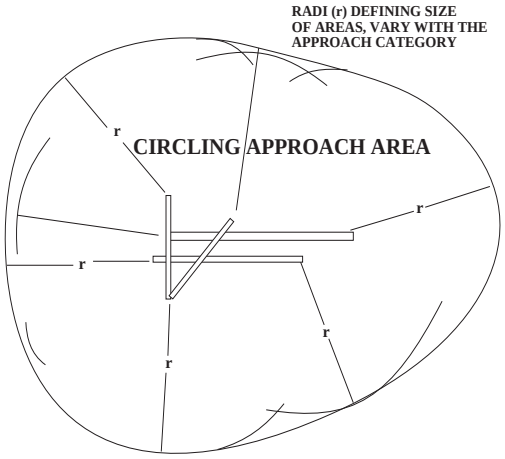
Missed Approach, for additional considerations when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP.

FIG 5–4–26

Final Approach Obstacle Clearance

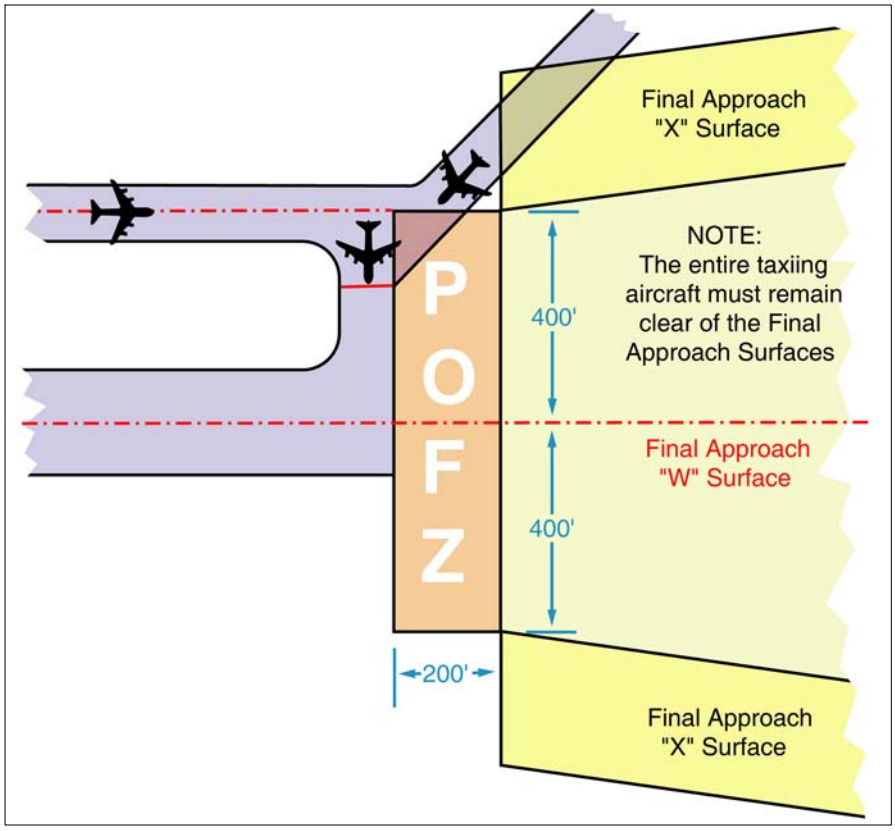
CIRCLING APPROACH AREA RADII

Approach Category	Radius (Miles)
A	1.3
B	1.5
C	1.7
D	2.3
E	4.5



2. Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ). A volume of airspace above an area beginning at the runway threshold, at the threshold elevation, and centered on the extended runway centerline. The POFZ is 200 feet (60m) long and 800 feet (240m) wide. The POFZ must be clear when an aircraft on a vertically guided final approach is within 2 nautical miles of the runway threshold and the reported ceiling is below 250 feet or visibility less than 3/4 statute mile (SM) (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet). If the POFZ is not clear, the MINIMUM authorized height above touchdown (HAT) and visibility is 250 feet and 3/4 SM. The POFZ is considered clear even if the wing of the aircraft holding on a taxiway waiting for runway clearance penetrates the POFZ; however, neither the fuselage nor the tail may infringe on the POFZ. The POFZ is applicable at all runway ends including displaced thresholds.

FIG 5–4–27



c. Straight-in Minimums are shown on the IAP when the final approach course is within 30 degrees of the runway alignment (15 degrees for GPS IAPs) and a normal descent can be made from the IFR altitude shown on the IAP to the runway surface. When either the normal rate of descent or the runway alignment factor of 30 degrees (15 degrees for GPS IAPs) is exceeded, a straight-in minimum is not published and a circling minimum applies. The fact that a straight-in minimum is not published does not preclude pilots from landing straight-in if they have the active runway in sight and have sufficient time to make a normal approach for landing. Under such conditions and when ATC has cleared them for landing on that runway, pilots are not expected to circle even though only circling minimums are published. If they desire to circle, they should advise ATC.

d. Side-Step Maneuver Minimums. Landing minimums for a side-step maneuver to the adjacent runway will normally be higher than the minimums to the primary runway.

e. Published Approach Minimums. Approach minimums are published for different aircraft categories and consist of a minimum altitude (DA, DH, MDA) and required visibility. These minimums are determined by applying the appropriate TERPS criteria. When a fix is incorporated in a nonprecision final segment, two sets of minimums may be published: one for the pilot that is able to identify the fix, and a second for the pilot that cannot. Two sets of minimums may also be published when a second altimeter source is used in the procedure. When a nonprecision procedure incorporates both a stepdown fix in the final segment and a second

altimeter source, two sets of minimums are published to account for the stepdown fix and a note addresses minimums for the second altimeter source.

f. Circling Minimums. In some busy terminal areas, ATC may not allow circling and circling minimums will not be published. Published circling minimums provide obstacle clearance when pilots remain within the appropriate area of protection. Pilots should remain at or above the circling altitude until the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers. Circling may require maneuvers at low altitude, at low airspeed, and in marginal weather conditions. Pilots must use sound judgment, have an indepth knowledge of their capabilities, and fully understand the aircraft performance to determine the exact circling maneuver since weather, unique airport design, and the aircraft position, altitude, and airspeed must all be considered. The following basic rules apply:

1. Maneuver the shortest path to the base or downwind leg, as appropriate, considering existing weather conditions. There is no restriction from passing over the airport or other runways.

2. It should be recognized that circling maneuvers may be made while VFR or other flying is in progress at the airport. Standard left turns or specific instruction from the controller for maneuvering must be considered when circling to land.

3. At airports without a control tower, it may be desirable to fly over the airport to observe wind and turn indicators and other traffic which may be on the runway or flying in the vicinity of the airport.

g. Instrument Approach at a Military Field. When instrument approaches are conducted by civil aircraft at military airports, they shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures and minimums approved by the military agency having jurisdiction over the airport.

5–4–21. Missed Approach

a. When a landing cannot be accomplished, advise ATC and, upon reaching the missed approach point defined on the approach procedure chart, the pilot must comply with the missed approach instructions for the procedure being used or with an alternate missed approach procedure specified by ATC.

b. Obstacle protection for missed approach is predicated on the missed approach being initiated at the decision altitude/height (DA/H) or at the missed approach point and not lower than minimum descent altitude (MDA). A climb gradient of at least 200 feet per nautical mile is required, (except for Copter approaches, where a climb of at least 400 feet per nautical mile is required), unless a higher climb gradient is published in the notes section of the approach procedure chart. When higher than standard climb gradients are specified, the end point of the non–standard climb will be specified at either an altitude or a fix. Pilots must preplan to ensure that the aircraft can meet the climb gradient (expressed in feet per nautical mile) required by the procedure in the event of a missed approach, and be aware that flying at a higher than anticipated ground speed increases the climb rate requirement (feet per minute). Tables for the conversion of climb gradients (feet per nautical mile) to climb rate (feet per minute), based on ground speed, are included on page D1 of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklets. Reasonable buffers are provided for normal maneuvers. However, no consideration is given to an abnormally early turn. Therefore, when an early missed approach is executed, pilots should, unless otherwise cleared by ATC, fly the IAP as specified on the approach plate to the missed approach point at or above the MDA or DH before executing a turning maneuver.

c. If visual reference is lost while circling-to-land from an instrument approach, the missed approach specified for that particular procedure must be followed (unless an alternate missed approach procedure is specified by ATC). To become established on the prescribed missed approach course, the pilot should make an initial climbing turn toward the landing runway and continue the turn until established on the missed approach course. Inasmuch as the circling maneuver may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to become established on the prescribed missed approach course, depending on the aircraft position at the time visual reference is lost. Adherence to the procedure will help assure that an aircraft will remain laterally within the circling and missed approach obstruction clearance areas. Refer

to paragraph h concerning vertical obstruction clearance when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP. (See FIG 5–4–28.)

d. At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure. (See FIG 5–4–29.)

e. Some locations may have a preplanned alternate missed approach procedure for use in the event the primary NAVAID used for the missed approach procedure is unavailable. To avoid confusion, the alternate missed approach instructions are not published on the chart. However, the alternate missed approach holding pattern will be depicted on the instrument approach chart for pilot situational awareness and to assist ATC by not having to issue detailed holding instructions. The alternate missed approach may be based on NAVAIDs not used in the approach procedure or the primary missed approach. When the alternate missed approach procedure is implemented by NOTAM, it becomes a mandatory part of the procedure. The NOTAM will specify both the textual instructions and any additional equipment requirements necessary to complete the procedure. Air traffic may also issue instructions for the alternate missed approach when necessary, such as when the primary missed approach NAVAID fails during the approach. Pilots may reject an ATC clearance for an alternate missed approach that requires equipment not necessary for the published approach procedure when the alternate missed approach is issued after beginning the approach. However, when the alternate missed approach is issued prior to beginning the approach the pilot must either accept the entire procedure (including the alternate missed approach), request a different approach procedure, or coordinate with ATC for alternative action to be taken, i.e., proceed to an alternate airport, etc.

f. When approach has been missed, request clearance for specific action; i.e., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.

g. Pilots must ensure that they have climbed to a safe altitude prior to proceeding off the published missed approach, especially in nonradar environments. Abandoning the missed approach prior to reaching the published altitude may not provide adequate terrain clearance. Additional climb may be required after reaching the holding pattern before proceeding back to the IAF or to an alternate.

FIG 5–4–28
Circling and Missed Approach Obstruction Clearance Areas

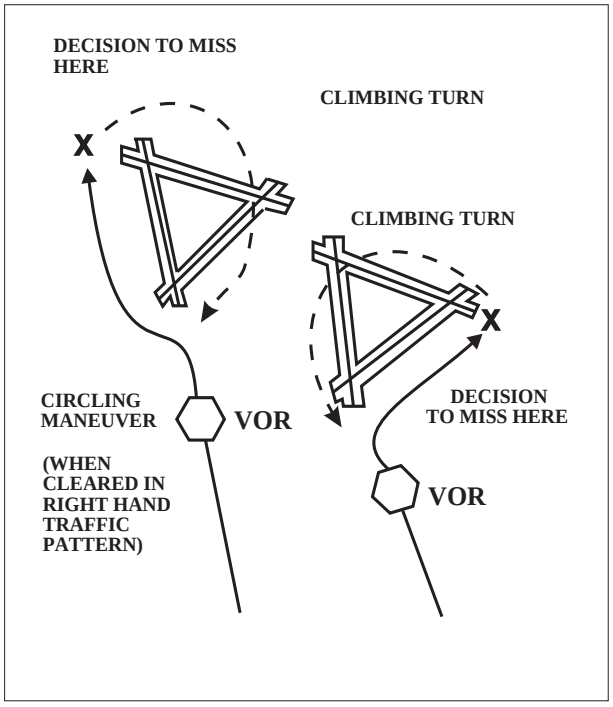
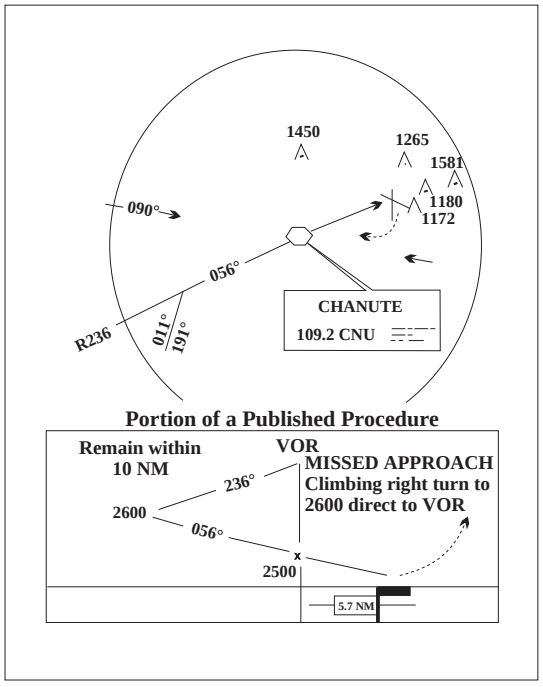


FIG 5–4–29
Missed Approach



h. Missed approach obstacle clearance is predicated on beginning the missed approach procedure at the Missed Approach Point (MAP) from MDA or DA and then climbing 200 feet/NM or greater. Initiating a go–around after passing the published MAP may result in total loss of obstacle clearance. To compensate for the possibility of reduced obstacle clearance during a go–around, a pilot should apply procedures used in takeoff planning. Pilots should refer to airport obstacle and departure data prior to initiating an instrument approach procedure. Such information may be found in the "TAKE–OFF MINIMUMS AND (OBSTACLE) DEPARTURE PROCEDURES" section of the U.S. TERMINAL PROCEDURES publication.

5–4–22. Visual Approach

a. A visual approach is conducted on an IFR flight plan and authorizes a pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must have either the airport or the preceding identified aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and controlled by the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must have a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater. ATC may authorize this type approach when it will be operationally beneficial. Visual approaches are an IFR procedure conducted under IFR in visual meteorological conditions. Cloud clearance requirements of 14 CFR Section 91.155 are not applicable, unless required by operation specifications.

b. Operating to an Airport Without Weather Reporting Service. ATC will advise the pilot when weather is not available at the destination airport. ATC may initiate a visual approach provided there is a reasonable assurance that weather at the airport is a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater (e.g., area weather reports, PIREPs, etc.).

c. Operating to an Airport With an Operating Control Tower. Aircraft may be authorized to conduct a visual approach to one runway while other aircraft are conducting IFR or VFR approaches to another parallel, intersecting, or converging runway. When operating to airports with parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, the succeeding aircraft must report sighting the preceding aircraft unless standard separation is being provided by ATC. When operating to parallel runways separated by at

least 2,500 feet but less than 4,300 feet, controllers will clear/vector aircraft to the final at an angle not greater than 30 degrees unless radar, vertical, or visual separation is provided during the turn-on. The purpose of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the final and to preclude side-by-side operations with one or both aircraft in a belly-up configuration during the turn-on. Once the aircraft are established within 30 degrees of final, or on the final, these operations may be conducted simultaneously. When the parallel runways are separated by 4,300 feet or more, or intersecting/converging runways are in use, ATC may authorize a visual approach after advising all aircraft involved that other aircraft are conducting operations to the other runway. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

d. Separation Responsibilities. If the pilot has the airport in sight but cannot see the aircraft to be followed, ATC may clear the aircraft for a visual approach; however, ATC retains both separation and wake vortex separation responsibility. When visually following a preceding aircraft, acceptance of the visual approach clearance constitutes acceptance of pilot responsibility for maintaining a safe approach interval and adequate wake turbulence separation.

e. A visual approach is not an IAP and therefore has no missed approach segment. If a go around is necessary for any reason, aircraft operating at controlled airports will be issued an appropriate advisory/clearance/instruction by the tower. At uncontrolled airports, aircraft are expected to remain clear of clouds and complete a landing as soon as possible. If a landing cannot be accomplished, the aircraft is expected to remain clear of clouds and contact ATC as soon as possible for further clearance. Separation from other IFR aircraft will be maintained under these circumstances.

f. Visual approaches reduce pilot/controller workload and expedite traffic by shortening flight paths to the airport. It is the pilot's responsibility to advise ATC as soon as possible if a visual approach is not desired.

g. Authorization to conduct a visual approach is an IFR authorization and does not alter IFR flight plan cancellation responsibility.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Canceling IFR Flight Plan, Paragraph 5–1–15

h. Radar service is automatically terminated, without advising the pilot, when the aircraft is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

5–4–23. Charted Visual Flight Procedure (CVFP)

a. CVFPs are charted visual approaches established for environmental/noise considerations, and/or when necessary for the safety and efficiency of air traffic operations. The approach charts depict prominent landmarks, courses, and recommended altitudes to specific runways. CVFPs are designed to be used primarily for turbojet aircraft.

b. These procedures will be used only at airports with an operating control tower.

c. Most approach charts will depict some NAVAID information which is for supplemental navigational guidance only.

d. Unless indicating a Class B airspace floor, all depicted altitudes are for noise abatement purposes and are recommended only. Pilots are not prohibited from flying other than recommended altitudes if operational requirements dictate.

e. When landmarks used for navigation are not visible at night, the approach will be annotated "*PROCEDURE NOT AUTHORIZED AT NIGHT.*"

f. CVFPs usually begin within 20 flying miles from the airport.

g. Published weather minimums for CVFPs are based on minimum vectoring altitudes rather than the recommended altitudes depicted on charts.

h. CVFPs are not instrument approaches and do not have missed approach segments.

i. ATC will not issue clearances for CVFPs when the weather is less than the published minimum.

j. ATC will clear aircraft for a CVFP after the pilot reports siting a charted landmark or a preceding aircraft. If instructed to follow a preceding aircraft, pilots are responsible for maintaining a safe approach interval and wake turbulence separation.

k. Pilots should advise ATC if at any point they are unable to continue an approach or lose sight of a preceding aircraft. Missed approaches will be handled as a go-around.

5–4–24. Contact Approach

a. Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan, provided they are clear of clouds and have at least 1 mile flight visibility and can reasonably expect to continue to the destination airport in those conditions, may request ATC authorization for a contact approach.

b. Controllers may authorize a contact approach provided:

1. The contact approach is specifically requested by the pilot. ATC cannot initiate this approach.

EXAMPLE–
Request contact approach.

2. The reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

3. The contact approach will be made to an airport having a standard or special instrument approach procedure.

4. Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and between these aircraft and other IFR or special VFR aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
Cleared contact approach (and, if required) at or below (altitude) (routing) if not possible (alternative procedures) and advise.

c. A contact approach is an approach procedure that may be used by a pilot (with prior authorization from ATC) in lieu of conducting a standard or special IAP to an airport. It is not intended for use by a pilot on an IFR flight clearance to operate to an airport not having a published and functioning IAP. Nor is it intended for an aircraft to conduct an instrument approach to one airport and then, when "in the clear," discontinue that approach and proceed to another airport. In the execution of a contact approach, the pilot assumes the responsibility for obstruction clearance. If radar service is being received, it will automatically terminate when the pilot is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

5–4–25. Landing Priority

A clearance for a specific type of approach (ILS, MLS, ADF, VOR or Straight-in Approach) to an aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan does not mean that landing priority will be given over other traffic. ATCTs handle all aircraft, regardless of the type of flight plan, on a "first-come, first-served" basis. Therefore, because of local traffic or runway in use, it may be necessary for the controller in the interest of safety, to provide a different landing sequence. In any case, a landing sequence will be issued to each aircraft as soon as possible to enable the pilot to properly adjust the aircraft's flight path.

5–4–26. Overhead Approach Maneuver

a. Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan in Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) may request ATC authorization for an overhead maneuver. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument approach procedure. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is considered to be VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the initial point on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. (See FIG 5–4–30.) The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved. Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of an IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver. Cancellation of the IFR flight plan must be accomplished after crossing the landing threshold on the initial portion of the maneuver or after landing. Controllers may authorize an overhead maneuver and issue the following to arriving aircraft:

1. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. This information may be omitted if either is standard.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

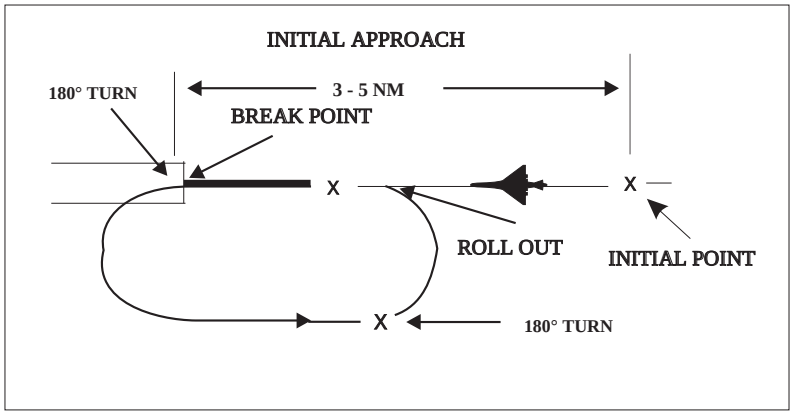
2. Request for a report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT INITIAL.

3. "Break" information and a request for the pilot to report. The "Break Point" will be specified if nonstandard. Pilots may be requested to report "break" if required for traffic or other reasons.

PHRASEOLOGY–
BREAK AT (specified point).
REPORT BREAK.

FIG 5–4–30
Overhead Maneuver



5. If the remaining usable fuel supply suggests the need for traffic priority to ensure a safe landing, you should declare an emergency due to low fuel and report fuel remaining in minutes.

REFERENCE–
Pilot/Controller Glossary Item– Fuel Remaining.

b. Controller.

1. When an aircraft declares a state of minimum fuel, relay this information to the facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred.

2. Be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft.

5–5–16. RNAV and RNP Operations

a. Pilot.

1. If unable to comply with the requirements of an RNAV or RNP procedure, pilots must advise air traffic control as soon as possible. For example, "N1234, failure of GPS system, unable RNAV, request amended clearance."

2. Pilots are not authorized to fly a published RNAV or RNP procedure (instrument approach, departure, or arrival procedure) unless it is retrievable by the procedure name from the current aircraft navigation database and conforms to the charted procedure. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints.

3. Whenever possible, RNAV routes (Q– or T–route) should be extracted from the database in their entirety, rather than loading RNAV route waypoints from the database into the flight plan individually. However, selecting and inserting individual, named fixes from the database is permitted, provided all fixes along the published route to be flown are inserted.

4. Pilots must not change any database waypoint type from a fly–by to fly–over, or vice versa. No other modification of database waypoints or the creation of user–defined waypoints on published RNAV or RNP procedures is permitted, except to:

(a) Change altitude and/or airspeed waypoint constraints to comply with an ATC clearance/instruction.

(b) Insert a waypoint along the published route to assist in complying with ATC instruction, example, "Descend via the WILMS arrival except cross 30 north of BRUCE at/or below FL 210." This is limited only to systems that allow along–track waypoint construction.

5. Pilots of FMS–equipped aircraft, who are assigned an RNAV DP or STAR procedure and subsequently receive a change of runway, transition or procedure, shall verify that the appropriate changes are loaded and available for navigation.

6. For RNAV 1 DPs and STARs, pilots must use a CDI, flight director and/or autopilot, in lateral navigation mode. Other methods providing an equivalent level of performance may also be acceptable.

7. For RNAV 1 DPs and STARs, pilots of aircraft without GPS, using DME/DME/IRU, must ensure the aircraft navigation system position is confirmed, within 1,000 feet, at the start point of take–off roll. The use of an automatic or manual runway update is an acceptable means of compliance with this requirement. Other methods providing an equivalent level of performance may also be acceptable.

8. For procedures or routes requiring the use of GPS, if the navigation system does not automatically alert the flight crew of a loss of GPS, the operator must develop procedures to verify correct GPS operation.

9. RNAV terminal procedures (DP and STAR) may be amended by ATC issuing radar vectors and/or clearances direct to a waypoint. Pilots should avoid premature manual deletion of waypoints from their active "legs" page to allow for rejoining procedures.

10. RAIM Prediction: If TSO–C129 equipment is used to solely satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement, GPS RAIM availability must be confirmed for the intended route of flight (route and time). If RAIM is not available, pilots need an approved alternate means of navigation.

REFERENCE–
AIM, RNAV and RNP Operations, Paragraph 5–1–15.

Chapter 7. Safety of Flight

Section 1. Meteorology

7–1–1. National Weather Service Aviation Products

a. Weather service to aviation is a joint effort of the National Weather Service (NWS), the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), the military weather services, and other aviation oriented groups and individuals. The NWS maintains an extensive surface, upper air, and radar weather observing program; a nationwide aviation weather forecasting service; and provides limited pilot briefing service (interpretational). Pilot weather briefings are provided by personnel at Flight Service Stations operated by FAA (in Alaska) or by federal contract facilities (elsewhere in the U.S.). Aviation routine weather reports (METAR) are taken manually by NWS, FAA, contractors, or supplemental observers. METAR reports are also provided by Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS), Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS), and Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS).

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–1–12 Weather Observing Programs.

b. Aerodrome forecasts are prepared by approximately 100 Weather Forecast Offices (WFOs). These offices prepare and distribute approximately 525 aerodrome forecasts 4 times daily for specific airports in the 50 States, Puerto Rico, the Caribbean and Pacific Islands. These forecasts are valid for 24 hours and amended as required. WFOs prepare over 300 route forecasts and 39 synopses for Transcribed Weather Broadcasts (TWEB) outside the continental United States (OCONUS) only and briefing purposes. The route forecasts are issued 4 times daily; each forecast is valid for 12 hours. A centralized aviation forecast program originating from the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) in Kansas City was implemented in October 1995. In the conterminous U.S., all inflight advisories, Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs), Convective SIGMETs, and Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMET–text bulletins [WA] and graphics [G–AIRMETs]), and all Area Forecasts (FAs) (6 areas) are now issued by AWC. FAs are prepared 3 times a day in the conterminous U.S. and Alaska (4 times in Hawaii), and amended as required. Inflight advisories are issued only when conditions warrant. Winds aloft forecasts are provided for 176 locations in the 48 contiguous States and 21 locations in Alaska for flight planning purposes. (Winds aloft forecasts for Hawaii are prepared locally.) All the aviation weather forecasts are given wide distribution through the Weather Message Switching Center Replacement (WMSCR) in Atlanta, Georgia, and Salt Lake City, Utah.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–1–6 Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories.

c. Weather element values may be expressed by using different measurement systems depending on several factors, such as whether the weather products will be used by the general public, aviation interests, international services, or a combination of these users. FIG 7–1–1 provides conversion tables for the most used weather elements that will be encountered by pilots.

7–1–2. FAA Weather Services

a. The FAA maintains a nationwide network of Automated Flight Service Stations (AFSSs/FSSs) to serve the weather needs of pilots. In addition, NWS meteorologists are assigned to most ARTCCs as part of the Center Weather Service Unit (CWSU). They provide Center Weather Advisories (CWAs) and gather weather information to support the needs of the FAA and other users of the system.

b. The primary source of preflight weather briefings is an individual briefing obtained from a briefer at the AFSS/FSS. These briefings, which are tailored to your specific flight, are available 24 hours a day through the use of the toll free number (1–800–WX BRIEF). Numbers for these services can be found in the Airport/Facility Directory (A/FD) under "FAA and NWS Telephone Numbers" section. They may also be listed in the U.S. Government section of your local telephone directory under Department of Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–1–4 Preflight Briefing, explains the types of preflight briefings available and the information contained in each.

FIG 7–1–1

Weather Elements Conversion Tables

TIME

STANDARD TO UTC

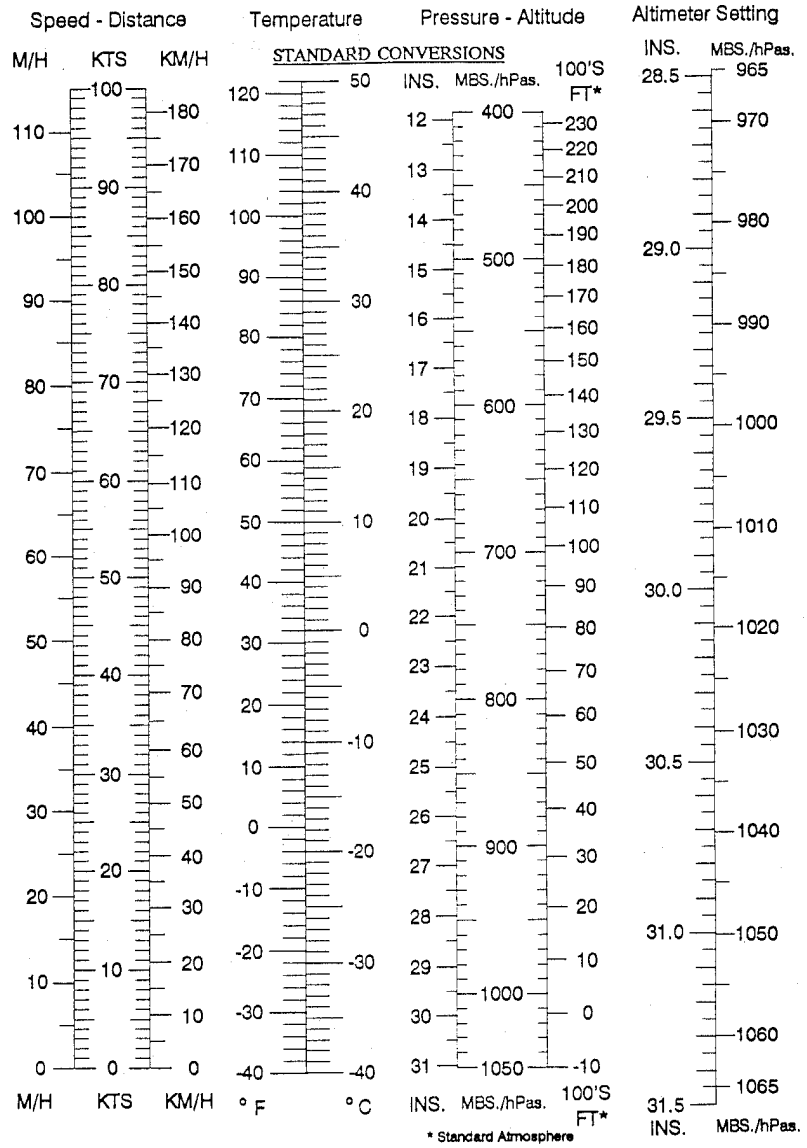
Eastern + 5 hr = UTC
Central + 6 hr = UTC
Mountain + 7 hr = UTC
Pacific + 8 hr = UTC
Alaskan + 9 hr = UTC
Hawaii & Aleutian Islands + 10 hr = UTC

Subtract one hour for Daylight Time

WINDSPEED

MPH	KNOTS
1-2	1-2
3-8	3-7
9-14	8-12
15-20	13-17
21-25	18-22
26-31	23-27
32-37	28-32
38-43	33-37
44-49	38-42
50-54	43-47
55-60	48-52
61-66	53-57
67-71	58-62
72-77	63-57
78-83	68-72
84-89	73-77
119-123	103-107

Knots x 1.15 = Miles Per Hour
Miles Per Hour x 0.869 = Knots



d. Charts depicting the location of the flight watch control stations (parent facility) and the outlets they use are contained in the A/FD. If you do not know in which flight watch area you are flying, initiate contact by using the words "Flight Watch," your aircraft identification, and the name of the nearest VOR. The facility will respond using the name of the flight watch facility.

EXAMPLE–
Flight Watch, Cessna One Two Three Four Kilo, Mansfield V–O–R, over.

e. Radio outlets that provide En Route Flight Advisory Service are listed regionally in the A/FDs.

f. EFAS is not intended to be used for filing or closing flight plans, position reporting, getting complete preflight briefings, or obtaining random weather reports and forecasts. En route flight advisories are tailored to the phase of flight that begins after climb-out and ends with descent to land. Immediate destination weather and terminal aerodrome forecasts will be provided on request. Pilots requesting information not within the scope of flight watch will be advised of the appropriate AFSS/FSS frequency to obtain the information. Pilot participation is essential to the success of EFAS by providing a continuous exchange of information on weather, winds, turbulence, flight visibility, icing, etc., between pilots and flight watch specialists. Pilots are encouraged to report good weather as well as bad, and to confirm expected conditions as well as unexpected to EFAS facilities.

7–1–6. Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories

a. Background

1. Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories are forecasts to advise en route aircraft of development of potentially hazardous weather. All inflight aviation weather advisories in the conterminous U.S. are issued by the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) in Kansas City, Missouri. The Weather Forecast Office (WFO) in Honolulu issues advisories for the Hawaiian Islands. In Alaska, the Alaska Aviation Weather Unit (AAWU) issues inflight aviation weather advisories. All heights are referenced MSL, except in the case of ceilings (CIG) which indicate AGL.

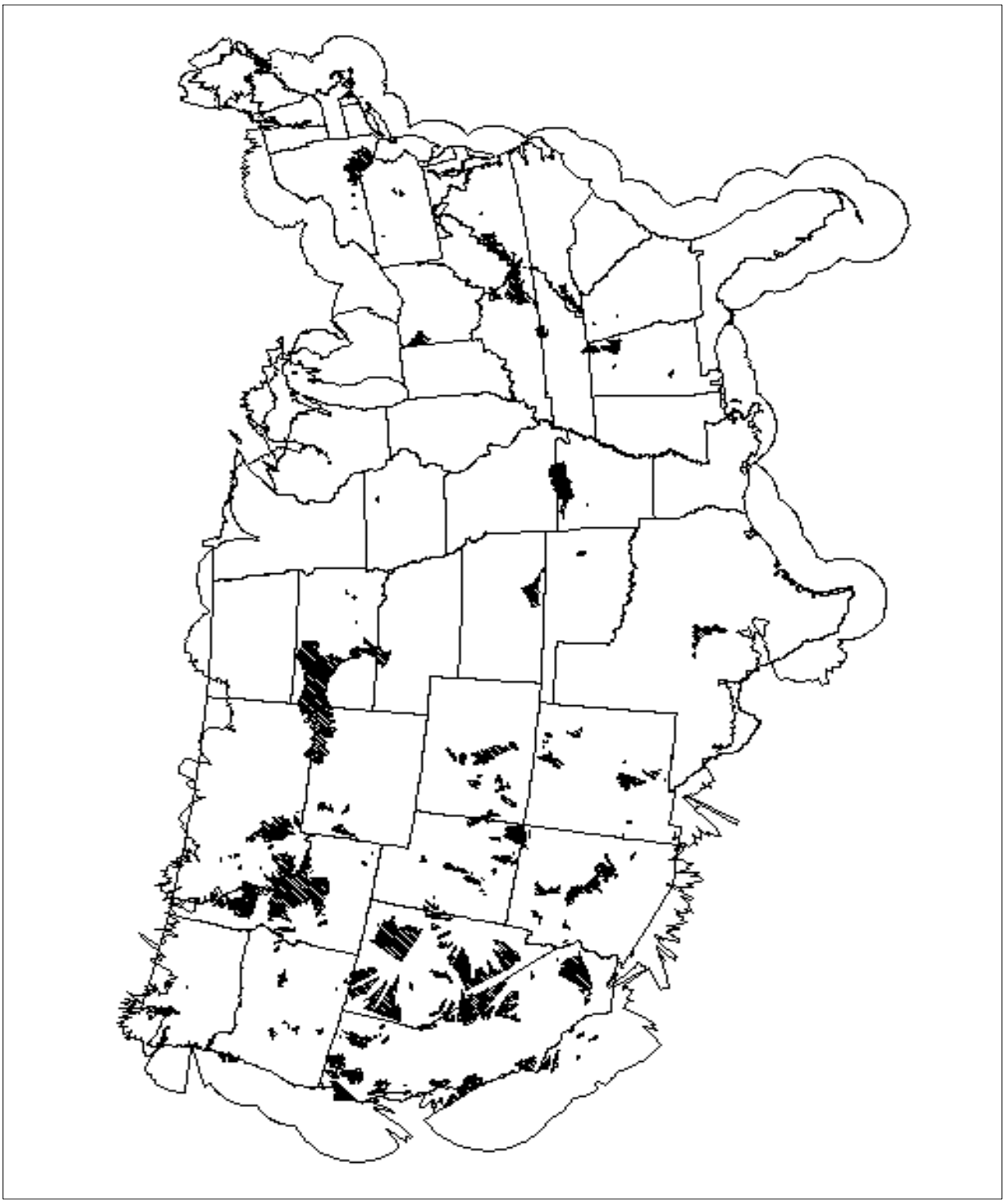
2. There are three types of inflight aviation weather advisories: the SIGMET, the Convective SIGMET, and the AIRMET (text or graphical product). All of these advisories use the same location identifiers (either VORs, airports, or well–known geographic areas) to describe the hazardous weather areas. See FIG 7–1–3 and FIG 7–1–4. Graphics with improved clarity can be found in the latest version of Advisory Circular AC 00–45 series, Aviation Weather Services, which is available on the following Web site: **http://www.faa.gov**.

3. Two other weather products supplement these Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories:

(a) The Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs), (with associated Alert Messages) (AWW), and

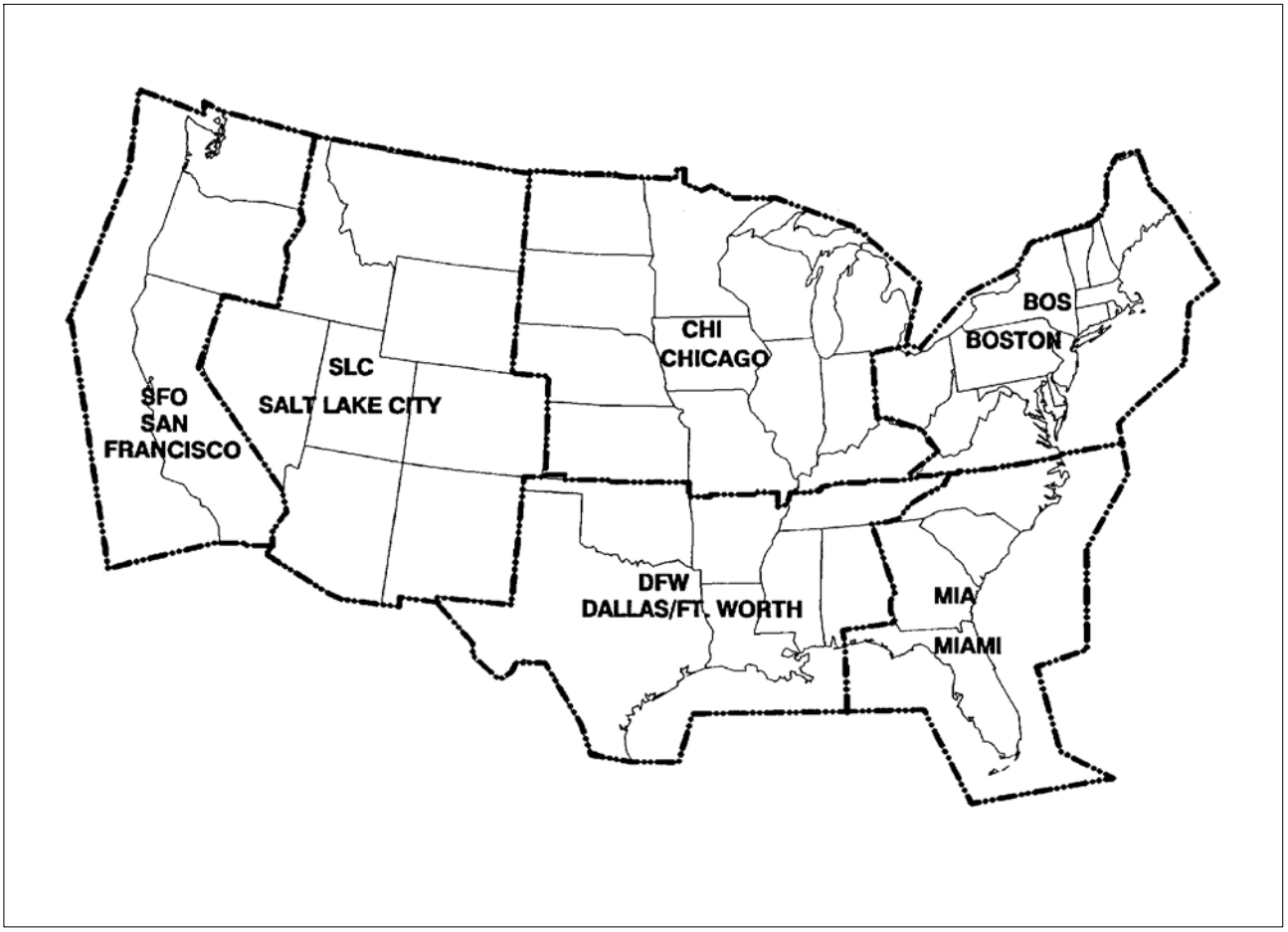
(b) The Center Weather Advisories (CWAs).

FIG 7−1−2
EFAS Radio Coverage Areas



NOTE−
EFAS radio coverage at 5000 feet AGL. The shaded areas depict limited coverage areas in which altitudes above 5000 feet AGL would be required to contact EFAS.

FIG 7–1–5
Aviation Area Forecasts
FA Locations – Contiguous United States



b. SIGMET (WS)/AIRMET (WA or G–AIRMET)

SIGMETs/AIRMET text (WA) products are issued corresponding to the Area Forecast (FA) areas described in FIG 7–1–5, FIG 7–1–6 and FIG 7–1–7. The maximum forecast period is 4 hours for SIGMETs and 6 hours for AIRMETs. The G–AIRMET is issued over the CONUS every 6 hours, valid at 3–hour increments through 12 hours with optional forecasts possible during the first 6 hours. The first 6 hours of the G–AIRMET correspond to the 6–hour period of the AIRMET. SIGMETs and AIRMETs are considered "wide-spread" because they must be either affecting or be forecasted to affect an area of at least 3,000 square miles at any one time. However, if the total area to be affected during the forecast period is very large, it could be that in actuality only a small portion of this total area would be affected at any one time.

FIG 7–1–6
Alaska Area Forecast Sectors

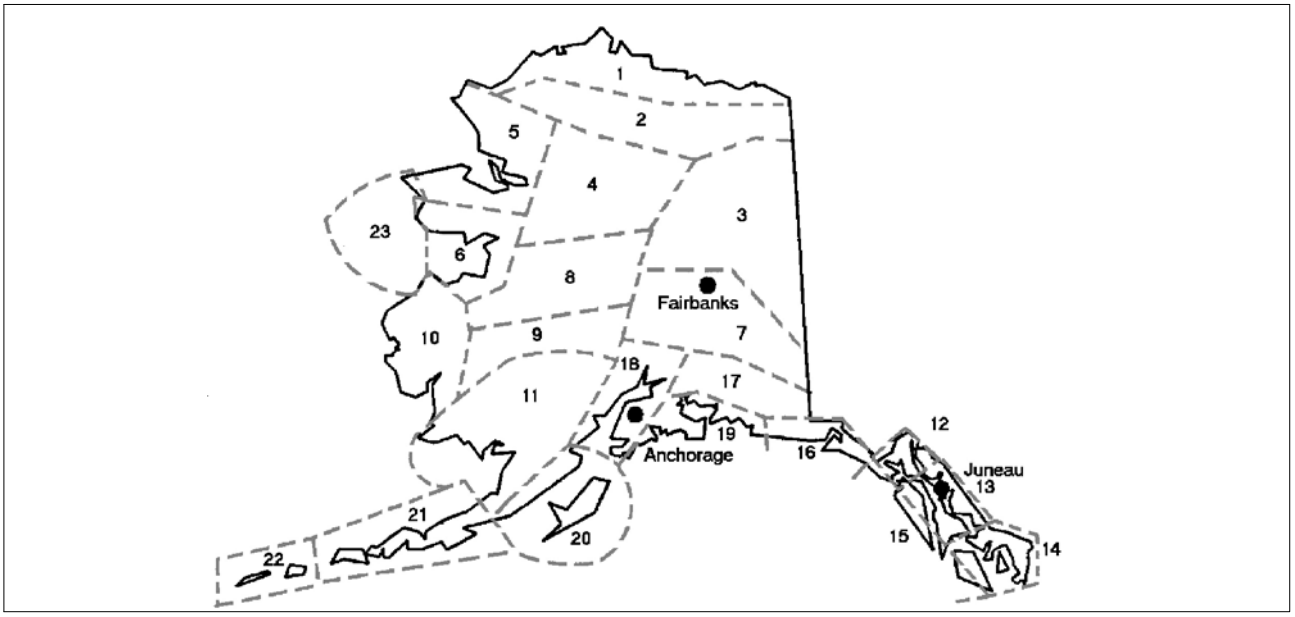
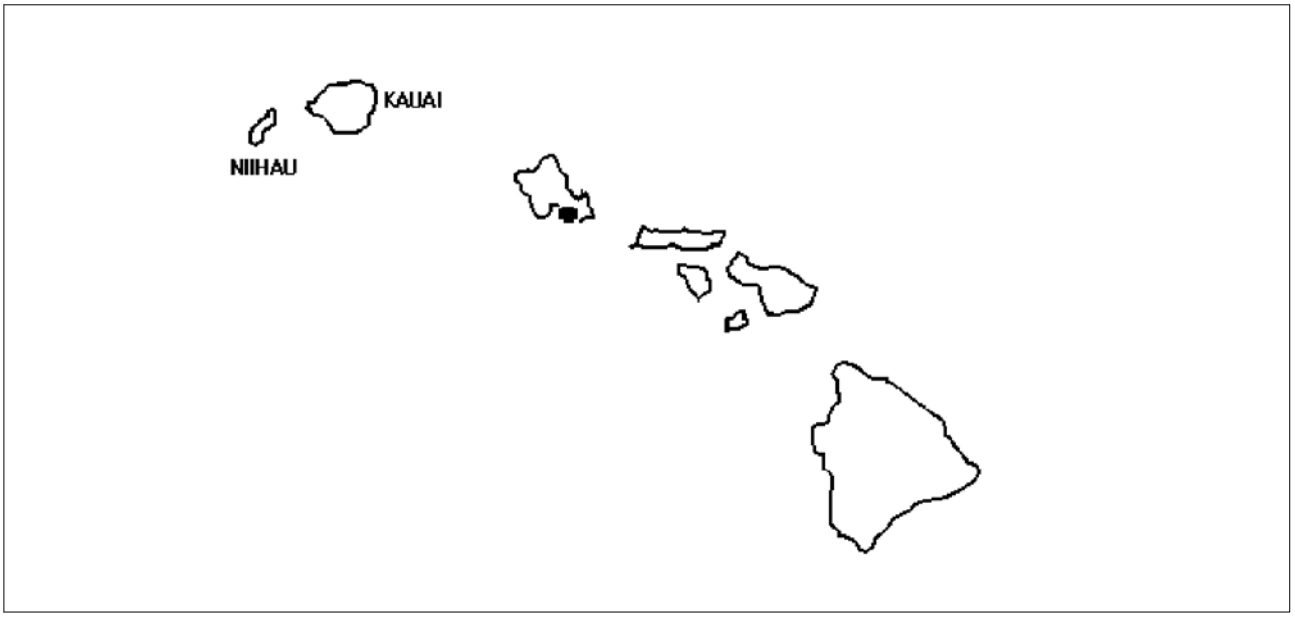


FIG 7–1–7
Hawaii Area Forecast Locations



c. SIGMET (WS)

1. A SIGMET advises of nonconvective weather that is potentially hazardous to all aircraft. SIGMETs are unscheduled products that are valid for 4 hours. However, conditions that are associated with hurricanes are valid for 6 hours. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary. In the conterminous U.S., SIGMETs are issued when the following phenomena occur or are expected to occur:

(a) Severe icing not associated with thunderstorms.

(b) Severe or extreme turbulence or clear air turbulence (CAT) not associated with thunderstorms.

(c) Dust storms or sandstorms lowering surface or inflight visibilities to below 3 miles.

(d) Volcanic ash.

2. In Alaska and Hawaii, SIGMETs are also issued for:

(a) Tornadoes.

(b) Lines of thunderstorms.

(c) Embedded thunderstorms.

(d) Hail greater than or equal to $^3/_4$ inch in diameter.

3. SIGMETs are identified by an alphabetic designator from November through Yankee excluding Sierra and Tango. (Sierra, Tango, and Zulu are reserved for AIRMET text [WA] products; G–AIRMETS do not use the Sierra, Tango, or Zulu designators.) The first issuance of a SIGMET will be labeled as UWS (Urgent Weather SIGMET). Subsequent issuances are at the forecaster's discretion. Issuance for the same phenomenon will be sequentially numbered, using the original designator until the phenomenon ends. For example, the first issuance in the Chicago (CHI) FA area for phenomenon moving from the Salt Lake City (SLC) FA area will be SIGMET Papa 3, if the previous two issuances, Papa 1 and Papa 2, had been in the SLC FA area. Note that no two different phenomena across the country can have the same alphabetic designator at the same time.

EXAMPLE–
Example of a SIGMET:
BOSR WS 050600
SIGMET ROMEO 2 VALID UNTIL 051000
ME NH VT
FROM CAR TO YSJ TO CON TO MPV TO CAR
MOD TO OCNL SEV TURB BLW 080 EXP DUE TO STG
NWLY FLOW. CONDS CONTG BYD
1000Z.

d. Convective SIGMET (WST)

1. Convective SIGMETs are issued in the conterminous U.S. for any of the following:

(a) Severe thunderstorm due to:

(1) Surface winds greater than or equal to 50 knots.

(2) Hail at the surface greater than or equal to $^3/_4$ inches in diameter.

(3) Tornadoes.

(b) Embedded thunderstorms.

(c) A line of thunderstorms.

(d) Thunderstorms producing precipitation greater than or equal to heavy precipitation affecting 40 percent or more of an area at least 3,000 square miles.

2. Any convective SIGMET implies severe or greater turbulence, severe icing, and low–level wind shear. A convective SIGMET may be issued for any convective situation that the forecaster feels is hazardous to all categories of aircraft.

3. Convective SIGMET bulletins are issued for the western (W), central (C), and eastern (E) United States. (Convective SIGMETs are not issued for Alaska or Hawaii.) The areas are separated at 87 and 107 degrees west longitude with sufficient overlap to cover most cases when the phenomenon crosses the boundaries. Bulletins are issued hourly at H+55. Special bulletins are issued at any time as required and updated at H+55. If no criteria meeting convective SIGMET requirements are observed or forecasted, the message "CONVECTIVE SIGMET... NONE" will be issued for each area at H+55. Individual convective SIGMETs for each area (W, C, E) are numbered sequentially from number one each day, beginning at 00Z. A convective SIGMET for a continuing phenomenon will be reissued every hour at H+55 with a new number. The text of the bulletin consists of either an observation and a forecast or just a forecast. The forecast is valid for up to 2 hours.

EXAMPLE–
Example of a Convective SIGMET:
MKCC WST 251655
CONVECTIVE SIGMET 54C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
WI IL
FROM 30E MSN–40ESE DBQ
DMSHG LINE TS 15 NM WIDE MOV FROM 30025KT. TOPS TO FL450. WIND GUSTS TO 50 KT POSS.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET 55C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
WI IA
FROM 30NNW MSN–30SSE MCW
DVLPG LINE TS 10 NM WIDE MOV FROM 30015KT. TOPS TO FL300.
CONVECTIVE SIGMET 56C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
MT ND SD MN IA MI
LINE TS 15 NM WIDE MOV FROM 27020KT. TOPS TO FL380.
OUTLOOK VALID 151855–252255
FROM 60NW ISN–INL–TVC–SBN–BRL–FSD–BIL–60NW ISN

IR STLT IMGRY SHOWS CNVTV CLD TOP TEMPS OVER SRN WI HAVE BEEN WARMING STEADILY INDCG A WKNG TREND. THIS ALSO REFLECTED BY LTST RADAR AND LTNG DATA. WKNG TREND OF PRESENT LN MAY CONT...HWVR NEW DVLPMT IS PSBL ALG OUTFLOW BDRY AND/OR OVR NE IA/SW WI BHD CURRENT ACT.
A SCND TS IS CONTG TO MOV EWD THRU ERN MT WITH NEW DVLPMT OCRG OVR CNTRL ND. MT ACT IS MOVG TWD MORE FVRBL AMS OVR THE WRN DAKS WHERE DWPTS ARE IN THE UPR 60S WITH LIFTED INDEX VALUES TO MS 6. TS EXPD TO INCR IN COVERAGE AND INTSTY DURG AFTN HRS.
WST ISSUANCES EXPD TO BE RQRD THRUT AFTN HRS WITH INCRG PTNTL FOR STGR CELLS TO CONTAIN LRG HAIL AND PSBLY DMGG SFC WNDS.

e. International SIGMET

1. Some NWS offices have been designated by the ICAO as Meteorological Watch Offices (MWOs). These offices are responsible for issuing International SIGMETs for designated areas that include Alaska, Hawaii, portions of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, and the Gulf of Mexico.

2. The offices which issue international SIGMETs are:

(a) The AWC in Kansas City, Missouri.

(b) The AAWU in Anchorage, Alaska.

(c) The WFO in Honolulu, Hawaii.

3. These SIGMETs are considered "widespread" because they must be either affecting or be forecasted to affect an area of at least 3,000 square miles at any one time. The International SIGMET is issued for 6 hours for volcanic ash events, 6 hours for hurricanes and tropical storms, and 4 hours for all other events. Like the domestic SIGMETs, international SIGMETs are also identified by an alphabetic designator from Alpha through Mike and are numbered sequentially until that weather phenomenon ends. The criteria for an international SIGMET are:

(a) Thunderstorms occurring in lines, embedded in clouds, or in large areas producing tornadoes or large hail.

(b) Tropical cyclones.

(c) Severe icing.

(d) Severe or extreme turbulence.

(e) Dust storms and sandstorms lowering visibilities to less than 3 miles.

(f) Volcanic ash.

EXAMPLE–
Example of an International SIGMET:
WSNT06 KKCI 022014
SIGA0F
KZMA KZNY TJZS SIGMET FOXTROT 3 VALID 022015/030015 KKCI– MIAMI OCEANIC FIR NEW YORK OCEANIC FIR SAN JUAN FIR FRQ TS WI AREA BOUNDED BY 2711N6807W 2156N6654W 2220N7040W 2602N7208W 2711N6807W. TOPS TO FL470. MOV NE 15KT. WKN. BASED ON SAT AND LTG OBS.
MOSHER

f. AIRMET

1. AIRMETs (WAs) are advisories of significant weather phenomena but describe conditions at intensities lower than those which require the issuance of SIGMETs. AIRMETs are intended for dissemination to all pilots in the preflight and en route phase of flight to enhance safety. AIRMET information is available in two formats: text bulletins (WA) and graphics (G–AIRMET). Both formats meet the criteria of pararagraph 7–1–3i1 and are issued on a scheduled basis every 6 hours beginning at 0245 UTC. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary. AIRMETs contain details about

IFR, extensive mountain obscuration, turbulence, strong surface winds, icing, and freezing levels.

2. There are three AIRMETs: Sierra, Tango, and Zulu. After the first issuance each day, scheduled or unscheduled bulletins are numbered sequentially for easier identification.

(a) AIRMET Sierra describes IFR conditions and/or extensive mountain obscurations.

(b) AIRMET Tango describes moderate turbulence, sustained surface winds of 30 knots or greater, and/or nonconvective low−level wind shear.

(c) AIRMET Zulu describes moderate icing and provides freezing level heights.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Sierra issued for the Chicago FA area:
CHIS WA 131445
AIRMET SIERRA UPDT 2 FOR IFR AND MTN OBSCN VALID UNTIL 132100.
AIRMET IFR...KY
FROM 20SSW HNN TO HMV TO 50ENE DYR TO20SSW HNN
CIG BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM PCPN/BR/FG. CONDS ENDG BY 18Z.
.
AIRMET IFR....MN LS
FROM INL TO 70W YQT TO 40ENE DLH TO 30WNW DLH TO 50SE GFK TO 20 ENE GFK TO INL
CIG BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM BR. CONDS ENDG 15−18Z.
.
AIRMET IFR....KS
FROM 30N SLN TO 60E ICT TO 40S ICT TO 50W LBL TO 30SSW GLD TO 30N SLN
CIG BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM PCPN/BR/FG. CONDS ENDG 15−18Z.
.
AIRMET MTN OBSCN...KY TN
FROM HNN TO HMV TO GQO TO LOZ TO HNN
MTN OBSC BY CLDS/PCPN/BR. CONDS CONTG BYD 21Z THRU 03Z.
.....

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Tango issued for the Salt Lake City FA area:
SLCT WA 131445
AIRMET TANGO UPDT 2 FOR TURB VALID UNTIL 132100.
AIRMET TURB...MT
FROM 40NW HVR TO 50SE BIL TO 60E DLN TO 60SW YQL TO 40NW HVR
MOD TURB BLW 150. CONDS DVLPG 18−21Z. CONDS CONTG BYD 21Z THRU 03Z.
.
AIRMET TURB....ID MT WY NV UT CO
FROM 100SE MLS TO 50SSW BFF TO 20SW BTY TO 40SW BAM TO 100SE MLS
MOD TURB BTN FL310 AND FL410. CONDS CONTG BYD 21Z ENDG 21−00Z.
.
AIRMET TURB...NV AZ NM CA AND CSTL WTRS
FROM 100WSW ENI TO 40W BTY TO 40S LAS TO 30ESE TBE TO INK TO ELP TO 50S TUS TO BZA TO 20S MZB TO 150SW PYE TO 100WSW ENI
MOD TURB BTWN FL210 AND FL380. CONDS CONTG BYD 21Z THRU 03Z.
....

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Zulu issued for the San Francisco FA area:
SFOZ WA 131445
AIRMET ZULU UPDT 2 FOR ICE AND FRZLVL VALID UNTIL 132100.
NO SGFNT ICE EXP OUTSIDE OF CNVTV ACT.
.
FRZLVL....RANGING FROM SFC−105 ACRS AREA
MULT FRZLVL BLW 080 BOUNDED BY 40SE YDC−60NNW GEG−60SW MLP−30WSW BKE−20SW BAM−70W BAM−40SW YKM−40E HUH−40SE YDC
SFC ALG 20NNW HUH−30SSE HUH−60S SEA 50NW LKV−60WNWOAL−30SW OAL
040 ALG 40W HUH−30W HUH−30NNW SEA−40N PDX−20NNW DSD
080 ALG 160NW FOT−80SW ONP−50SSW EUG 40SSE OED−50SSE CZQ−60E EHF−40WSW LAS
....

3. Graphical AIRMETs (G−AIRMETs), found on the Aviation Weather Center webpage at http://aviationweather.gov, are graphical forecasts of en−route weather hazards valid at discrete times no more than 3 hours apart for a period of up to 12 hours into the future (for example, 00, 03, 06, 09, and 12 hours). Additional forecasts may be inserted during the first 6 hours (for example, 01, 02, 04, and 05). 00 hour represents the initial conditions, and the subsequent graphics depict the area affected by the particular hazard at that valid time. Forecasts valid at 00 through 06 hours correspond to the text AIRMET bulletin. Forecasts valid at 06 through 12 hours correspond to the text bulletin outlook. G−AIRMET depicts the following en route aviation weather hazards:

(a) Instrument flight rule conditions (ceiling < 1000’ and/or surface visibility <3 miles)

(b) Mountain obscuration

(c) Icing

(d) Freezing level

(e) Turbulence

(f) Low level wind shear (LLWS)

(g) Strong surface winds

G–AIRMETs are snap shots at discrete time intervals as defined above. The text AIRMET is the result of the production of the G–AIRMET but provided in a time smear for a 6hr valid period. G–AIRMETs provide a higher forecast resolution than text AIRMET products. Since G–AIRMETs and text AIRMETs are created from the same forecast “production” process, there exists perfect consistency between the two. Using the two together will provide clarity of the area impacted by the weather hazard and improve situational awareness and decision making.

Interpolation of time periods between G–AIRMET valid times: Users must keep in mind when using the G–AIRMET that if a 00 hour forecast shows no significant weather and a 03 hour forecast shows hazardous weather, they must assume a change is occurring during the period between the two forecasts. It should be taken into consideration that the hazardous weather starts immediately after the 00 hour forecast unless there is a defined initiation or ending time for the hazardous weather. The same would apply after the 03 hour forecast. The user should assume the hazardous weathercondition is occurring between the snap shots unless informed otherwise. For example, if a 00 hour forecast shows no hazard, a 03 hour forecast shows the presence of hazardous weather, and a 06 hour forecast shows no hazard, the user should assume the hazard exists from the 0001 hour to the 0559 hour time period.

EXAMPLE–
See FIG 7–1–8 for an example of the G–AIRMET graphical product.

g. Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs) and Alert Messages (AWWs)

1. WWs define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The bulletins are issued by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) in Norman, OK. WWs are unscheduled and are issued as required.

2. A severe thunderstorm watch describes areas of expected severe thunderstorms. (Severe thunderstorm criteria are $^{3}/_{4}$–inch hail or larger and/or wind gusts of 50 knots [58 mph] or greater.)

3. A tornado watch describes areas where the threat of tornadoes exists.

4. In order to alert the WFOs, CWSUs, FSSs, and other users, a preliminary notification of a watch called the Alert Severe Weather Watch bulletin (AWW) is sent before the WW. (WFOs know this product as a SAW).

EXAMPLE–
Example of an AWW:
MKC AWW 011734
WW 75 TORNADO TX OK AR 011800Z–020000Z
AXIS..80 STATUTE MILES EAST AND WEST OF A LINE..60ESE DAL/DALLAS TX/ – 30 NW ARG/ WALNUT RIDGE AR/

..AVIATION COORDS.. 70NM E/W /58W GGG – 25NW ARG/
HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT..1 $^{3}/_{4}$ INCHES. WIND GUSTS..70 KNOTS. MAX TOPS TO 450. MEAN WIND VECTOR 24045.

5. Soon after the AWW goes out, the actual watch bulletin itself is issued. A WW is in the following format:

(a) Type of severe weather watch, watch area, valid time period, type of severe weather possible, watch axis, meaning of a watch, and a statement that persons should be on the lookout for severe weather.

(b) Other watch information; i.e., references to previous watches.

(c) Phenomena, intensities, hail size, wind speed (knots), maximum cumulonimbus (CB) tops, and estimated cell movement (mean wind vector).

(d) Cause of severe weather.

(e) Information on updating Convective Outlook (AC) products.

EXAMPLE–
Example of a WW:
BULLETIN – IMMEDIATE BROADCAST REQUESTED
TORNADO WATCH NUMBER 381
STORM PREDICTION CENTER NORMAN OK
556 PM CDT MON JUN 2 1997
THE STORM PREDICTON CENTER HAS ISSUED A

TORNADO WATCH FOR PORTIONS OF NORTHEAST NEW MEXICO TEXAS PANHANDLE
EFFECTIVE THIS MONDAY NIGHT AND TUESDAY MORNING FROM 630 PM UNTIL MIDNIGHT CDT.
TORNADOES...HAIL TO 2 3/4 INCHES IN DIAMETER…THUNDERSTORM WIND GUSTS TO 80 MPH...AND DANGEROUS LIGHTNING ARE POSSIBLE IN THESE AREAS.
THE TORNADO WATCH AREA IS ALONG AND 60 STATUTE MILES NORTH AND SOUTH OF A LINE FROM 50 MILES SOUTHWEST OF RATON NEW MEXICO TO 50 MILES EAST OF AMARILLO TEXAS.
REMEMBER…A TORNADO WATCH MEANS CONDITIONS ARE FAVORABLE FOR TORNADOES AND SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS IN AND CLOSE TO THE WATCH AREA. PERSONS IN THESE AREAS SHOULD BE ON THE LOOKOUT FOR THREATENING WEATHER CONDITIONS AND LISTEN FOR LATER STATEMENTS AND POSSIBLE WARNINGS.
OTHER WATCH INFORMATION…CONTINUE… WW 378...WW 379...WW 380

DISCUSSION...THUNDERSTORMS ARE INCREASING OVER NE NM IN MOIST SOUTHEASTERLY UPSLOPE FLOW. OUTFLOW BOUNDARY EXTENDS EASTWARD INTO THE TEXAS PANHANDLE AND EXPECT STORMS TO MOVE ESE ALONG AND NORTH OF THE BOUNDARY ON THE N EDGE OF THE CAP. VEERING WINDS WITH HEIGHT ALONG WITH INCREASGING MID LVL FLOW INDICATE A THREAT FOR SUPERCELLS.

AVIATION...TORNADOES AND A FEW SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS WITH HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT TO 2 3/4 INCHES. EXTREME TURBULENCE AND SURFACE WIND GUSTS TO 70 KNOTS. A FEW CUMULONIMBI WITH MAXIMUM TOPS TO 550. MEAN STORM MOTION VECTOR 28025.

6. Status reports are issued as needed to show progress of storms and to delineate areas no longer under the threat of severe storm activity. Cancellation bulletins are issued when it becomes evident that no severe weather will develop or that storms have subsided and are no longer severe.

7. When tornadoes or severe thunderstorms have developed, the local WFO office will issue the warnings covering those areas.

h. Center Weather Advisories (CWAs)

1. CWAs are unscheduled inflight, flow control, air traffic, and air crew advisory. By nature of its short lead time, the CWA is not a flight planning product. It is generally a nowcast for conditions beginning within the next two hours. CWAs will be issued:

(a) As a supplement to an existing SIGMET, Convective SIGMET or AIRMET.

(b) When an Inflight Advisory has not been issued but observed or expected weather conditions meet SIGMET/AIRMET criteria based on current pilot reports and reinforced by other sources of information about existing meteorological conditions.

(c) When observed or developing weather conditions do not meet SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or AIRMET criteria; e.g., in terms of intensity or area coverage, but current pilot reports or other weather information sources indicate that existing or anticipated meteorological phenomena will adversely affect the safe flow of air traffic within the ARTCC area of responsibility.

2. The following example is a CWA issued from the Kansas City, Missouri, ARTCC. The “3” after ZKC in the first line denotes this CWA has been issued for the third weather phenomena to occur for the day. The “301” in the second line denotes the phenomena number again (3) and the issuance number (01) for this phenomena. The CWA was issued at 2140Z and is valid until 2340Z.

EXAMPLE–
ZKC3 CWA 032140
ZKC CWA 301 VALID UNTIL 032340
ISOLD SVR TSTM over KCOU MOVG SWWD 10 KTS ETC.

7–1–7. Categorical Outlooks

a. Categorical outlook terms, describing general ceiling and visibility conditions for advanced planning purposes are used only in area forecasts and are defined as follows:

1. LIFR (Low IFR). Ceiling less than 500 feet and/or visibility less than 1 mile.

2. IFR. Ceiling 500 to less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.

3. MVFR (Marginal VFR). Ceiling 1,000 to 3,000 feet and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.

4. VFR. Ceiling greater than 3,000 feet and visibility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear.

b. The cause of LIFR, IFR, or MVFR is indicated by either ceiling or visibility restrictions or both. The

contraction “CIG” and/or weather and obstruction to vision symbols are used. If winds or gusts of 25 knots or greater are forecast for the outlook period, the word “WIND” is also included for all categories including VFR.

EXAMPLE–

1. *LIFR CIG–low IFR due to low ceiling.*

2. *IFR FG–IFR due to visibility restricted by fog.*

3. *MVFR CIG HZ FU–marginal VFR due to both ceiling and visibility restricted by haze and smoke.*

4. *IFR CIG RA WIND–IFR due to both low ceiling and visibility restricted by rain; wind expected to be 25 knots or greater.*

7–1–8. Telephone Information Briefing Service (TIBS)

a. TIBS, provided by automated flight service stations (AFSSs) is a continuous recording of meteorological and aeronautical information, available by telephone. Each AFSS provides at least four route and/or area briefings. In addition, airspace procedures and special announcements (if applicable) concerning aviation interests may also be available. Depending on user demand, other items may be provided; i.e., METAR observations, terminal aerodrome forecasts, wind/temperatures aloft forecasts, etc.

b. TIBS is not intended to substitute for specialist-provided preflight briefings. It is, however, recommended for use as a preliminary briefing, and often will be valuable in helping you to make a “go or no go” decision.

c. TIBS is provided by Automated Flight Service Stations (AFSSs) and provides continuous telephone recordings of meteorological and/or aeronautical information. Specifically, TIBS provides area and/or route briefings, airspace procedures, and special announcements (if applicable) concerning aviation interests.

d. Depending on user demand, other items may be provided; i.e., surface observations, terminal forecasts, winds/temperatures aloft forecasts, etc. A TOUCH-TONE™ telephone is necessary to fully utilize the TIBS program.

e. Pilots are encouraged to avail themselves of this service. TIBS locations are found at AFSS sites and can be accessed by use of 1–800–WX BRIEF toll free number.

7–1–9. Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWEB) (Alaska Only)

Equipment is provided in Alaska by which meteorological and aeronautical data are recorded on tapes and broadcast continuously over selected L/MF and VOR facilities. Broadcasts are made from a series of individual tape recordings, and changes, as they occur, are transcribed onto the tapes. The information provided varies depending on the type equipment available. Generally, the broadcast contains a summary of adverse conditions, surface weather observations, pilot weather reports, and a density altitude statement (if applicable). At the discretion of the broadcast facility, recordings may also include a synopsis, winds aloft forecast, en route and terminal forecast data, and radar reports. At selected locations, telephone access to the TWEB has been provided (TEL–TWEB). Telephone numbers for this service are found in the Supplement Alaska A/FD. These broadcasts are made available primarily for preflight and inflight planning, and as such, should not be considered as a substitute for specialist–provided preflight briefings.

7–1–10. Inflight Weather Broadcasts

a. Weather Advisory Broadcasts. ARTCCs broadcast a Severe Weather Forecast Alert (AWW), Convective SIGMET, SIGMET, or CWA alert once on all frequencies, except emergency, when any part of the area described is within 150 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction. These broadcasts contain SIGMET or CWA (identification) and a brief description of the weather activity and general area affected.

EXAMPLE–

1. *Attention all aircraft, SIGMET Delta Three, from Myton to Tuba City to Milford, severe turbulence and severe clear icing below one zero thousand feet. Expected to continue beyond zero three zero zero zulu.*

2. *Attention all aircraft, convective SIGMET Two Seven Eastern. From the vicinity of Elmira to Phillipsburg. Scattered embedded thunderstorms moving east at one zero knots. A few intense level five cells, maximum tops four five zero.*

3. *Attention all aircraft, Kansas City Center weather advisory one zero three. Numerous reports of moderate to severe icing from eight to niner thousand feet in a three zero*

mile radius of St. Louis. Light or negative icing reported from four thousand to one two thousand feet remainder of Kansas City Center area.

NOTE–
Terminal control facilities have the option to limit the AWW, convective SIGMET, SIGMET, or CWA broadcast as follows: local control and approach control positions may opt to broadcast SIGMET or CWA alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

b. Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory Service (HIWAS). This is a continuous broadcast of inflight weather advisories including summarized AWW, SIGMETs, Convective SIGMETs, CWAs, AIRMETs (text [WA] or graphical [G–AIRMET] product), and urgent PIREPs. HIWAS has been adopted as a national program and will be implemented throughout the conterminous U.S. as resources permit. In those areas where HIWAS is commissioned, ARTCC, Terminal ATC, and AFSS/FSS facilities have discontinued the broadcast of inflight advisories as described in the preceding paragraph. HIWAS is an additional source of hazardous weather information which makes these data available on a continuous basis. It is not, however, a replacement for preflight or inflight briefings or real-time weather updates from Flight Watch (EFAS). As HIWAS is implemented in individual center areas, the commissioning will be advertised in the Notices to Airmen Publication.

1. Where HIWAS has been implemented, a HIWAS alert will be broadcast on all except emergency frequencies once upon receipt by ARTCC and terminal facilities, which will include an alert announcement, frequency instruction, number, and type of advisory updated; for example, AWW, SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or CWA.

EXAMPLE–
Attention all aircraft. Hazardous weather information (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET (text [WA] or graphical [G–AIRMET] product), Urgent Pilot Weather Report [UUA], or Center Weather Advisory [CWA], Number or Numbers) for (geographical area) available on HIWAS, Flight Watch, or Flight Service frequencies.

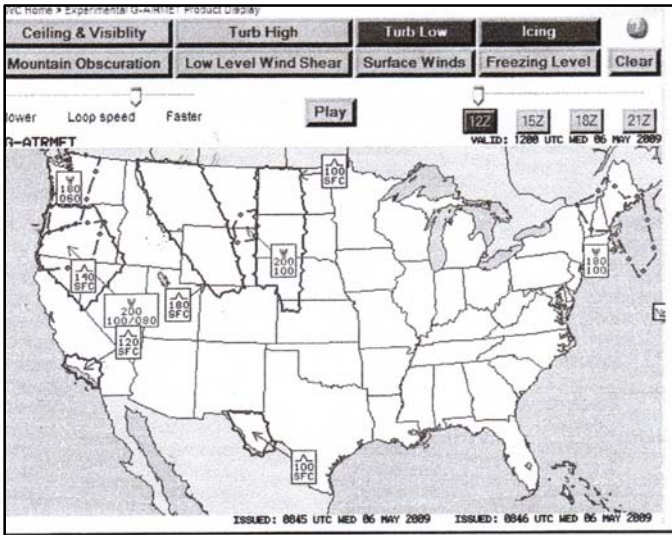
2. In HIWAS ARTCC areas, AFSS/FSSs will broadcast a HIWAS update announcement once on all except emergency frequencies upon completion of recording an update to the HIWAS broadcast. Included in the broadcast will be the type of advisory updated; for example, AWW, SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, CWA, etc.

EXAMPLE–
Attention all aircraft. Hazardous weather information for (geographical area) available from Flight Watch or Flight Service.

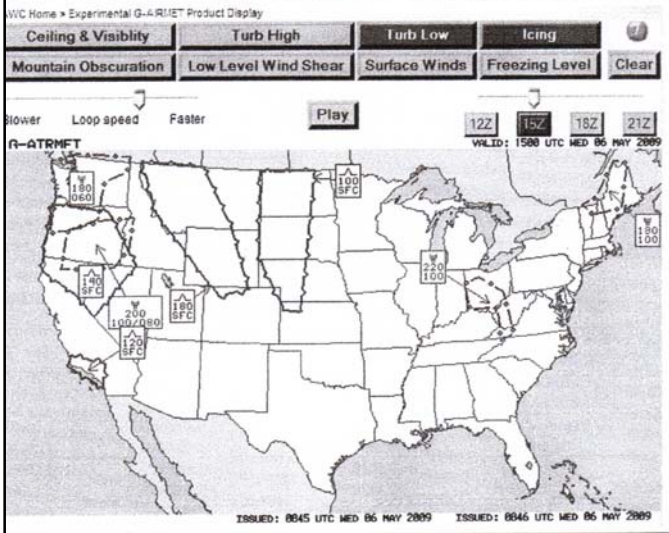
3. HIWAS availability is shown on IFR Enroute Low Altitude Charts and VFR Sectional Charts. The symbol depiction is identified in the chart legend.

FIG 7−1−8

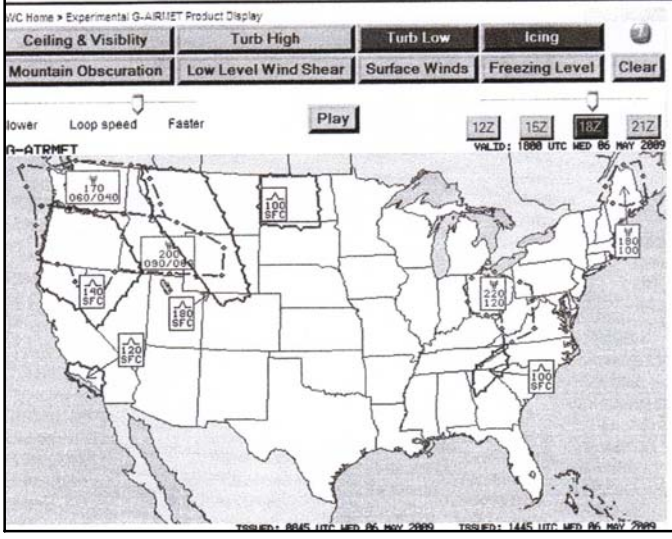
G−AIRMET Graphical Product



Example G-AIRMET
Valid at 1200Z on May 6, 2009
Displaying:
Low Level Turbulence
Icing



Example G-AIRMET
Valid at 1500Z on May 6, 2009
Displaying:
Low Level Turbulence
Icing



Example G-AIRMET
Valid at 1800Z on May 6, 2009
Displaying:
Low Level Turbulence
Icing

7–1–11. Flight Information Services (FIS)

a. FIS. Aviation weather and other operational information may be displayed in the cockpit through the use of FIS. FIS systems are of two basic types: Broadcast only systems (called FIS–B) and two–way request/reply systems. Broadcast system components include a ground– or space–based transmitter, an aircraft receiver, and a portable or installed cockpit display device. Two–way systems utilize transmitter/receivers at both the ground– or space–based site and the aircraft.

1. Broadcast FIS (i.e., FIS–B) allows the pilot to passively collect weather and other operational data and to display that data at the appropriate time. In addition to textual weather products such as Aviation Routine Weather Reports (METARs)/ Aviation Selected Special Weather Reports (SPECIs) and Terminal Area Forecasts (TAFs), graphical weather products such as radar composite/mosaic images, temporary flight restricted airspace and other NOTAMs may be provided to the cockpit. Two–way FIS services permit the pilot to make specific weather and other operational information requests for cockpit display. A FIS service provider will then prepare a reply in response to that specific request and transmit the product to that specific aircraft.

2. FIS services are available from four types of service providers:

(a) A private sector FIS provider operating under service agreement with the FAA using broadcast data link over VHF aeronautical spectrum and whose products have been reviewed and accepted by the FAA prior to transmission. (Products and services are defined under subparagraph c.)

(b) Through an FAA operated service using a broadcast data link on the ADS–B UAT network. (Products and services are defined under subparagraph d.)

(c) Private sector FIS providers operating under customer contracts using aeronautical spectrum.

(d) Private sector FIS providers operating under customer contract using methods other than aeronautical spectrum, including Internet data–to–the–cockpit service providers.

3. FIS is a method of receiving aviation weather and other operational data in the cockpit that augments traditional pilot voice communication with FAA's Flight Service Stations (FSSs), ATC facilities, or Airline Operations Control Centers (AOCCs). FIS is not intended to replace traditional pilot and controller/flight service specialist/aircraft dispatcher pre–flight briefings or inflight voice communications. FIS; however, can provide textual and graphical background information that can help abbreviate and improve the usefulness of such communications. FIS enhances pilot situational awareness and improves safety.

4. To ensure airman compliance with Federal Aviation Regulations, manufacturer's operating manuals should remind airmen to contact ATC controllers, FSS specialists, operator dispatchers, or airline operations control centers for general and mission critical aviation weather information and/or NAS status conditions (such as NOTAMs, Special Use Airspace status, and other government flight information). If FIS products are systemically modified (for example, are displayed as abbreviated plain text and/or graphical depictions), the modification process and limitations of the resultant product should be clearly described in the vendor's user guidance.

b. Operational Use of FIS. Regardless of the type of FIS system being used, several factors must be considered when using FIS:

1. Before using FIS for inflight operations, pilots and other flight crewmembers should become familiar with the operation of the FIS system to be used, the airborne equipment to be used, including its system architecture, airborne system components, coverage service volume and other limitations of the particular system, modes of operation and indications of various system failures. Users should also be familiar with the specific content and format of the services available from the FIS provider(s). Sources of information that may provide this specific guidance include manufacturer's manuals, training programs and reference guides.

2. FIS should not serve as the sole source of aviation weather and other operational information. ATC, AFSSs and, if applicable, AOCC VHF/HF voice remain as a redundant method of communicating aviation weather, NOTAMs, and other operational information to aircraft in flight. FIS augments these traditional ATC/FSS/AOCC services and, for some products, offers the advantage of being displayed as graphical information. By using FIS for

orientation, the usefulness of information received from conventional means may be enhanced. For example, FIS may alert the pilot to specific areas of concern that will more accurately focus requests made to FSS or AOCC for inflight updates or similar queries made to ATC.

3. The airspace and aeronautical environment is constantly changing. These changes occur quickly and without warning. Critical operational decisions should be based on use of the most current and appropriate data available. When differences exist between FIS and information obtained by voice communication with ATC, FSS, and/or AOCC (if applicable), pilots are cautioned to use the most recent data from the most authoritative source.

4. FIS aviation weather products (e.g., graphical ground–based radar precipitation depictions) are not appropriate for tactical avoidance of severe weather such as negotiating a path through a weather hazard area. FIS supports strategic weather decision making such as route selection to avoid a weather hazard area in its entirety. The misuse of information beyond its applicability may place the pilot and aircraft in jeopardy. In addition, FIS should never be used in lieu of an individual pre–flight weather and flight planning briefing.

5. FIS NOTAM products, including Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) information, are advisory–use information and are intended for situational awareness purposes only. Cockpit displays of this information are not appropriate for tactical navigation – pilots should stay clear of any geographic area displayed as a TFR NOTAM. Pilots should contact FSSs and/or ATC while en route to obtain updated information and to verify the cockpit display of NOTAM information.

6. FIS supports better pilot decision making by increasing situational awareness. Better decision–making is based on using information from a variety of sources. In addition to FIS, pilots should take advantage of other weather/NAS status sources, including, briefings from Flight Service Stations, FAA's en route "Flight Watch" service, data from other air traffic control facilities, airline operation control centers, pilot reports, as well as their own observations.

c. FAA FISDL (VHF) Service. The FAA's FISDL (VHF datalink) system is a VHF Data Link (VDL) Mode 2 implementation that provides pilots and flight crews of properly equipped aircraft with a cockpit display of certain aviation weather and flight operational information. This information may be displayed in both textual and graphical formats. The system is operated under a service agreement with the FAA, using broadcast data link on VHF aeronautical spectrum on two 25 KHz spaced frequencies (136.450 and 136.475 MHz). The FAA FISDL (VHF) service is designed to provide coverage throughout the continental U.S. from 5,000 feet AGL to 17,500 feet MSL, except in areas where this is not feasible due to mountainous terrain. Aircraft operating near transmitter sites may receive useable FISDL signals at altitudes lower than 5,000 feet AGL, including on the surface in some locations, depending on transmitter/aircraft line of sight geometry. Aircraft operating above 17,500 feet MSL may also receive useable FISDL signals under certain circumstances.

1. FAA FISDL (VHF) service provides, free of charge, the following basic text products:

(a) Aviation Routine Weather Reports (METARs).

(b) Aviation Selected Special Weather Reports (SPECIs).

(c) Terminal Area Forecasts (TAFs), and their amendments.

(d) Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs).

(e) Convective SIGMETs.

(f) AIRMET text bulletins (WA).

(g) Pilot Reports (both urgent and routine) (PIREPs); and,

(h) Severe Weather Forecast Alerts and Warnings (AWWs/WW) issued by the NOAA Storm Prediction Center (SPC).

2. The format and coding of these text products are described in Advisory Circular AC–00–45, Aviation Weather Services, and paragraph 7–1–30, Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR).

3. Additional products, called "Value–Added Products," are also available from the vendor on a paid subscription basis. Details concerning the content, format, symbology and cost of these products may be obtained from the vendor.

d. FAA's Flight Information Service–Broadcast (FIS–B).

1. FIS–B is a ground–based broadcast service provided through the FAA's Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Broadcast (ADS–B) Services Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) network. The service provides users with a 978 MHz data link capability when operating within range and line–of–sight of a transmitting ground station. FIS–B enables users of properly equipped aircraft to receive and display a suite of broadcast weather and aeronautical information products. Services are currently available in specific geographic regions of the U.S. with NAS–wide service availability planned for 2013.

2. The following list represents the initial suite of text and graphical products available through FIS–B and provided free–of–charge. Detailed information concerning FIS–B meteorological products can be found in Advisory Circular 00–45, Aviation Weather Services. Information on Special Use Airspace (SUA), Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) and Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) products can be found in Chapters 3, 4 and 5 of this manual.

(a) Text: Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) and Special Aviation Report (SPECI);

(b) Text: Pilot Weather Report (PIREP);

(c) Text: Winds and Temperatures Aloft;

(d) Text: Terminal Area Forecast (TAF) and amendments;

(e) Text: Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) Distant and Flight Data Center;

(f) Text/Graphic: Airmen's Meteorological Conditions (AIRMET);

(g) Text/Graphic: Significant Meteorological Conditions (SIGMET);

(h) Text/Graphic: Convective SIGMET;

(i) Text/Graphic: Special Use Airspace (SUA);

(j) Text/Graphic: Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) NOTAM; and

(k) Graphic: NEXRAD Composite Reflectivity Products (Regional and National).

3. Users of FIS–B should familiarize themselves with the operational characteristics and limitations of the system, including: system architecture; service environment; product lifecycles; modes of operation; and indications of system failure.

4. FIS–B products are updated and transmitted at specific intervals based primarily on product issuance criteria. Update intervals are defined as the rate at which the product data is available from the source for transmission. Transmission intervals are defined as the amount of time within which a new or updated product transmission must be completed and/or the rate or repetition interval at which the product is rebroadcast. Update and transmission intervals for each product are provided in TBL 7–1–1.

5. Where applicable, FIS–B products include a look–ahead range expressed in nautical miles (NM) for three service domains: Airport Surface; Terminal Airspace; and En–route/Gulf–of–Mexico (GOMEX). TBL 7–1–1 provides service domain availability and look–ahead ranging for each FIS–B product.

6. Prior to using this capability, users should familiarize themselves with the operation of FIS–B avionics by referencing the applicable User's Guides. Guidance concerning the interpretation of information displayed should be obtained from the appropriate avionics manufacturer.

7. FIS–B malfunctions not attributed to aircraft system failures or covered by active NOTAM should be reported by radio or telephone to the nearest FSS facility. Malfunctions may also be reported by submitting FAA Form 8740–5, Safety Improvement Report via mail, fax, or email to your local Flight District Standards Office, Safety Program Manager.

TBL 7–1–1

Product	Update Interval	Transmission Interval	Service Domain and Look-ahead Range (NM)
AIRMET	As Available	5 minutes	100 (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
SIGMET & Convective SIGMET	As Available, then at 15 minute intervals for 1 hour	5 minutes	100 (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
METAR/SPECI	1 minute (where available), As Available otherwise	5 minute	100 (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
NEXRAD Composite Reflectivity (National)	~5 minutes precipitation mode 10 minutes for clear air mode	15 minutes	CONUS
NEXRAD Composite Reflectivity (Regional)	~5 minutes precipitation mode 10 minutes for clear air mode	2.5 minutes	250
NOTAM (D) / FDC (including TFR)	As Available	10 minutes	100
PIREP	As Available	10 minutes	N/A (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
SUA	As Available	10 minutes	N/A (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
TAF/AMEND	8 Hours	10 minutes	100 (Airport Surface), 500 (Terminal, Enroute/ GOMEX)
Winds & Temperatures Aloft	12 Hours	10 minutes	1,000

e. Non–FAA FISDL Systems. Several commercial vendors also provide customers with FIS data over both the aeronautical spectrum and on other frequencies using a variety of data link protocols. In some cases, the vendors provide only the communications system that carries customer messages, such as the Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) used by many air carrier and other operators.

1. Operators using non–FAA FIS data for inflight weather and other operational information should ensure that the products used conform to FAA/NWS standards. Specifically, aviation weather and NAS status information should meet the following criteria:

(a) The products should be either FAA/NWS "accepted" aviation weather reports or products, or based on FAA/NWS accepted aviation weather reports or products. If products are used which do not meet this criteria, they should be so identified. The operator must determine the applicability of such products to their particular flight operations.

(b) In the case of a weather product which is the result of the application of a process which alters the form, function or content of the base FAA/NWS accepted weather product(s), that process, and any limitations to the application of the resultant product, should be described in the vendor's user guidance material.

2. An example would be a NEXRAD radar composite/mosaic map, which has been modified by changing the scaling resolution. The methodology of assigning reflectivity values to the resultant image components should be described in the vendor's guidance material to ensure that the user can accurately interpret the displayed data.

7–1–12. Weather Observing Programs

a. Manual Observations. With only a few exceptions, these reports are from airport locations staffed by FAA or NWS personnel who manually observe, perform calculations, and enter these observations into the (WMSCR) communication system. The format and coding of these observations are contained in paragraph 7–1–30, Key to Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) and Aerodrome Forecasts (TAF).

b. Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS).

1. Automated weather reporting systems are increasingly being installed at airports. These systems consist of various sensors, a processor, a computer-generated voice subsystem, and a transmitter to broadcast local, minute-by-minute weather data directly to the pilot.

NOTE–
When the barometric pressure exceeds 31.00 inches Hg., see paragraph 7–2–2, Procedures, for the altimeter setting procedures.

2. The AWOS observations will include the prefix "AUTO" to indicate that the data are derived from an automated system. Some AWOS locations will be augmented by certified observers who will provide weather and obstruction to vision information in the remarks of the report when the reported visibility is less than 7 miles. These sites, along with the hours of augmentation, are to be published in the A/FD. Augmentation is identified in the observation as "OBSERVER WEATHER." The AWOS wind speed, direction and gusts, temperature, dew point, and altimeter setting are exactly the same as for manual observations. The AWOS will also report density altitude when it exceeds the field elevation by more than 1,000 feet. The reported visibility is derived from a sensor near the touchdown of the primary instrument runway. The visibility sensor output is converted to a visibility value using a 10–minute harmonic average. The reported sky condition/ceiling is derived from the ceilometer located next to the visibility sensor. The AWOS algorithm integrates the last 30 minutes of ceilometer data to derive cloud layers and heights. This output may also differ from the observer sky condition in that the AWOS is totally dependent upon the cloud advection over the sensor site.

3. These real-time systems are operationally classified into eight basic levels:

(a) AWOS–A only reports altimeter setting;

NOTE–
Any other information is advisory only.

(b) AWOS–l usually reports altimeter setting, wind data, temperature, dew point, and density altitude;

(c) AWOS–2 provides the information provided by AWOS–l plus visibility; and

(d) AWOS–3 provides the information provided by AWOS–2 plus cloud/ceiling data.

(e) AWOS– 3P provides reports the same as the AWOS 3 system, plus a precipitation identification sensor.

(f) AWOS– 3PT reports the same as the AWOS 3P System, plus thunderstorm/lightning reporting capability.

(g) AWOS– 3T reports the same as AWOS 3 system and includes a thunderstorm/lightning reporting capability.

(h) AWOS– 4 reports the same as the AWOS 3 system, plus precipitation occurrence, type and

accumulation, freezing rain, thunderstorm, and runway surface sensors.

4. The information is transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. AWOS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the AWOS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, AWOS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum AWOS reception distance and/or altitude. The system transmits a 20 to 30 second weather message updated each minute. Pilots should monitor the designated frequency for the automated weather broadcast. A description of the broadcast is contained in subparagraph c. There is no two-way communication capability. Most AWOS sites also have a dial-up capability so that the minute-by-minute weather messages can be accessed via telephone.

5. AWOS information (system level, frequency, phone number, etc.) concerning specific locations is published, as the systems become operational, in the A/FD, and where applicable, on published Instrument Approach Procedures. Selected individual systems may be incorporated into nationwide data collection and dissemination networks in the future.

c. AWOS Broadcasts. Computer-generated voice is used in AWOS to automate the broadcast of the minute-by-minute weather observations. In addition, some systems are configured to permit the addition of an operator-generated voice message; e.g., weather remarks following the automated parameters. The phraseology used generally follows that used for other weather broadcasts. Following are explanations and examples of the exceptions.

1. Location and Time. The location/name and the phrase "AUTOMATED WEATHER OBSERVATION," followed by the time are announced.

(a) If the airport's specific location is included in the airport's name, the airport's name is announced.

EXAMPLE–
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation, one four five six zulu;"
"Ravenswood Jackson County Airport automated weather observation, one four five six zulu."

(b) If the airport's specific location is not included in the airport's name, the location is announced followed by the airport's name.

EXAMPLE–
"Sault Ste. Marie, Chippewa County International Airport automated weather observation;"
"Sandusky, Cowley Field automated weather observation."

(c) The word "TEST" is added following "OBSERVATION" when the system is not in commissioned status.

EXAMPLE–
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation test, one four five six zulu."

(d) The phrase "TEMPORARILY INOPERATIVE" is added when the system is inoperative.

EXAMPLE–
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observing system temporarily inoperative."

2. Visibility.

(a) The lowest reportable visibility value in AWOS is "less than $^1/_4$." It is announced as "VISIBILITY LESS THAN ONE QUARTER."

(b) A sensor for determining visibility is not included in some AWOS. In these systems, visibility is not announced. "VISIBILITY MISSING" is announced only if the system is configured with a visibility sensor and visibility information is not available.

3. Weather. In the future, some AWOSs are to be configured to determine the occurrence of precipitation. However, the type and intensity may not always be determined. In these systems, the word "PRECIPITATION" will be announced if precipitation is occurring, but the type and intensity are not determined.

4. Ceiling and Sky Cover.

(a) Ceiling is announced as either "CEILING" or "INDEFINITE CEILING." With the exception of indefinite ceilings, all automated ceiling heights are measured.

EXAMPLE–
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation, one four five six zulu. Ceiling two thousand overcast;"

"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation, one four five six zulu. Indefinite ceiling two hundred, sky obscured."

(b) The word "Clear" is not used in AWOS due to limitations in the height ranges of the sensors. No clouds detected is announced as "NO CLOUDS BELOW XXX" or, in newer systems as "CLEAR BELOW XXX" (where XXX is the range limit of the sensor).

EXAMPLE–
"No clouds below one two thousand."
"Clear below one two thousand."

(c) A sensor for determining ceiling and sky cover is not included in some AWOS. In these systems, ceiling and sky cover are not announced. "SKY CONDITION MISSING" is announced only if the system is configured with a ceilometer and the ceiling and sky cover information is not available.

5. Remarks. If remarks are included in the observation, the word "REMARKS" is announced following the altimeter setting.

(a) Automated "Remarks."

(1) Density Altitude.

(2) Variable Visibility.

(3) Variable Wind Direction.

(b) Manual Input Remarks. Manual input remarks are prefaced with the phrase "OBSERVER WEATHER." As a general rule the manual remarks are limited to:

(1) Type and intensity of precipitation.

(2) Thunderstorms and direction; and

(3) Obstructions to vision when the visibility is 3 miles or less.

EXAMPLE–
"Remarks ... density altitude, two thousand five hundred ... visibility variable between one and two ... wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero ...observed weather ... thunderstorm moderate rain showers and fog ... thunderstorm overhead."

(c) If an automated parameter is "missing" and no manual input for that parameter is available, the parameter is announced as "MISSING." For example, a report with the dew point "missing" and no manual input available, would be announced as follows:

EXAMPLE–
"Ceiling one thousand overcast ... visibility three ... precipitation ... temperature three zero, dew point missing ... wind calm ... altimeter three zero zero one."

(d) "REMARKS" are announced in the following order of priority:

(1) Automated "REMARKS."

[a] Density Altitude.

[b] Variable Visibility.

[c] Variable Wind Direction.

(2) Manual Input "REMARKS."

[a] Sky Condition.

[b] Visibility.

[c] Weather and Obstructions to Vision.

[d] Temperature.

[e] Dew Point.

[f] Wind; and

[g] Altimeter Setting.

EXAMPLE–
"Remarks ... density altitude, two thousand five hundred ... visibility variable between one and two ... wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero ... observer ceiling estimated two thousand broken ... observer temperature two, dew point minus five."

d. Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS). The ASOS/AWSS is the primary surface weather observing system of the U.S. (See Key to Decode an ASOS/AWSS (METAR) Observation, FIG 7–1–9 and FIG 7–1–10.) The program to install and operate these systems throughout the U.S. is a joint effort of the NWS, the FAA and the Department of Defense. AWSS is a follow–on program that provides identical data as ASOS. ASOS/AWSS is designed to support aviation operations and weather forecast activities. The ASOS/AWSS will provide continuous minute-by-minute observations and perform the basic observing functions necessary to generate an aviation routine weather report (METAR) and other aviation weather information. The information may be transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. ASOS/AWSS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the ASOS/AWSS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, ASOS/AWSS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum reception distance and/or altitude. While the automated system and the human may

differ in their methods of data collection and interpretation, both produce an observation quite similar in form and content. For the "objective" elements such as pressure, ambient temperature, dew point temperature, wind, and precipitation accumulation, both the automated system and the observer use a fixed location and time-averaging technique. The quantitative differences between the observer and the automated observation of these elements are negligible. For the "subjective" elements, however, observers use a fixed time, spatial averaging technique to describe the visual elements (sky condition, visibility and present weather), while the automated systems use a fixed location, time averaging technique. Although this is a fundamental change, the manual and automated techniques yield remarkably similar results within the limits of their respective capabilities.

1. System Description.

(a) The ASOS/AWSS at each airport location consists of four main components:

(1) Individual weather sensors.

(2) Data collection and processing units.

(3) Peripherals and displays.

(b) The ASOS/AWSS sensors perform the basic function of data acquisition. They continuously sample and measure the ambient environment, derive raw sensor data and make them available to the collection and processing units.

2. Every ASOS/AWSS will contain the following basic set of sensors:

(a) Cloud height indicator (one or possibly three).

(b) Visibility sensor (one or possibly three).

(c) Precipitation identification sensor.

(d) Freezing rain sensor (at select sites).

(e) Pressure sensors (two sensors at small airports; three sensors at large airports).

(f) Ambient temperature/Dew point temperature sensor.

(g) Anemometer (wind direction and speed sensor).

(h) Rainfall accumulation sensor.

3. The ASOS/AWSS data outlets include:

(a) Those necessary for on-site airport users.

(b) National communications networks.

(c) Computer-generated voice (available through FAA radio broadcast to pilots, and dial-in telephone line).

NOTE–
Wind direction broadcast over FAA radios is in reference to magnetic north.

4. An ASOS/AWOS/AWSS report without human intervention will contain only that weather data capable of being reported automatically. The modifier for this METAR report is "AUTO." When an observer augments or backs–up an ASOS/AWOS/AWSS site, the "AUTO" modifier disappears.

5. There are two types of automated stations, AO1 for automated weather reporting stations without a precipitation discriminator, and AO2 for automated stations with a precipitation discriminator. As appropriate, "AO1" and "AO2" shall appear in remarks. (A precipitation discriminator can determine the difference between liquid and frozen/freezing precipitation).

NOTE–
To decode an ASOS/AWSS report, refer to FIG 7–1–9 and FIG 7–1–10.

REFERENCE–
A complete explanation of METAR terminology is located in AIM, Paragraph 7–1–30 Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR).

FIG 7–1–9

Key to Decode an ASOS/AWSS (METAR) Observation (Front)

METAR KABC 121755Z AUTO 21016G24KT 180V240 1SM R11/P6000FT -RA BR BKN015 OVC025 06/04 A2990
RMK A02 PK WND 20032/25 WSHFT 1715 VIS 3/4V1 1/2 VIS 3/4 RWY11 RAB07 CIG 013V017 CIG 017 RWY11 PRESFR
SLP125 P0003 6009 T00640036 10066 21012 58033 TSNO $

TYPE OF REPORT	METAR: hourly (scheduled report; SPECI: special (unscheduled) report.	METAR
STATION IDENTIFIER	Four alphabetic characters; ICAO location identifiers.	KABC
DATE/TIME	All dates and times in UTC using a 24-hour clock; two-digit date and four-digit time; always appended with Z to indicate UTC.	121755Z
REPORT MODIFIER	Fully automated report, no human intervention; removed when observer signed-on.	AUTO
WIND DIRECTION AND SPEED	Direction in tens of degrees from true north (first three digits); next two digits: speed in whole knots; as needed Gusts (character) followed by maximum observed speed; always appended with KT to indicate knots; 00000KT for calm; if direction varies by 60° or more a Variable wind direction group is reported.	21016G24KT 108V240
VISIBILITY	Prevailing visibility in statute miles and fractions (space between whole miles and fractions); always appended with SM to indicate statute miles.	1SM
RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE	10-minute RVR value in hundreds of feet; reported if prevailing visibility is ≤ one mile or RVR ≤6000 feet; always appended with FT to indicate feet; value prefixed with M or P to indicate value is lower or higher than the reportable RVR value.	R11/P6000FT
WEATHER PHENOMENA	RA: liquid precipitation that does not freeze; SN: frozen precipitation other than hail; UP: precipitation of unknown type; intensity prefixed to precipitation: light (-), moderate (no sign), heavy (+); FG: fog; FZFG: freezing fog (temperature below 0°C); BR: mist; HZ: haze; SQ: squall; maximum of three groups reported; augmented by observer: FC (funnel cloud/tornado/waterspout); TS(thunderstorm); GR (hail); GS (small hail; <1/4 inch); FZRA (intensity; freezing rain); VA (volcanic ash).	-RA BR
SKY CONDITION	Cloud amount and height: CLR (no clouds detected below 12000 feet); FEW (few); SCT (scattered); BKN (broken); OVC (overcast); followed by 3-digit height in hundreds of feet; or vertical visibility (VV) followed by height for indefinite ceiling.	BKN015 OVC025
TEMPERATURE/DEW POINT	Each is reported in whole degrees Celsius using two digits; values are separated by a solidus; sub-zero values are prefixed with an M (minus).	06/04
ALTIMETER	Altimeter always prefixed with an A indicating inches of mercury; reported using four digits: tens, units, tenths, and hundredths.	A2990

FIG 7–1–10

Key to Decode an ASOS/AWSS (METAR) Observation (Back)

REMARKS IDENTIFIER: RMK	RMK
TORNADIC ACTIVITY: Augmented; report should include TORNADO, FUNNEL CLOUD, or WATERSPOUT, time begin/end, location, movement; e.;g., TORNADO B25 N MOV E.	
TYPE OF AUTOMATED STATION: AO2; automated station with precipitation discriminator.	AO2
PEAK WIND: PK WND dddff(f)/(hh)mm; direction in tens of degrees, speed in whole knots, and time.	PK WND 20032/25
WIND SHIFT: WSHFT (hh)mm	WSHFT 1715
TOWER OR SURFACE VISIBILITY: TWR VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by tower personnel, e.g., TWR VIS 2; SFC VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by ASOS, e.g., SFC VIS 2.	
VARIABLE PREVAILING VISIBILITY: VIS v_n v_n v_n v_n v_nV$v_x v_x v_x v_x v_x$; reported if prevailing visibility is <3 miles and variable.	VIS 3/4V1 1/2
VISIBILITY AT SECOND LOCATION: VIS vvvvv [LOC]; reported if different than the reported prevailing visibility in body of report.	VIS 3/4 RWY11
LIGHTNING: [FREQ] LTG [LOC]; when detected the frequency and location is reported, e.g., FRQ LTG NE.	
BEGINNING AND ENDING OF PRECIPITATION AND THUNDERSTORMS: w'w'B(hh)mmE(hh)mm; TSB(hh)mmE(hh)mm	RAB07
VIRGA: Augmented; precipitation not reaching the ground, e.g., VIRGA.	
VARIABLE CEILING HEIGHT: CIG h_n h_n h_nV$h_x h_x h_x$; reported if ceiling in body of report is <3000 feet and variable.	CIG 013V017
CEILING HEIGHT AT SECOND LOCATION: CIG hhh [LOC]; Ceiling height reported if secondary ceilometer site is different than the ceiling height in the body of the report.	CIG 017 RWY11
PRESSURE RISING OR FALLING RAPIDLY: PRESRR or PRESFR; pressure rising or falling rapidly at time of observation.	PRESFR
SEA-LEVEL PRESSURE: SLPppp; tens, units, and tenths of SLP in hPa.	SLP125
HOURLY PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: Prrrr; in .01 inches since last METAR; a trace is P0000.	P0003
3- AND 6-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: 6RRRR; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 6 hours reported in 00, 06, 12, and 18 UTC observations and for past 3 hours in 03, 09, 15, and 21 UTC observations; a trace is 60000.	60009
24-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: $7R_{24}$ R_{24} R_{24} R_{24}; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 24 hours reported in 12 UTC observation, e.g., 70015.	
HOURLY TEMPERATURE AND DEW POINT: $Ts_nT_aT_aT_as_nT'_aT'_aT'_a$; tenth of degree Celsius; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0° C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	T00640036
6-HOUR MAXIMUM TEMPERATURE: $1s_nT_xT_xT_x$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	10066
6-HOUR MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: $2s_nT_nT_nT_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	21012
24-HOUR MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: $4s_nT_xT_xT_xs_nT_nT_nT_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; reported at midnight local standard time; 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher, e.g., 400461006.	
PRESSURE TENDENCY: 5appp; the character (a) and change in pressure (ppp; tenths of hPa) the past 3 hours.	58033
SENSOR STATUS INDICATORS: RVRNO: RVR missing; PWINO: precipitation identifier information not available; PNO: precipitation amount not available; FZRANO: freezing rain information not available; TSNO: thunderstorm information not available; VISNO [LOC]: visibility at secondary location not available, e.g., VISNO RWY06; CHINO [LOC]: (cloud-height-indicator) sky condition at secondary location not available, e.g., CHINO RWY06.	TSNO
MAINTENANCE CHECK INDICATOR: Maintenance needed on the system.	$

If an element or phenomena does not occur, is missing, or cannot be observed, the corresponding group and space are omitted (body and/or remarks) from that particular report, except for Sea-Level Pressure (SLPppp). SLPNO shall be reported in a METAR when the SLP is not available.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION • FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION • Aviation Weather Directorate, 400 7TH Street, SW, Rooms 8200-8326, Washington, D.C 20591

e. TBL 7−1−2 contains a comparison of weather observing programs and the elements reported.

f. Service Standards. During 1995, a government/industry team worked to comprehensively reassess the requirements for surface observations at the nation's airports. That work resulted in agreement on a set of service standards, and the FAA and NWS ASOS sites to which the standards would apply. The term "Service Standards" refers to the level of detail in weather observation. The service standards consist of four different levels of service (A, B, C, and D) as described below. Specific observational elements included in each service level are listed in TBL 7−1−3.

1. Service Level D defines the minimum acceptable level of service. It is a completely automated service in which the ASOS/AWSS observation will constitute the entire observation, i.e., no additional weather information is added by a human observer. This service is referred to as a stand alone D site.

2. Service Level C is a service in which the human observer, usually an air traffic controller, augments or adds information to the automated observation. Service Level C also includes backup of ASOS/AWSS elements in the event of an ASOS/AWSS malfunction or an unrepresentative ASOS/AWSS report. In backup, the human observer inserts the correct or missing value for the automated ASOS/AWSS elements. This service is provided by air traffic controllers under the Limited Aviation Weather Reporting Station (LAWRS) process, FSS and NWS observers, and, at selected sites, Non−Federal Observation Program observers.

Two categories of airports require detail beyond Service Level C in order to enhance air traffic control efficiency and increase system capacity. Services at these airports are typically provided by contract weather observers, NWS observers, and, at some locations, FSS observers.

3. Service Level B is a service in which weather observations consist of all elements provided under Service Level C, plus augmentation of additional data beyond the capability of the ASOS/AWSS. This category of airports includes smaller hubs or special airports in other ways that have worse than average bad weather operations for thunderstorms and/or freezing/frozen precipitation, and/or that are remote airports.

4. Service Level A, the highest and most demanding category, includes all the data reported in Service Standard B, plus additional requirements as specified. Service Level A covers major aviation hubs and/or high volume traffic airports with average or worse weather.

TBL 7−1−2

Weather Observing Programs						
Element Reported	**AWOS−A**	**AWOS−1**	**AWOS−2**	**AWOS−3**	**ASOS**	**Manual**
Altimeter	X	X	X	X	X	X
Wind		X	X	X	X	X
Temperature/ Dew Point		X	X	X	X	X
Density Altitude		X	X	X	X	
Visibility			X	X	X	X
Clouds/Ceiling				X	X	X
Precipitation					X	X
Remarks					X	X

TBL 7–1–3

SERVICE LEVEL A	
Service Level A consists of all the elements of Service Levels B, C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	10 minute longline RVR at precedented sites or additional visibility increments of 1/8, 1/16 and 0 Sector visibility Variable sky condition Cloud layers above 12,000 feet and cloud types Widespread dust, sand and other obscurations Volcanic eruptions
SERVICE LEVEL B	
Service Level B consists of all the elements of Service Levels C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	Longline RVR at precedented sites (may be instantaneous readout) Freezing drizzle versus freezing rain Ice pellets Snow depth & snow increasing rapidly remarks Thunderstorm and lightning location remarks Observed significant weather not at the station remarks
SERVICE LEVEL C	
Service Level C consists of all the elements of Service Level D plus augmentation and backup by a human observer or an air traffic control specialist on location nearby. Backup consists of inserting the correct value if the system malfunctions or is unrepresentative. Augmentation consists of adding the elements listed to the right, if observed. During hours that the observing facility is closed, the site reverts to Service Level D.	Thunderstorms Tornadoes Hail Virga Volcanic ash Tower visibility Operationally significant remarks as deemed appropriate by the observer
SERVICE LEVEL D	
This level of service consists of an ASOS or AWSS continually measuring the atmosphere at a point near the runway. The ASOS or AWSS senses and measures the weather parameters listed to the right.	Wind Visibility Precipitation/Obstruction to vision Cloud height Sky cover Temperature Dew point Altimeter

7–1–13. Weather Radar Services

a. The National Weather Service operates a network of radar sites for detecting coverage, intensity, and movement of precipitation. The network is supplemented by FAA and DOD radar sites in the western sections of the country. Local warning radar sites augment the network by operating on an as needed basis to support warning and forecast programs.

b. Scheduled radar observations are taken hourly and transmitted in alpha-numeric format on weather telecommunications circuits for flight planning purposes. Under certain conditions, special radar reports are issued in addition to the hourly transmittals. Data contained in the reports are also collected by the National Center for Environmental Prediction and used to prepare national radar summary charts for dissemination on facsimile circuits.

c. A clear radar display (no echoes) does not mean that there is no significant weather within the coverage of the radar site. Clouds and fog are not detected by the radar. However, when echoes are present, turbulence can be implied by the intensity of the precipitation, and icing is implied by the presence of the precipitation at temperatures at or below zero degrees Celsius. Used in conjunction with other weather products, radar provides invaluable information for weather avoidance and flight planning.

FIG 7–1–11
NEXRAD Coverage

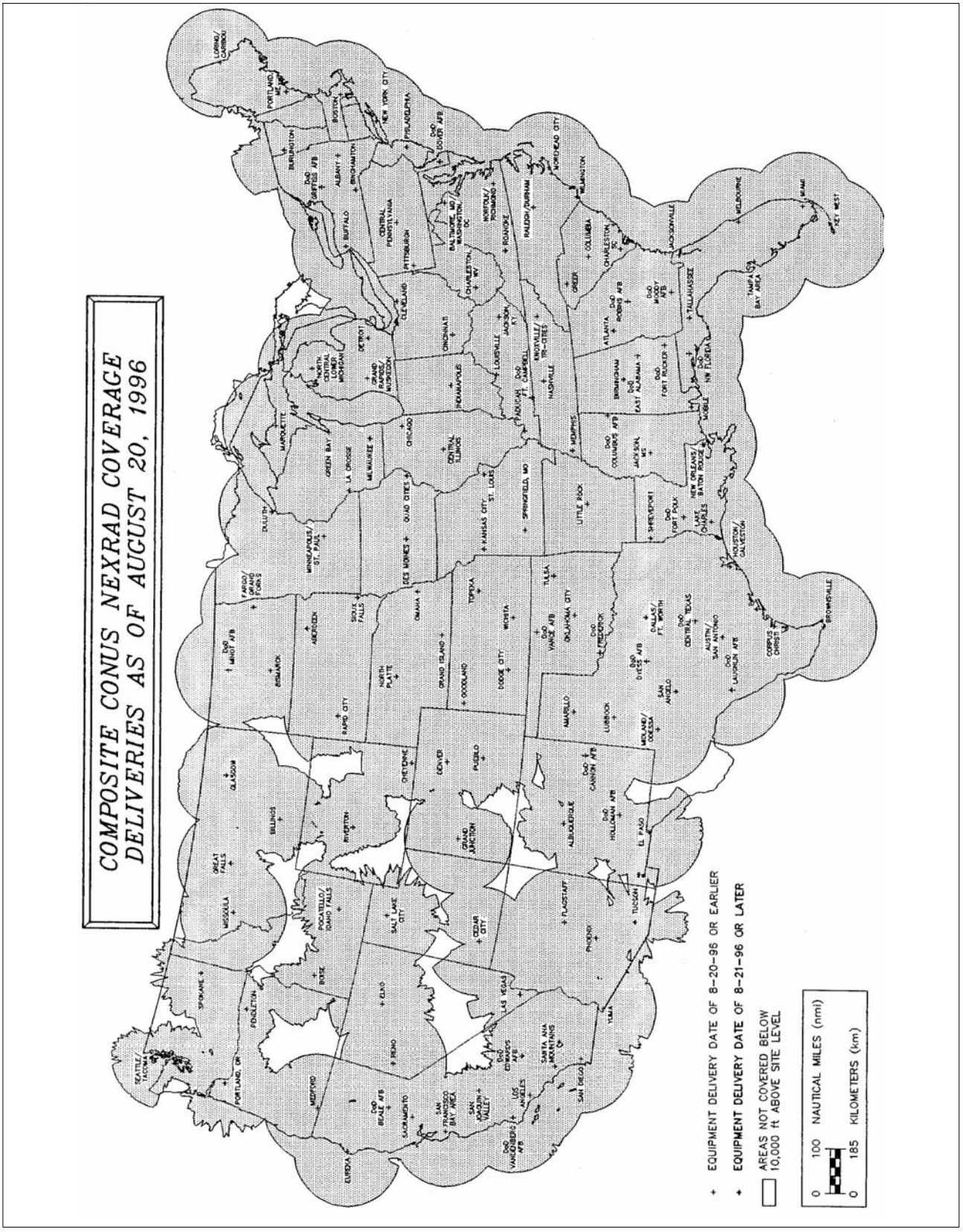


FIG 7–1–12
NEXRAD Coverage

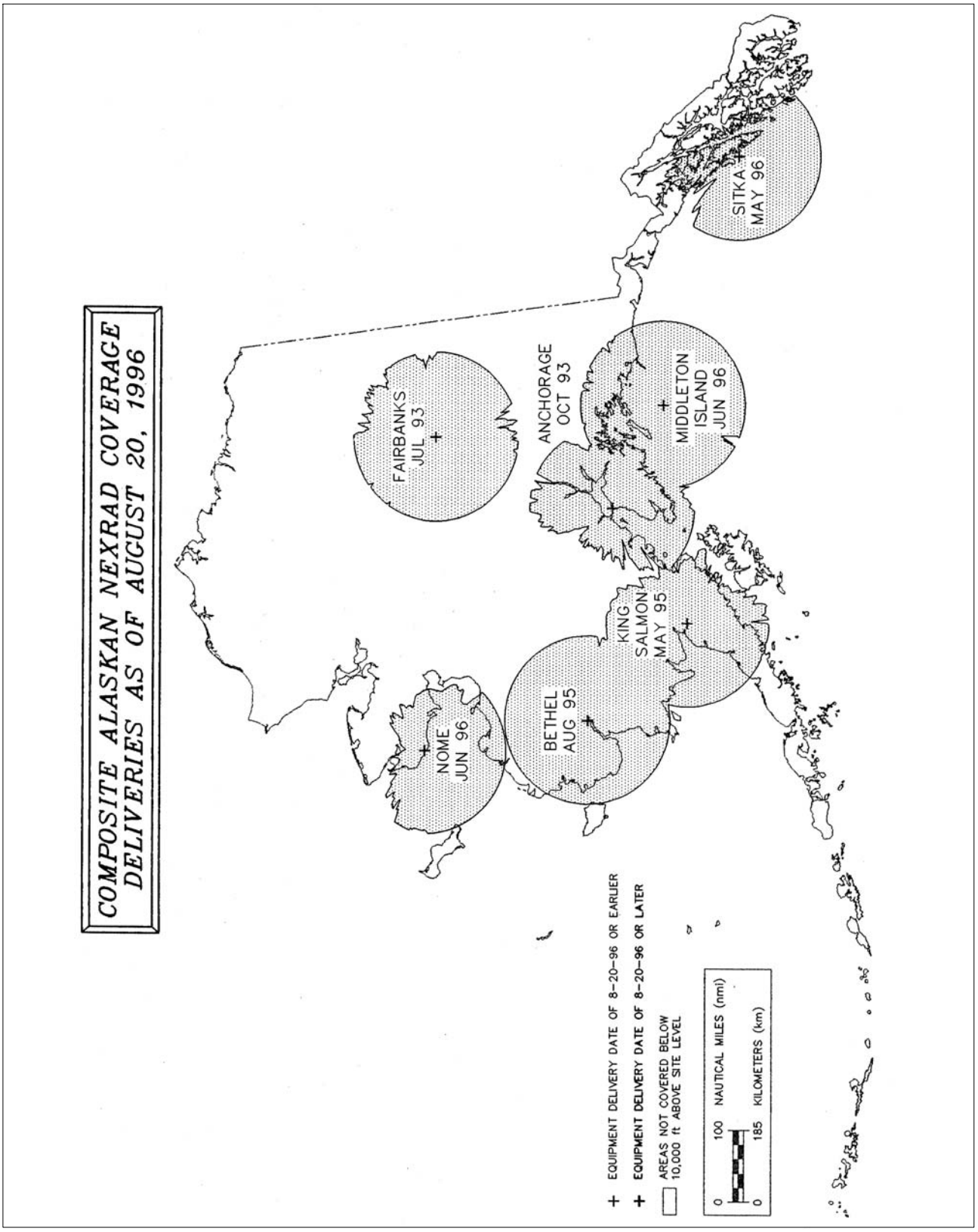
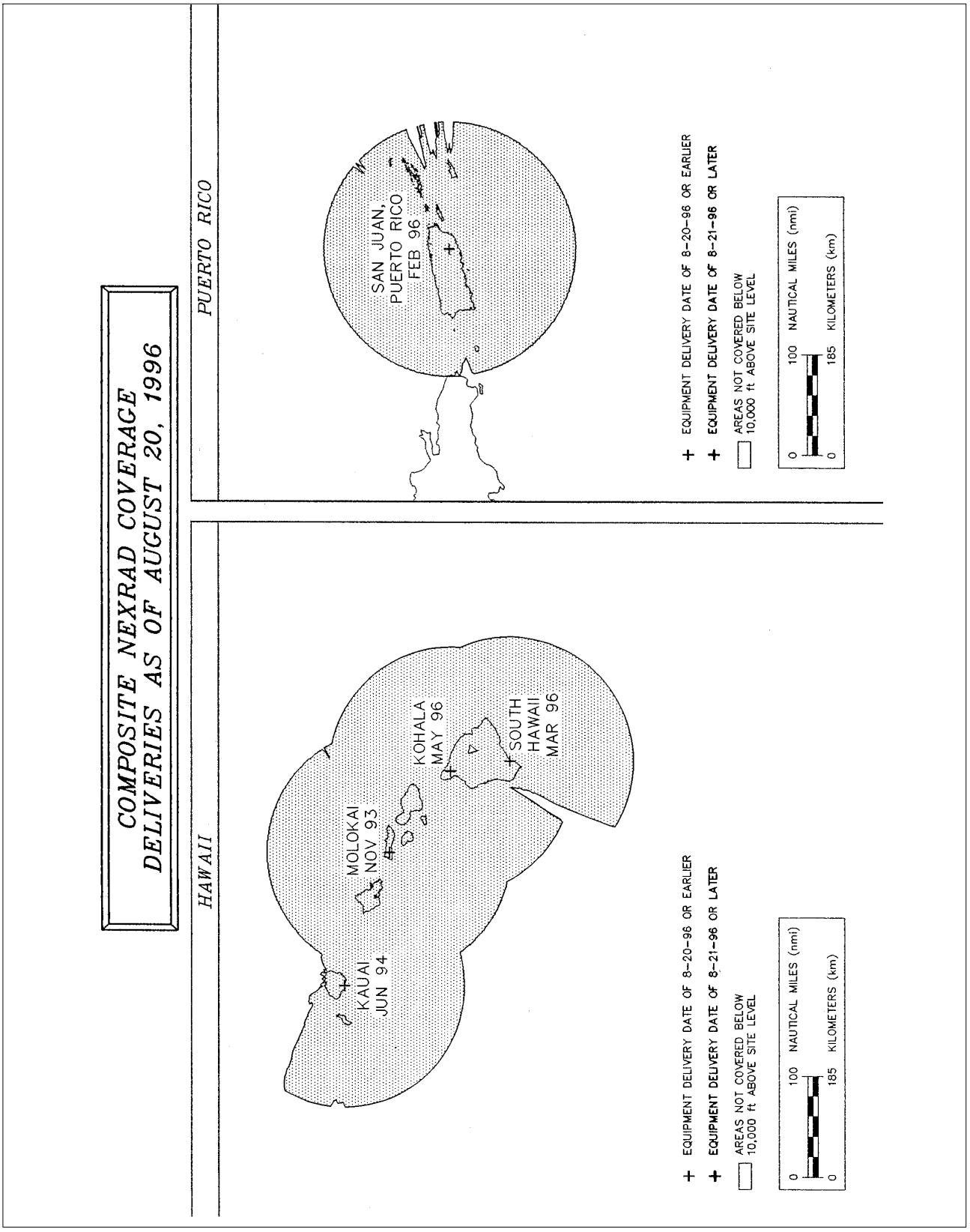


FIG 7–1–13
NEXRAD Coverage



d. All En Route Flight Advisory Service facilities and AFSSs have equipment to directly access the radar displays from the individual weather radar sites. Specialists at these locations are trained to interpret the display for pilot briefing and inflight advisory services. The Center Weather Service Units located in ARTCCs also have access to weather radar displays and provide support to all air traffic facilities within their center's area.

e. Additional information on weather radar products and services can be found in AC 00–45, Aviation Weather Services.

REFERENCE–
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term– Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.
AIM, Thunderstorms, Paragraph 7–1–28
A/FD, Charts, NWS Upper Air Observing Stations and Weather Network for the location of specific radar sites.

7–1–14. ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance

a. ATC Radar Weather Display.

1. ATC radars are able to display areas of precipitation by sending out a beam of radio energy that is reflected back to the radar antenna when it strikes an object or moisture which may be in the form of rain drops, hail, or snow. The larger the object is, or the more dense its reflective surface, the stronger the return will be presented. Radar weather processors indicate the intensity of reflective returns in terms of decibels (dBZ). ATC systems cannot detect the presence or absence of clouds. The ATC systems can often determine the intensity of a precipitation area, but the specific character of that area (snow, rain, hail, VIRGA, etc.) cannot be determined. For this reason, ATC refers to all weather areas displayed on ATC radar scopes as "precipitation."

2. All ATC facilities using radar weather processors with the ability to determine precipitation intensity, will describe the intensity to pilots as:

(a) "LIGHT" (< 30 dBZ)

(b) "MODERATE" (30 to 40 dBZ)

(c) "HEAVY" (> 40 to 50 dBZ)

(d) "EXTREME" (> 50 dBZ)

3. ATC facilities that, due to equipment limitations, cannot display the intensity levels of precipitation, will describe the location of the precipitation area by geographic position, or position relative to the aircraft. Since the intensity level is not available, the controller will state "INTENSITY UNKNOWN."

4. ARTCC facilities normally use a Weather and Radar Processor (WARP) to display a mosaic of data obtained from multiple NEXRAD sites. There is a time delay between actual conditions and those displayed to the controller. For example, the precipitation data on the ARTCC controller's display could be up to 6 minutes old. When the WARP is not available, a second system, the narrowband Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) can display two distinct levels of precipitation intensity that will be described to pilots as "MODERATE" (30 to 40 dBZ) and "HEAVY TO EXTREME" (> 40 dBZ). The WARP processor is only used in ARTCC facilities.

5. *ATC radar is not able to detect turbulence.* Generally, turbulence can be expected to occur as the rate of rainfall or intensity of precipitation increases. Turbulence associated with greater rates of rainfall/precipitation will normally be more severe than any associated with lesser rates of rainfall/precipitation. Turbulence should be expected to occur near convective activity, even in clear air. Thunderstorms are a form of convective activity that imply severe or greater turbulence. Operation within 20 miles of thunderstorms should be approached with great caution, as the severity of turbulence can be markedly greater than the precipitation intensity might indicate.

b. Weather Avoidance Assistance.

1. To the extent possible, controllers will issue pertinent information on weather or chaff areas and assist pilots in avoiding such areas when requested. Pilots should respond to a weather advisory by either acknowledging the advisory or by acknowledging the advisory and requesting an alternative course of action as follows:

(a) Request to deviate off course by stating the number of miles and the direction of the requested deviation. In this case, when the requested deviation is approved, navigation is at the pilot's prerogative, but must maintain the altitude assigned by ATC and to remain within the specified mileage of the original course.

(b) Request a new route to avoid the affected area.

(c) Request a change of altitude.

(d) Request radar vectors around the affected areas.

2. For obvious reasons of safety, an IFR pilot must not deviate from the course or altitude or flight level without a proper ATC clearance. When weather conditions encountered are so severe that an immediate deviation is determined to be necessary and time will not permit approval by ATC, the pilot's emergency authority may be exercised.

3. When the pilot requests clearance for a route deviation or for an ATC radar vector, the controller must evaluate the air traffic picture in the affected area, and coordinate with other controllers (if ATC jurisdictional boundaries may be crossed) before replying to the request.

4. It should be remembered that the controller's primary function is to provide safe separation between aircraft. Any additional service, such as weather avoidance assistance, can only be provided to the extent that it does not derogate the primary function. It's also worth noting that the separation workload is generally greater than normal when weather disrupts the usual flow of traffic. ATC radar limitations and frequency congestion may also be a factor in limiting the controller's capability to provide additional service.

5. It is very important, therefore, that the request for deviation or radar vector be forwarded to ATC as far in advance as possible. Delay in submitting it may delay or even preclude ATC approval or require that additional restrictions be placed on the clearance. Insofar as possible the following information should be furnished to ATC when requesting clearance to detour around weather activity:

(a) Proposed point where detour will commence.

(b) Proposed route and extent of detour (direction and distance).

(c) Point where original route will be resumed.

(d) Flight conditions (IFR or VFR).

(e) Any further deviation that may become necessary as the flight progresses.

(f) Advise if the aircraft is equipped with functioning airborne radar.

6. To a large degree, the assistance that might be rendered by ATC will depend upon the weather information available to controllers. Due to the extremely transitory nature of severe weather situations, the controller's weather information may be of only limited value if based on weather observed on radar only. Frequent updates by pilots giving specific information as to the area affected, altitudes, intensity and nature of the severe weather can be of considerable value. Such reports are relayed by radio or phone to other pilots and controllers and also receive widespread teletypewriter dissemination.

7. Obtaining IFR clearance or an ATC radar vector to circumnavigate severe weather can often be accommodated more readily in the en route areas away from terminals because there is usually less congestion and, therefore, offer greater freedom of action. In terminal areas, the problem is more acute because of traffic density, ATC coordination requirements, complex departure and arrival routes, adjacent airports, etc. As a consequence, controllers are less likely to be able to accommodate all requests for weather detours in a terminal area or be in a position to volunteer such routing to the pilot. Nevertheless, pilots should not hesitate to advise controllers of any observed severe weather and should specifically advise controllers if they desire circumnavigation of observed weather.

c. Procedures for Weather Deviations and Other Contingencies in Oceanic Controlled Airspace.

1. When the pilot initiates communications with ATC, rapid response may be obtained by stating "WEATHER DEVIATION REQUIRED" to indicate priority is desired on the frequency and for ATC response.

2. The pilot still retains the option of initiating the communications using the urgency call "PAN–PAN" 3 times to alert all listening parties of a special handling condition which will receive ATC priority for issuance of a clearance or assistance.

3. ATC will:

(a) Approve the deviation.

(b) Provide vertical separation and then approve the deviation; or

(c) If ATC is unable to establish vertical separation, ATC shall advise the pilot that standard separation cannot be applied; provide essential traffic

information for all affected aircraft, to the extent practicable; and if possible, suggest a course of action. ATC may suggest that the pilot climb or descend to a contingency altitude (1,000 feet above or below that assigned if operating above FL 290; 500 feet above or below that assigned if operating at or below FL 290).

PHRASEOLOGY–
STANDARD SEPARATION NOT AVAILABLE, DEVIATE AT PILOT'S DISCRETION; SUGGEST CLIMB (or descent) TO (appropriate altitude); TRAFFIC (position and altitude); REPORT DEVIATION COMPLETE.

4. The pilot will follow the ATC advisory altitude when approximately 10 NM from track as well as execute the procedures detailed in paragraph 7–1–14c5.

5. If contact cannot be established or revised ATC clearance or advisory is not available and deviation from track is required, the pilot shall take the following actions:

(a) If possible, deviate away from an organized track or route system.

(b) Broadcast aircraft position and intentions on the frequency in use, as well as on frequency 121.5 MHz at suitable intervals stating: flight identification (operator call sign), flight level, track code or ATS route designator, and extent of deviation expected.

(c) Watch for conflicting traffic both visually and by reference to TCAS (if equipped).

(d) Turn on aircraft exterior lights.

(e) Deviations of less than 10 NM or operations within COMPOSITE (NOPAC and CEPAC) Airspace, should REMAIN at ASSIGNED altitude. Otherwise, when the aircraft is approximately 10 NM from track, initiate an altitude change based on the following criteria:

TBL 7–1–4

Route Centerline/Track	Deviations >10 NM	Altitude Change
East 000 – 179°M	Left Right	Descend 300 Feet Climb 300 Feet
West 180–359°M	Left Right	Climb 300 Feet Descend 300 Feet
Pilot Memory Slogan: "East right up, West right down."		

(f) When returning to track, be at assigned flight level when the aircraft is within approximately 10 NM of centerline.

(g) If contact was not established prior to deviating, continue to attempt to contact ATC to obtain a clearance. If contact was established, continue to keep ATC advised of intentions and obtain essential traffic information.

7–1–15. Runway Visual Range (RVR)

There are currently two configurations of RVR in the NAS commonly identified as Taskers and New Generation RVR. The Taskers are the existing configuration which uses transmissometer technology. The New Generation RVRs were deployed in November 1994 and use forward scatter technology. The New Generation RVRs are currently being deployed in the NAS to replace the existing Taskers.

a. RVR values are measured by transmissometers mounted on 14–foot towers along the runway. A full RVR system consists of:

1. Transmissometer projector and related items.

2. Transmissometer receiver (detector) and related items.

3. Analog

4. recorder.

5. Signal data converter and related items.

6. Remote digital or remote display programmer.

b. The transmissometer projector and receiver are mounted on towers 250 feet apart. A known intensity of light is emitted from the projector and is measured

by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze or smoke reduces the light intensity arriving at the receiver. The resultant intensity measurement is then converted to an RVR value by the signal data converter. These values are displayed by readout equipment in the associated air traffic facility and updated approximately once every minute for controller issuance to pilots.

c. The signal data converter receives information on the high intensity runway edge light setting in use (step 3, 4, or 5); transmission values from the transmissometer and the sensing of day or night conditions. From the three data sources, the system will compute appropriate RVR values.

d. An RVR transmissometer established on a 250 foot baseline provides digital readouts to a minimum of 600 feet, which are displayed in 200 foot increments to 3,000 feet and in 500 foot increments from 3,000 feet to a maximum value of 6,000 feet.

e. RVR values for Category IIIa operations extend down to 700 feet RVR; however, only 600 and 800 feet are reportable RVR increments. The 800 RVR reportable value covers a range of 701 feet to 900 feet and is therefore a valid minimum indication of Category IIIa operations.

f. Approach categories with the corresponding minimum RVR values. (See TBL 7–1–5.)

TBL 7–1–5
Approach Category/Minimum RVR Table

Category	Visibility (RVR)
Nonprecision	2,400 feet
Category I	1,800 feet*
Category II	1,000 feet
Category IIIa	700 feet
Category IIIb	150 feet
Category IIIc	0 feet

* 1,400 feet with special equipment and authorization

g. Ten minute maximum and minimum RVR values for the designated RVR runway are reported in the body of the aviation weather report when the prevailing visibility is less than one mile and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less. ATCTs report RVR when the prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less.

h. Details on the requirements for the operational use of RVR are contained in FAA AC 97–1, “Runway Visual Range (RVR).” Pilots are responsible for compliance with minimums prescribed for their class of operations in the appropriate CFRs and/or operations specifications.

i. RVR values are also measured by forward scatter meters mounted on 14–foot frangible fiberglass poles. A full RVR system consists of:

1. Forward scatter meter with a transmitter, receiver and associated items.

2. A runway light intensity monitor (RLIM).

3. An ambient light sensor (ALS).

4. A data processor unit (DPU).

5. Controller display (CD).

j. The forward scatter meter is mounted on a 14–foot frangible pole. Infrared light is emitted from the transmitter and received by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze or smoke increases the amount of scattered light reaching the receiver. The resulting measurement along with inputs from the runway light intensity monitor and the ambient light sensor are forwarded to the DPU which calculates the proper RVR value. The RVR values are displayed locally and remotely on controller displays.

k. The runway light intensity monitors both the runway edge and centerline light step settings (steps 1 through 5). Centerline light step settings are used for CAT IIIb operations. Edge Light step settings are used for CAT I, II, and IIIa operations.

l. New Generation RVRs can measure and display RVR values down to the lowest limits of Category IIIb operations (150 feet RVR). RVR values are displayed in 100 feet increments and are reported as follows:

1. 100–feet increments for products below 800 feet.

2. 200–feet increments for products between 800 feet and 3,000 feet.

3. 500–feet increments for products between 3,000 feet and 6,500 feet.

4. 25–meter increments for products below 150 meters.

5. 50–meter increments for products between 150 meters and 800 meters.

6. 100−meter increments for products between 800 meters and 1,200 meters.

7. 200−meter increments for products between 1,200 meters and 2,000 meters.

7−1−16. Reporting of Cloud Heights

a. Ceiling, by definition in the CFRs and as used in aviation weather reports and forecasts, is the height above ground (or water) level of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomenon that is reported as "broken," "overcast," or "obscuration," e.g., an aerodrome forecast (TAF) which reads "BKN030" refers to height above ground level. An area forecast which reads "BKN030" indicates that the height is above mean sea level.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR), Paragraph 7−1−30, defines "broken," "overcast," and "obscuration."

b. Pilots usually report height values above MSL, since they determine heights by the altimeter. This is taken in account when disseminating and otherwise applying information received from pilots. ("Ceiling" heights are always above ground level.) In reports disseminated as PIREPs, height references are given the same as received from pilots, that is, above MSL.

c. In area forecasts or inflight advisories, ceilings are denoted by the contraction "CIG" when used with sky cover symbols as in "LWRG TO CIG OVC005," or the contraction "AGL" after, the forecast cloud height value. When the cloud base is given in height above MSL, it is so indicated by the contraction "MSL" or "ASL" following the height value. The heights of clouds tops, freezing level, icing, and turbulence are always given in heights above ASL or MSL.

7−1−17. Reporting Prevailing Visibility

a. Surface (horizontal) visibility is reported in METAR reports in terms of statute miles and increments thereof; e.g., $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^3/_{16}$, $^1/_4$, $^5/_{16}$, $^3/_8$, $^1/_2$, $^5/_8$, $^3/_4$, $^7/_8$, 1, 1 $^1/_8$, etc. (Visibility reported by an unaugmented automated site is reported differently than in a manual report, i.e., ASOS/AWSS: 0, $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc., AWOS: M$^1/_4$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc.) Visibility is determined through the ability to see and identify preselected and prominent objects at a known distance from the usual point of observation. Visibilities which are determined to be less than 7 miles, identify the obscuring atmospheric condition; e.g., fog, haze, smoke, etc., or combinations thereof.

b. Prevailing visibility is the greatest visibility equalled or exceeded throughout at least one half of the horizon circle, not necessarily contiguous. Segments of the horizon circle which may have a significantly different visibility may be reported in the remarks section of the weather report; i.e., the southeastern quadrant of the horizon circle may be determined to be 2 miles in mist while the remaining quadrants are determined to be 3 miles in mist.

c. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, certificated tower personnel will take visibility observations in addition to those taken at the usual point of observation. The lower of these two values will be used as the prevailing visibility for aircraft operations.

7−1−18. Estimating Intensity of Rain and Ice Pellets

a. Rain

1. Light. From scattered drops that, regardless of duration, do not completely wet an exposed surface up to a condition where individual drops are easily seen.

2. Moderate. Individual drops are not clearly identifiable; spray is observable just above pavements and other hard surfaces.

3. Heavy. Rain seemingly falls in sheets; individual drops are not identifiable; heavy spray to height of several inches is observed over hard surfaces.

b. Ice Pellets

1. Light. Scattered pellets that do not completely cover an exposed surface regardless of duration. Visibility is not affected.

2. Moderate. Slow accumulation on ground. Visibility reduced by ice pellets to less than 7 statute miles.

3. Heavy. Rapid accumulation on ground. Visibility reduced by ice pellets to less than 3 statute miles.

7–1–19. Estimating Intensity of Snow or Drizzle (Based on Visibility)

a. Light. Visibility more than $^1/_2$ statute mile.

b. Moderate. Visibility from more than $^1/_4$ statute mile to $^1/_2$ statute mile.

c. Heavy. Visibility $^1/_4$ statute mile or less.

7–1–20. Pilot Weather Reports (PIREPs)

a. FAA air traffic facilities are required to solicit PIREPs when the following conditions are reported or forecast: ceilings at or below 5,000 feet; visibility at or below 5 miles (surface or aloft); thunderstorms and related phenomena; icing of light degree or greater; turbulence of moderate degree or greater; wind shear and reported or forecast volcanic ash clouds.

b. Pilots are urged to cooperate and promptly volunteer reports of these conditions and other atmospheric data such as: cloud bases, tops and layers; flight visibility; precipitation; visibility restrictions such as haze, smoke and dust; wind at altitude; and temperature aloft.

c. PIREPs should be given to the ground facility with which communications are established; i.e., EFAS, AFSS/FSS, ARTCC, or terminal ATC. One of the primary duties of EFAS facilities, radio call "FLIGHT WATCH," is to serve as a collection point for the exchange of PIREPs with en route aircraft.

d. If pilots are not able to make PIREPs by radio, reporting upon landing of the inflight conditions encountered to the nearest AFSS/FSS or Weather Forecast Office will be helpful. Some of the uses made of the reports are:

1. The ATCT uses the reports to expedite the flow of air traffic in the vicinity of the field and for hazardous weather avoidance procedures.

2. The AFSS/FSS uses the reports to brief other pilots, to provide inflight advisories, and weather avoidance information to en route aircraft.

3. The ARTCC uses the reports to expedite the flow of en route traffic, to determine most favorable altitudes, and to issue hazardous weather information within the center's area.

4. The NWS uses the reports to verify or amend conditions contained in aviation forecast and advisories. In some cases, pilot reports of hazardous conditions are the triggering mechanism for the issuance of advisories. They also use the reports for pilot weather briefings.

5. The NWS, other government organizations, the military, and private industry groups use PIREPs for research activities in the study of meteorological phenomena.

6. All air traffic facilities and the NWS forward the reports received from pilots into the weather distribution system to assure the information is made available to all pilots and other interested parties.

e. The FAA, NWS, and other organizations that enter PIREPs into the weather reporting system use the format listed in TBL 7–1–6. Items 1 through 6 are included in all transmitted PIREPs along with one or more of items 7 through 13. Although the PIREP should be as complete and concise as possible, pilots should not be overly concerned with strict format or phraseology. The important thing is that the information is relayed so other pilots may benefit from your observation. If a portion of the report needs clarification, the ground station will request the information. Completed PIREPs will be transmitted to weather circuits as in the following examples:

TBL 7–1–6
PIREP Element Code Chart

	PIREP ELEMENT	PIREP CODE	CONTENTS
1.	3–letter station identifier	XXX	Nearest weather reporting location to the reported phenomenon
2.	Report type	UA or UUA	Routine or Urgent PIREP
3.	Location	/OV	In relation to a VOR
4.	Time	/TM	Coordinated Universal Time
5.	Altitude	/FL	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
6.	Type Aircraft	/TP	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
7.	Sky cover	/SK	Cloud height and coverage (sky clear, few, scattered, broken, or overcast)
8.	Weather	/WX	Flight visibility, precipitation, restrictions to visibility, etc.
9.	Temperature	/TA	Degrees Celsius
10.	Wind	/WV	Direction in degrees magnetic north and speed in knots
11.	Turbulence	/TB	See AIM paragraph 7–1–23
12.	Icing	/IC	See AIM paragraph 7–1–21
13.	Remarks	/RM	For reporting elements not included or to clarify previously reported items

EXAMPLE–
1. *KCMH UA /OV APE 230010/TM 1516/FL085/TP BE20/SK BKN065/WX FV03SM HZ FU/TA 20/TB LGT*

NOTE–
1. *One zero miles southwest of Appleton VOR; time 1516 UTC; altitude eight thousand five hundred; aircraft type BE200; bases of the broken cloud layer is six thousand five hundred; flight visibility 3 miles with haze and smoke; air temperature 20 degrees Celsius; light turbulence.*

EXAMPLE–
2. *KCRW UV /OV KBKW 360015–KCRW/TM 1815/FL120//TP BE99/SK IMC/WX RA/TA M08 /WV 290030/TB LGT–MDT/IC LGT RIME/RM MDT MXD ICG DURC KROA NWBND FL080–100 1750Z*

NOTE–
2. *From 15 miles north of Beckley VOR to Charleston VOR; time 1815 UTC; altitude 12,000 feet; type aircraft, BE–99; in clouds; rain; temperature minus 8 Celsius; wind 290 degrees magnetic at 30 knots; light to moderate turbulence; light rime icing during climb northwestbound from Roanoke, VA, between 8,000 and 10,000 feet at 1750 UTC.*

7–1–21. PIREPs Relating to Airframe Icing

a. The effects of ice on aircraft are cumulative-thrust is reduced, drag increases, lift lessens, and weight increases. The results are an increase in stall speed and a deterioration of aircraft performance. In extreme cases, 2 to 3 inches of ice can form on the leading edge of the airfoil in less than 5 minutes. It takes but $^1/_2$ inch of ice to reduce the lifting power of some aircraft by 50 percent and increases the frictional drag by an equal percentage.

b. A pilot can expect icing when flying in visible precipitation, such as rain or cloud droplets, and the temperature is between +02 and –10 degrees Celsius. When icing is detected, a pilot should do one of two things, particularly if the aircraft is not equipped with deicing equipment; get out of the area of precipitation; or go to an altitude where the temperature is above freezing. This “warmer” altitude may not always be a lower altitude. Proper preflight action includes obtaining information on the freezing level and the above freezing levels in precipitation areas. Report icing to ATC, and if operating IFR, request new routing or altitude if icing will be a hazard. Be sure to give the type of aircraft to ATC when reporting icing. The following describes how to report icing conditions.

1. Trace. Ice becomes perceptible. Rate of accumulation slightly greater than sublimation. Deicing/anti-icing equipment is not utilized unless encountered for an extended period of time (over 1 hour).

2. Light. The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment

(over 1 hour). Occasional use of deicing/anti-icing equipment removes/prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the deicing/anti-icing equipment is used.

3. Moderate. The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of deicing/anti-icing equipment or flight diversion is necessary.

4. Severe. The rate of accumulation is such that deicing/anti-icing equipment fails to reduce or control the hazard. Immediate flight diversion is necessary.

EXAMPLE–
Pilot report: give aircraft identification, location, time (UTC), intensity of type, altitude/FL, aircraft type, indicated air speed (IAS), and outside air temperature (OAT).

NOTE–
1. *Rime ice. Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.*

2. *Clear ice. A glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing of large supercooled water droplets.*

3. *The OAT should be requested by the AFSS/FSS or ATC if not included in the PIREP.*

7–1–22. Definitions of Inflight Icing Terms

See TBL 7–1–7, Icing Types, and TBL 7–1–8, Icing Conditions.

TBL 7–1–7
Icing Types

Clear Ice	See Glaze Ice.
Glaze Ice	Ice, sometimes clear and smooth, but usually containing some air pockets, which results in a lumpy translucent appearance. Glaze ice results from supercooled drops/droplets striking a surface but not freezing rapidly on contact. Glaze ice is denser, harder, and sometimes more transparent than rime ice. Factors, which favor glaze formation, are those that favor slow dissipation of the heat of fusion (i.e., slight supercooling and rapid accretion). With larger accretions, the ice shape typically includes “horns” protruding from unprotected leading edge surfaces. It is the ice shape, rather than the clarity or color of the ice, which is most likely to be accurately assessed from the cockpit. The terms “clear” and “glaze” have been used for essentially the same type of ice accretion, although some reserve “clear” for thinner accretions which lack horns and conform to the airfoil.
Intercycle Ice	Ice which accumulates on a protected surface between actuation cycles of a deicing system.
Known or Observed or Detected Ice Accretion	Actual ice observed visually to be on the aircraft by the flight crew or identified by on–board sensors.
Mixed Ice	Simultaneous appearance or a combination of rime and glaze ice characteristics. Since the clarity, color, and shape of the ice will be a mixture of rime and glaze characteristics, accurate identification of mixed ice from the cockpit may be difficult.
Residual Ice	Ice which remains on a protected surface immediately after the actuation of a deicing system.
Rime Ice	A rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the rapid freezing of supercooled drops/droplets after they strike the aircraft. The rapid freezing results in air being trapped, giving the ice its opaque appearance and making it porous and brittle. Rime ice typically accretes along the stagnation line of an airfoil and is more regular in shape and conformal to the airfoil than glaze ice. It is the ice shape, rather than the clarity or color of the ice, which is most likely to be accurately assessed from the cockpit.
Runback Ice	Ice which forms from the freezing or refreezing of water leaving protected surfaces and running back to unprotected surfaces.
Note– *Ice types are difficult for the pilot to discern and have uncertain effects on an airplane in flight. Ice type definitions will be included in the AIM for use in the “Remarks” section of the PIREP and for use in forecasting.*	

TBL 7–1–8

Icing Conditions

Appendix C Icing Conditions	Appendix C (14 CFR, Part 25 and 29) is the certification icing condition standard for approving ice protection provisions on aircraft. The conditions are specified in terms of altitude, temperature, liquid water content (LWC), representative droplet size (mean effective drop diameter [MED]), and cloud horizontal extent.
Forecast Icing Conditions	Environmental conditions expected by a National Weather Service or an FAA–approved weather provider to be conducive to the formation of inflight icing on aircraft.
Freezing Drizzle (FZDZ)	Drizzle is precipitation at ground level or aloft in the form of liquid water drops which have diameters less than 0.5 mm and greater than 0.05 mm. Freezing drizzle is drizzle that exists at air temperatures less than 0°C (supercooled), remains in liquid form, and freezes upon contact with objects on the surface or airborne.
Freezing Precipitation	Freezing precipitation is freezing rain or freezing drizzle falling through or outside of visible cloud.
Freezing Rain (FZRA)	Rain is precipitation at ground level or aloft in the form of liquid water drops which have diameters greater than 0.5 mm. Freezing rain is rain that exists at air temperatures less than 0°C (supercooled), remains in liquid form, and freezes upon contact with objects on the ground or in the air.
Icing in Cloud	Icing occurring within visible cloud. Cloud droplets (diameter < 0.05 mm) will be present; freezing drizzle and/or freezing rain may or may not be present.
Icing in Precipitation	Icing occurring from an encounter with freezing precipitation, that is, supercooled drops with diameters exceeding 0.05 mm, within or outside of visible cloud.
Known Icing Conditions	Atmospheric conditions in which the formation of ice is observed or detected in flight. ***Note–*** *Because of the variability in space and time of atmospheric conditions, the existence of a report of observed icing does not assure the presence or intensity of icing conditions at a later time, nor can a report of no icing assure the absence of icing conditions at a later time.*
Potential Icing Conditions	Atmospheric icing conditions that are typically defined by airframe manufacturers relative to temperature and visible moisture that may result in aircraft ice accretion on the ground or in flight. The potential icing conditions are typically defined in the Airplane Flight Manual or in the Airplane Operation Manual.
Supercooled Drizzle Drops (SCDD)	Synonymous with freezing drizzle aloft.
Supercooled Drops or /Droplets	Water drops/droplets which remain unfrozen at temperatures below 0°C. Supercooled drops are found in clouds, freezing drizzle, and freezing rain in the atmosphere. These drops may impinge and freeze after contact on aircraft surfaces.
Supercooled Large Drops (SLD)	Liquid droplets with diameters greater than 0.05 mm at temperatures less than 0°C, i.e., freezing rain or freezing drizzle.

7–1–23. PIREPs Relating to Turbulence

a. When encountering turbulence, pilots are urgently requested to report such conditions to ATC as soon as practicable. PIREPs relating to turbulence should state:

1. **Aircraft location.**
2. **Time of occurrence in UTC.**
3. **Turbulence intensity.**
4. **Whether the turbulence occurred in or near clouds.**
5. **Aircraft altitude or flight level.**
6. **Type of aircraft.**
7. **Duration of turbulence.**

EXAMPLE–

1. *Over Omaha, 1232Z, moderate turbulence in clouds at Flight Level three one zero, Boeing 707.*

2. *From five zero miles south of Albuquerque to three zero miles north of Phoenix, 1250Z, occasional moderate chop at Flight Level three three zero, DC8.*

b. Duration and classification of intensity should be made using TBL 7–1–9.

TBL 7–1–9

Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table

Intensity	Aircraft Reaction	Reaction Inside Aircraft	Reporting Term–Definition
Light	Turbulence that momentarily causes slight, erratic changes in altitude and/or attitude (pitch, roll, yaw). Report as **Light Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that causes slight, rapid and somewhat rhythmic bumpiness without appreciable changes in altitude or attitude. Report as **Light Chop.**	Occupants may feel a slight strain against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects may be displaced slightly. Food service may be conducted and little or no difficulty is encountered in walking.	Occasional–Less than $^{1}/_{3}$ of the time. Intermittent–$^{1}/_{3}$ to $^{2}/_{3}$. Continuous–More than $^{2}/_{3}$.
Moderate	Turbulence that is similar to Light Turbulence but of greater intensity. Changes in altitude and/or attitude occur but the aircraft remains in positive control at all times. It usually causes variations in indicated airspeed. Report as **Moderate Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that is similar to Light Chop but of greater intensity. It causes rapid bumps or jolts without appreciable changes in aircraft altitude or attitude. Report as **Moderate Chop.**[1]	Occupants feel definite strains against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are dislodged. Food service and walking are difficult.	**NOTE** 1. Pilots should report location(s), time (UTC), intensity, whether in or near clouds, altitude, type of aircraft and, when applicable, duration of turbulence. 2. Duration may be based on time between two locations or over a single location. All locations should be readily identifiable. **EXAMPLES:** a. Over Omaha. 1232Z, Moderate Turbulence, in cloud, Flight Level 310, B707. b. From 50 miles south of Albuquerque to 30 miles north of Phoenix, 1210Z to 1250Z, occasional Moderate Chop, Flight Level 330, DC8.
Severe	Turbulence that causes large, abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude. It usually causes large variations in indicated airspeed. Aircraft may be momentarily out of control. Report **as Severe Turbulence.** [1]	Occupants are forced violently against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are tossed about. Food Service and walking are impossible.	
Extreme	Turbulence in which the aircraft is violently tossed about and is practically impossible to control. It may cause structural damage. Report as **Extreme Turbulence.** [1]		

[1] High level turbulence (normally above 15,000 feet ASL) not associated with cumuliform cloudiness, including thunderstorms, should be reported as CAT (clear air turbulence) preceded by the appropriate intensity, or light or moderate chop.

7–1–24. Wind Shear PIREPs

a. Because unexpected changes in wind speed and direction can be hazardous to aircraft operations at low altitudes on approach to and departing from airports, pilots are urged to promptly volunteer reports to controllers of wind shear conditions they encounter. An advance warning of this information will assist other pilots in avoiding or coping with a wind shear on approach or departure.

b. When describing conditions, use of the terms "negative" or "positive" wind shear should be avoided. PIREPs of "negative wind shear on final," intended to describe loss of airspeed and lift, have been interpreted to mean that no wind shear was encountered. The recommended method for wind shear reporting is to state the loss or gain of airspeed and the altitudes at which it was encountered.

EXAMPLE–

1. *Denver Tower, Cessna 1234 encountered wind shear, loss of 20 knots at 400.*

2. *Tulsa Tower, American 721 encountered wind shear on final, gained 25 knots between 600 and 400 feet followed by loss of 40 knots between 400 feet and surface.*

1. Pilots who are not able to report wind shear in these specific terms are encouraged to make reports in terms of the effect upon their aircraft.

EXAMPLE–

Miami Tower, Gulfstream 403 Charlie encountered an abrupt wind shear at 800 feet on final, max thrust required.

2. Pilots using Inertial Navigation Systems (INSs) should report the wind and altitude both above and below the shear level.

7–1–25. Clear Air Turbulence (CAT) PIREPs

CAT has become a very serious operational factor to flight operations at all levels and especially to jet traffic flying in excess of 15,000 feet. The best available information on this phenomenon must come from pilots via the PIREP reporting procedures. All pilots encountering CAT conditions are urgently requested to report time, location, and intensity (light, moderate, severe, or extreme) of the element to the FAA facility with which they are maintaining radio contact. If time and conditions permit, elements should be reported according to the standards for other PIREPs and position reports.

REFERENCE–

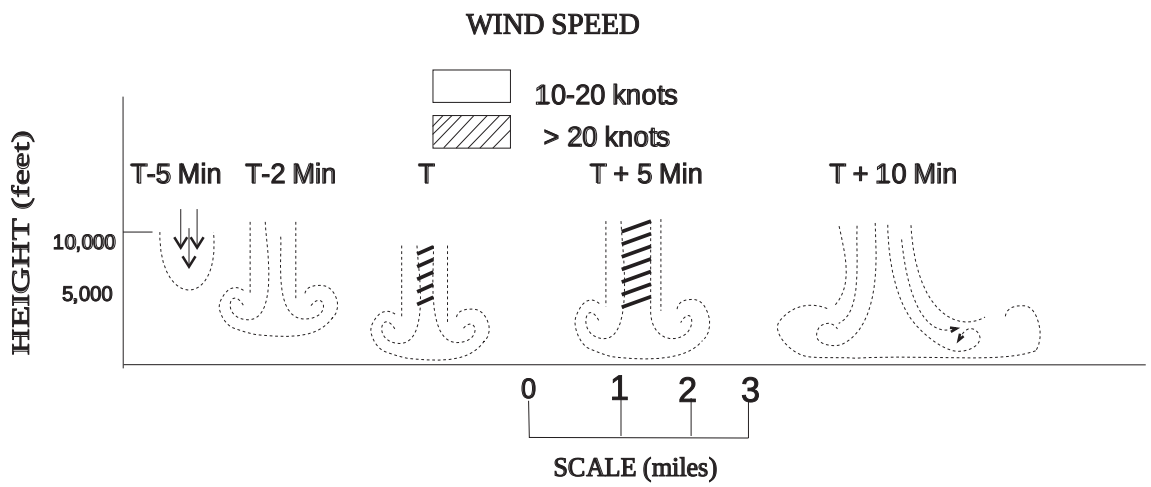
AIM, PIREPs Relating to Turbulence, Paragraph 7–1–23

7–1–26. Microbursts

a. Relatively recent meteorological studies have confirmed the existence of microburst phenomenon. Microbursts are small scale intense downdrafts which, on reaching the surface, spread outward in all directions from the downdraft center. This causes the presence of both vertical and horizontal wind shears that can be extremely hazardous to all types and categories of aircraft, especially at low altitudes. Due to their small size, short life span, and the fact that they can occur over areas without surface precipitation, microbursts are not easily detectable using conventional weather radar or wind shear alert systems.

b. Parent clouds producing microburst activity can be any of the low or middle layer convective cloud types. Note, however, that microbursts commonly occur within the heavy rain portion of thunderstorms, and in much weaker, benign appearing convective cells that have little or no precipitation reaching the ground.

FIG 7–1–14
Evolution of a Microburst



Vertical cross section of the evolution of a microburst wind field. T is the time of initial divergence at the surface. The shading refers to the vector wind speeds. Figure adapted from Wilson et al., 1984, Microburst Wind Structure and Evaluation of Doppler Radar for Wind Shear Detection, DOT/FAA Report No. DOT/FAA/PM-84/29, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 37 pp.

c. The life cycle of a microburst as it descends in a convective rain shaft is seen in FIG 7–1–14. An important consideration for pilots is the fact that the microburst intensifies for about 5 minutes after it strikes the ground.

d. Characteristics of microbursts include:

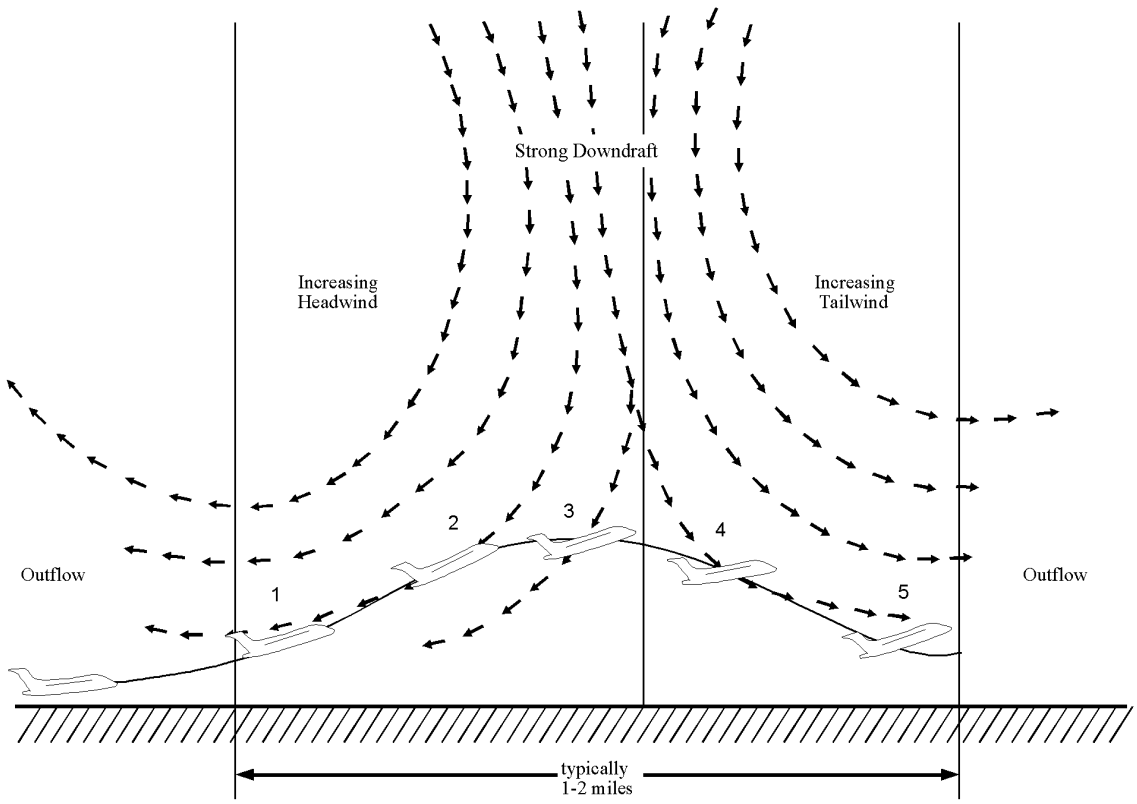
1. Size. The microburst downdraft is typically less than 1 mile in diameter as it descends from the cloud base to about 1,000–3,000 feet above the ground. In the transition zone near the ground, the downdraft changes to a horizontal outflow that can extend to approximately 2 $^1/_2$ miles in diameter.

2. Intensity. The downdrafts can be as strong as 6,000 feet per minute. Horizontal winds near the surface can be as strong as 45 knots resulting in a 90 knot shear (headwind to tailwind change for a traversing aircraft) across the microburst. These strong horizontal winds occur within a few hundred feet of the ground.

3. Visual Signs. Microbursts can be found almost anywhere that there is convective activity. They may be embedded in heavy rain associated with a thunderstorm or in light rain in benign appearing virga. When there is little or no precipitation at the surface accompanying the microburst, a ring of blowing dust may be the only visual clue of its existence.

4. Duration. An individual microburst will seldom last longer than 15 minutes from the time it strikes the ground until dissipation. The horizontal winds continue to increase during the first 5 minutes with the maximum intensity winds lasting approximately 2–4 minutes. Sometimes microbursts are concentrated into a line structure, and under these conditions, activity may continue for as long as an hour. Once microburst activity starts, multiple microbursts in the same general area are not uncommon and should be expected.

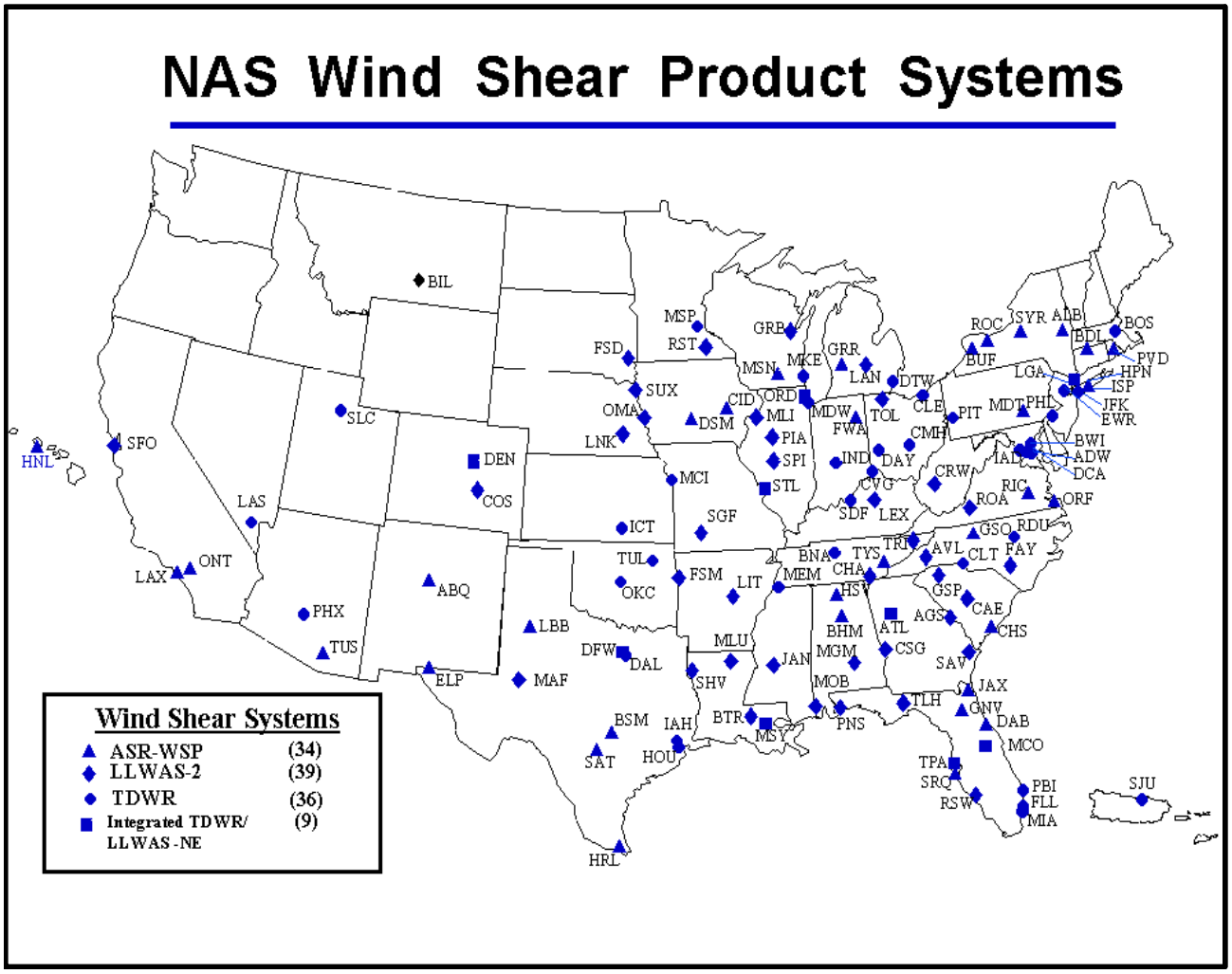
FIG 7−1−15
Microburst Encounter During Takeoff



A microburst encounter during takeoff. The airplane first encounters a headwind and experiences increasing performance (1), this is followed in short succession by a decreasing headwind component (2), a downdraft (3), and finally a strong tailwind (4), where 2 through 5 all result in decreasing performance of the airplane. Position (5) represents an extreme situation just prior to impact. Figure courtesy of Walter Frost, FWG Associates, Inc., Tullahoma, Tennessee.

e. Microburst wind shear may create a severe hazard for aircraft within 1,000 feet of the ground, particularly during the approach to landing and landing and take-off phases. The impact of a microburst on aircraft which have the unfortunate experience of penetrating one is characterized in FIG 7−1−15. The aircraft may encounter a headwind (performance increasing) followed by a downdraft and tailwind (both performance decreasing), possibly resulting in terrain impact.

FIG 7–1–16
NAS Wind Shear Product Systems



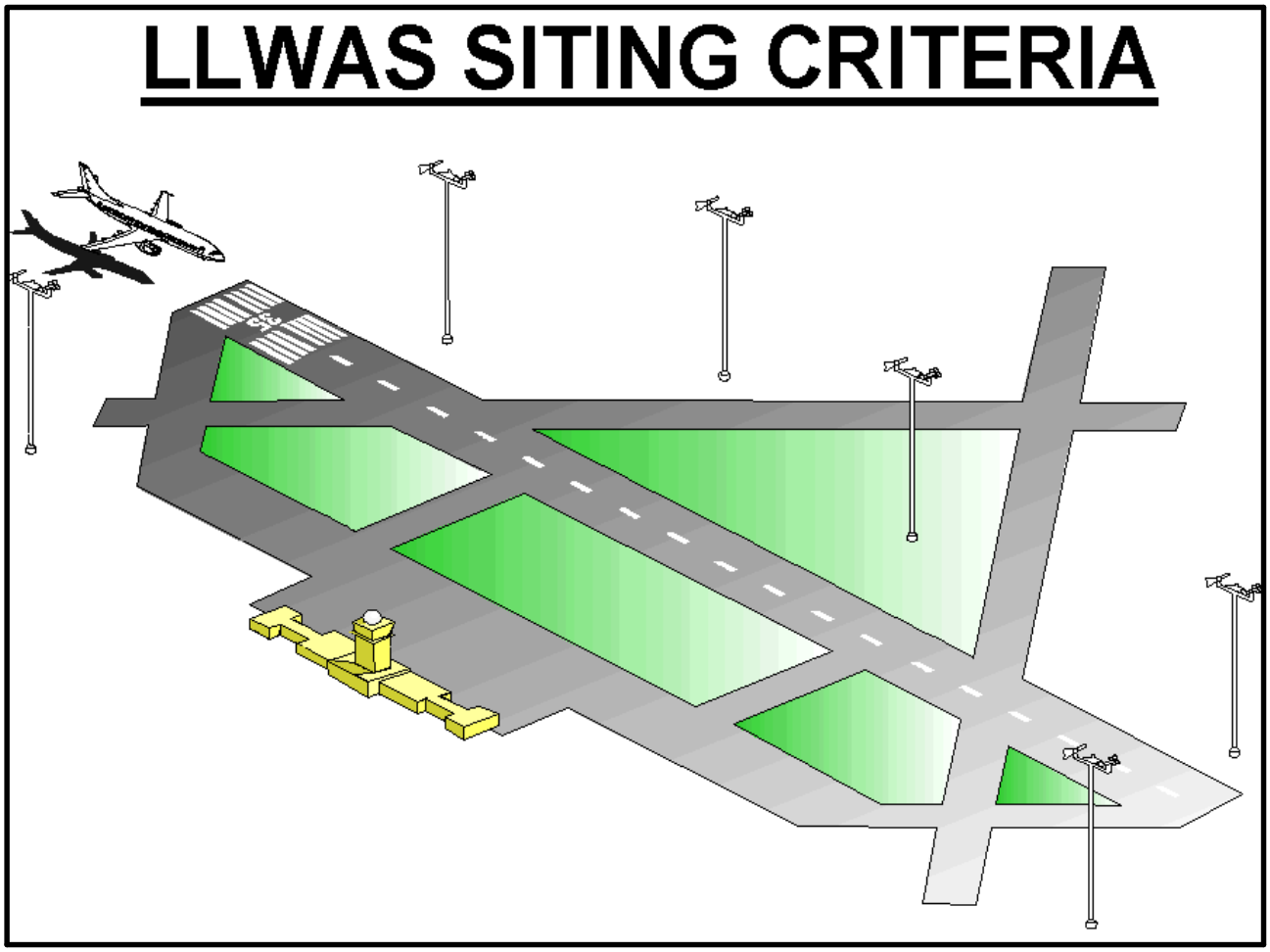
f. Detection of Microbursts, Wind Shear and Gust Fronts.

1. FAA's Integrated Wind Shear Detection Plan.

(a) The FAA currently employs an integrated plan for wind shear detection that will significantly improve both the safety and capacity of the majority of the airports currently served by the air carriers. This plan integrates several programs, such as the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), Weather System Processor (WSP), and Low Level Wind Shear Alert Systems (LLWAS) into a single strategic concept that significantly improves the aviation weather information in the terminal area. (See FIG 7–1–16.)

(b) The wind shear/microburst information and warnings are displayed on the ribbon display terminals (RBDT) located in the tower cabs. They are identical (and standardized) in the LLWAS, TDWR and WSP systems, and so designed that the controller does not need to interpret the data, but simply read the displayed information to the pilot. The RBDTs are constantly monitored by the controller to ensure the rapid and timely dissemination of any hazardous event(s) to the pilot.

FIG 7–1–17
LLWAS Siting Criteria

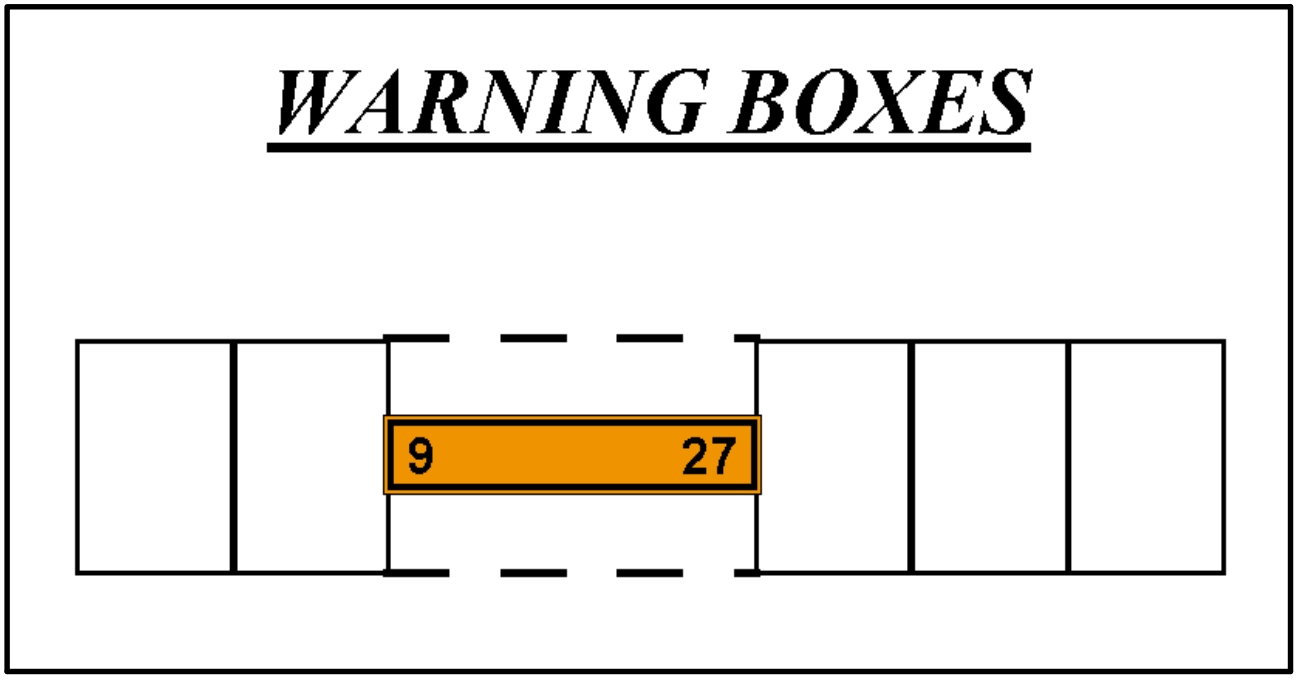


(c) The early detection of a wind shear/micro–burst event, and the subsequent warning(s) issued to an aircraft on approach or departure, will alert the pilot/crew to the potential of, and to be prepared for, a situation that could become very dangerous! Without these warnings, the aircraft may NOT be able to climb out of, or safely transition, the event, resulting in a catastrophe. The air carriers, working with the FAA, have developed specialized training programs using their simulators to train and prepare their pilots on the demanding aircraft procedures required to escape these very dangerous wind shear and/or microburst encounters.

2. Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS).

(a) The LLWAS provides wind data and software processes to detect the presence of hazardous wind shear and microbursts in the vicinity of an airport. Wind sensors, mounted on poles sometimes as high as 150 feet, are (ideally) located 2,000 – 3,500 feet, but not more than 5,000 feet, from the centerline of the runway. (See FIG 7–1–17.)

FIG 7–1–18
Warning Boxes



(b) LLWAS was fielded in 1988 at 110 airports across the nation. Many of these systems have been replaced by new TDWR and WSP technology. Eventually all LLWAS systems will be phased out; however, 39 airports will be upgraded to the LLWAS–NE (Network Expansion) system, which employs the very latest software and sensor technology. The new LLWAS–NE systems will not only provide the controller with wind shear warnings and alerts, including wind shear/microburst detection at the airport wind sensor location, but will also provide the location of the hazards relative to the airport runway(s). It will also have the flexibility and capability to grow with the airport as new runways are built. As many as 32 sensors, strategically located around the airport and in relationship to its runway configuration, can be accommodated by the LLWAS–NE network.

3. Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR).

(a) TDWRs are being deployed at 45 locations across the U.S. Optimum locations for TDWRs are 8 to 12 miles off of the airport proper, and designed to look at the airspace around and over the airport to detect microbursts, gust fronts, wind shifts and precipitation intensities. TDWR products advise the controller of wind shear and microburst events impacting all runways and the areas $^1/_2$ mile on either side of the extended centerline of the runways out to 3 miles on final approach and 2 miles out on departure.
(FIG 7–1–18 is a theoretical view of the warning boxes, including the runway, that the software uses in determining the location(s) of wind shear or microbursts). These warnings are displayed (as depicted in the examples in subparagraph 5) on the RBDT.

(b) It is very important to understand what TDWR does NOT DO:

(1) It **DOES NOT** warn of wind shear outside of the alert boxes (on the arrival and departure ends of the runways);

(2) It **DOES NOT** detect wind shear that is NOT a microburst or a gust front;

(3) It **DOES NOT** detect gusty or cross wind conditions; and

(4) It **DOES NOT** detect turbulence.

However, research and development is continuing on these systems. Future improvements may include such areas as storm motion (movement), improved

gust front detection, storm growth and decay, microburst prediction, and turbulence detection.

(c) TDWR also provides a geographical situation display (GSD) for supervisors and traffic management specialists for planning purposes. The GSD displays (in color) 6 levels of weather (precipitation), gust fronts and predicted storm movement(s). This data is used by the tower supervisor(s), traffic management specialists and controllers to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to both reduce aircraft delays and increase airport capacity.

4. Weather System Processor (WSP).

(a) The WSP provides the controller, supervisor, traffic management specialist, and ultimately the pilot, with the same products as the terminal doppler weather radar (TDWR) at a fraction of the cost of a TDWR. This is accomplished by utilizing new technologies to access the weather channel capabilities of the existing ASR–9 radar located on or near the airport, thus eliminating the requirements for a separate radar location, land acquisition, support facilities and the associated communication landlines and expenses.

(b) The WSP utilizes the same RBDT display as the TDWR and LLWAS, and, just like TDWR, also has a GSD for planning purposes by supervisors, traffic management specialists and controllers. The WSP GSD emulates the TDWR display, i.e., it also depicts 6 levels of precipitation, gust fronts and predicted storm movement, and like the TDWR GSD, is used to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and to increase airport capacity.

(c) This system is currently under development and is operating in a developmental test status at the Albuquerque, New Mexico, airport. When fielded, the WSP is expected to be installed at 34 airports across the nation, substantially increasing the safety of the American flying public.

5. Operational aspects of LLWAS, TDWR and WSP.

To demonstrate how this data is used by both the controller and the pilot, 3 ribbon display examples and their explanations are presented:

(a) MICROBURST ALERTS

EXAMPLE–
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A MBA 35K– 2MF 250 20

NOTE–
(See FIG 7–1–19 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the microburst location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

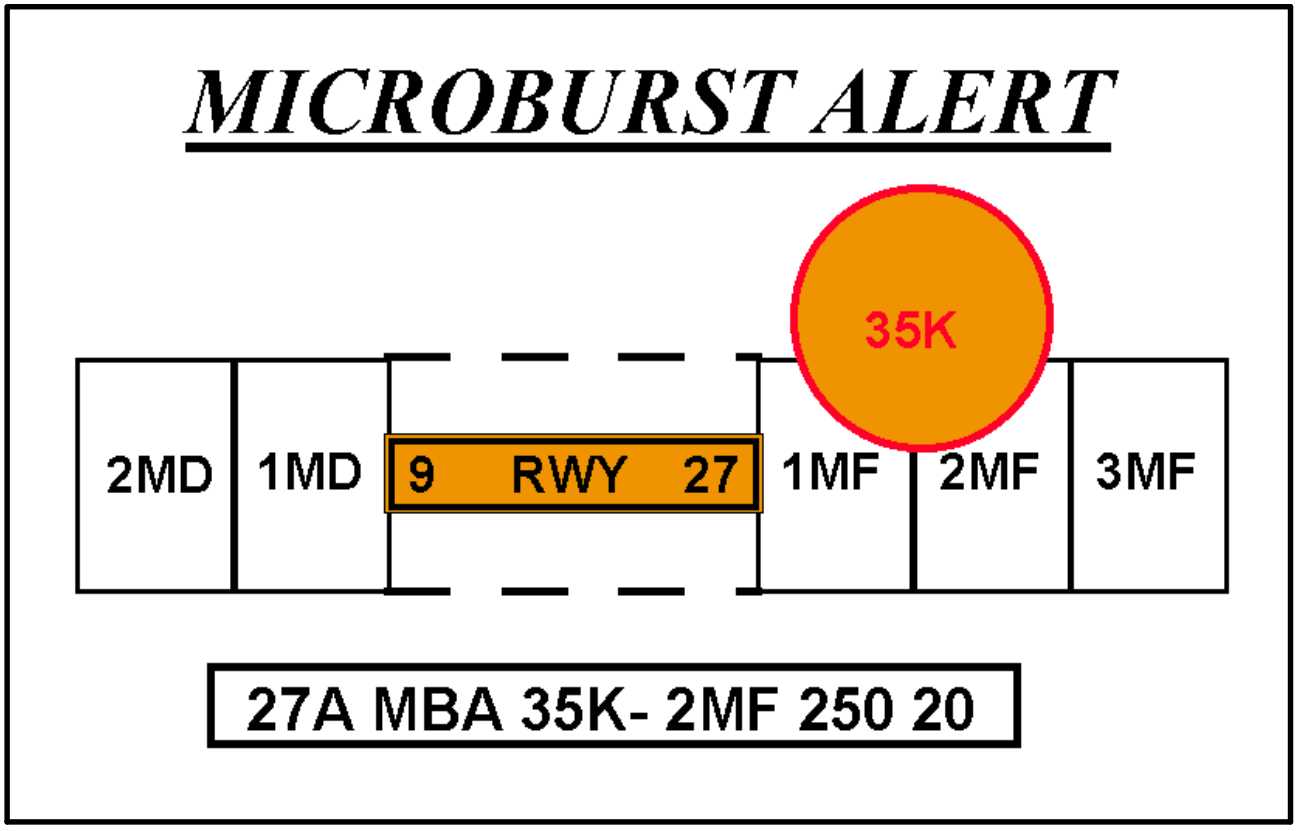
PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, MICROBURST ALERT, 35 KT LOSS 2 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WIND 250 AT 20.

In plain language, the controller is telling the pilot that on approach to runway 27, there is a microburst alert on the approach lane to the runway, and to anticipate or expect a 35 knot loss of airspeed at approximately 2 miles out on final approach (where it will first encounter the phenomena). With that information, the aircrew is forewarned, and should be prepared to apply wind shear/microburst escape procedures should they decide to continue the approach. Additionally, the surface winds at the airport for landing runway 27 are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

NOTE–
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories, Paragraph 3–1–8b2(a).

FIG 7–1–19
Microburst Alert



(b) WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE–
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K– 3MF 200 15

NOTE–
(See FIG 7–1–20 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WIND 200 AT 15.

In plain language, the controller is advising the aircraft arriving on runway 27 that at about 3 miles out they can expect to encounter a wind shear condition that will decrease their airspeed by 20 knots and possibly encounter turbulence. Additionally, the airport surface winds for landing runway 27 are reported as 200 degrees at 15 knots.

NOTE–
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories, Paragraph 3–1–8b2(a).

FIG 7–1–20
Weak Microburst Alert

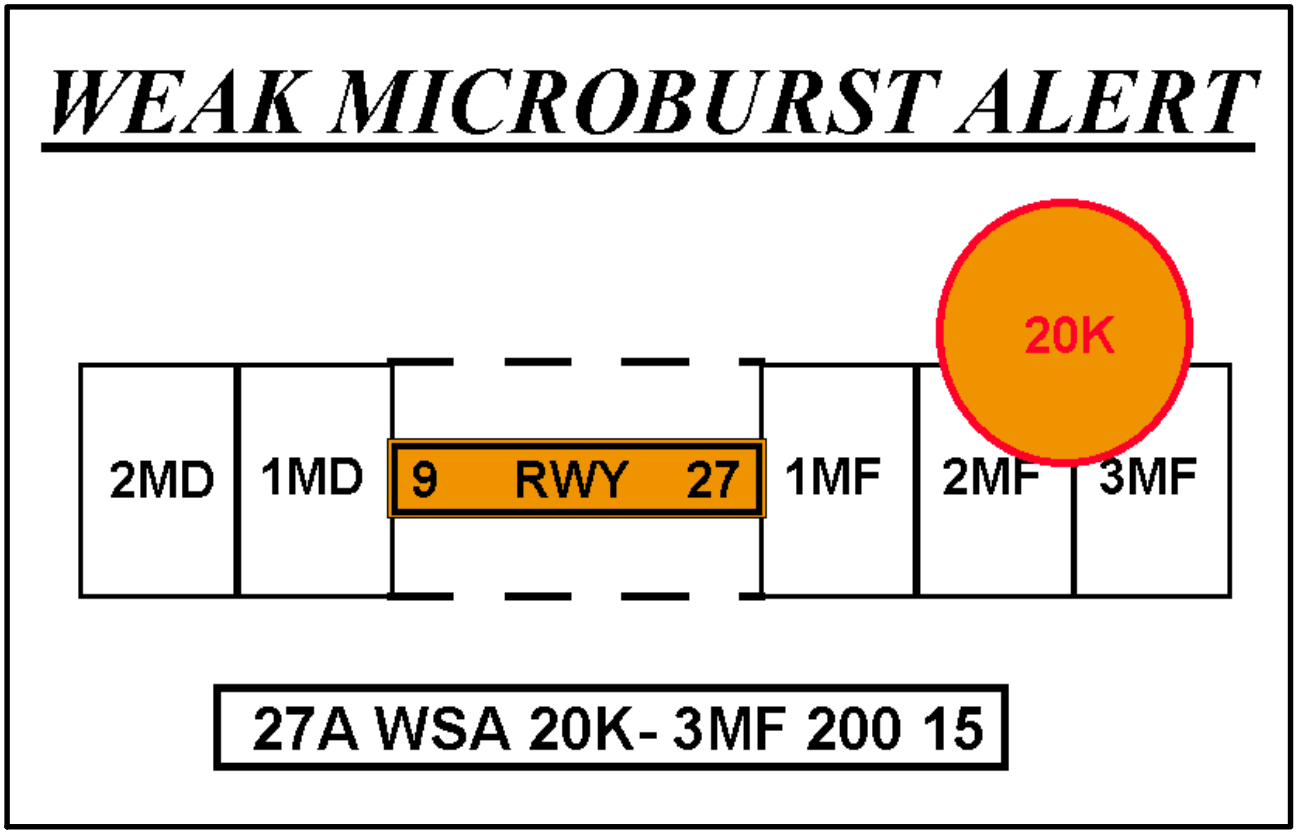
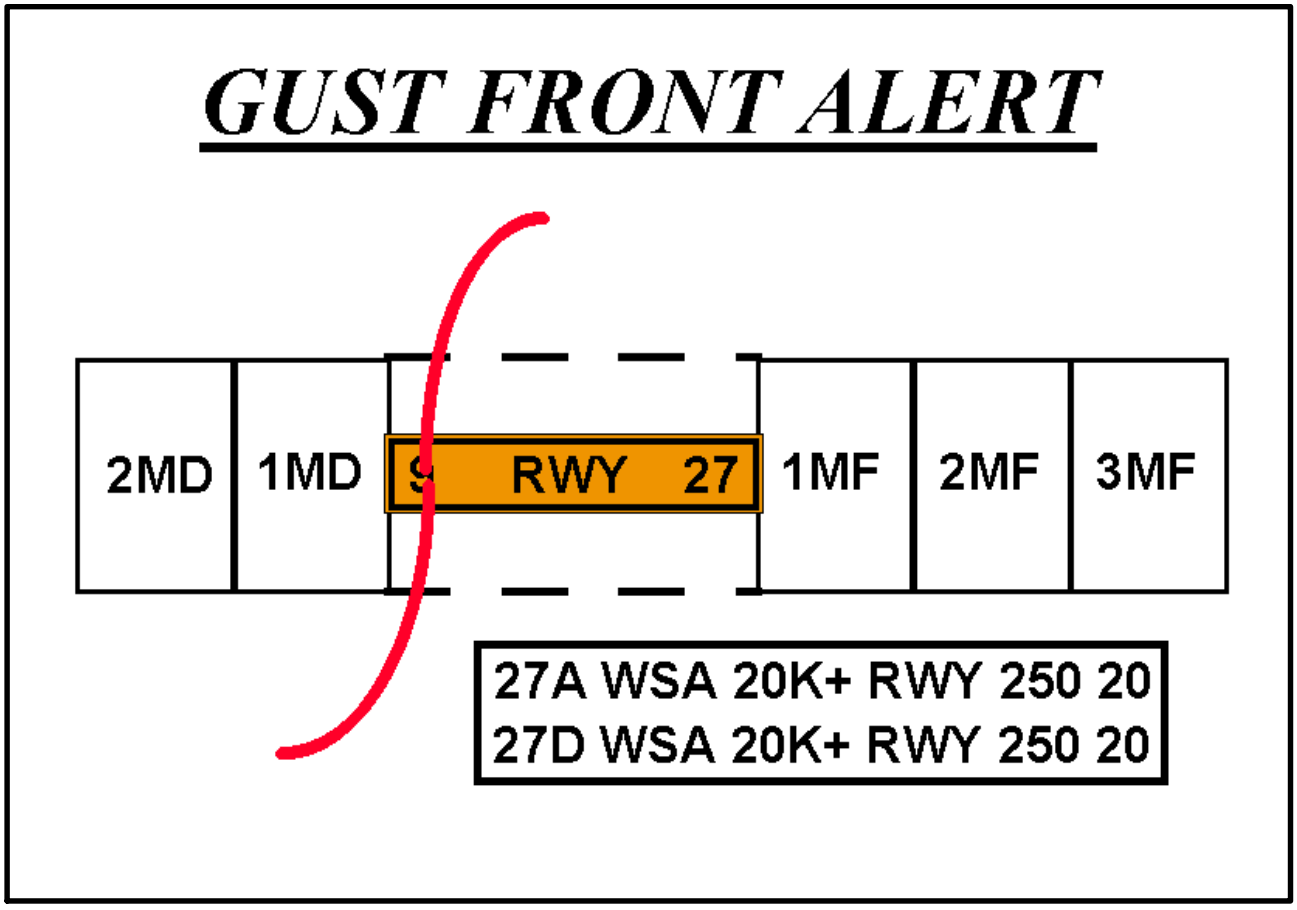


FIG 7–1–21
Gust Front Alert



(c) MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE–
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20
27D WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20

NOTE–
(See FIG 7–1–21 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the gust front/wind shear location.)

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS. RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY; RUNWAY 27 DEPARTURE, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY, WIND 250 AT 20.

EXAMPLE–
In this example, the controller is advising arriving and departing aircraft that they could encounter a wind shear condition right on the runway due to a gust front (significant change of wind direction) with the possibility of a 20 knot gain in airspeed associated with the gust front. Additionally, the airport surface winds (for the runway in use) are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories, Paragraph 3–1–8b2(d).

6. The Terminal Weather Information for Pilots System (TWIP).

(a) With the increase in the quantity and quality of terminal weather information available through TDWR, the next step is to provide this information directly to pilots rather than relying on voice communications from ATC. The National Airspace System has long been in need of a means of delivering terminal weather information to the cockpit more efficiently in terms of both speed and accuracy to enhance pilot awareness of weather hazards and reduce air traffic controller workload. With the TWIP capability, terminal weather information, both alphanumerically and graphically, is now available directly to the cockpit on a test basis at 9 locations.

(b) TWIP products are generated using weather data from the TDWR or the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS) testbed. TWIP products are generated and stored in the form of text and character graphic messages. Software has been developed to allow TDWR or ITWS to format the data and send the TWIP products to a database resident at Aeronautical Radio, Inc. (ARINC). These products can then be accessed by pilots using the ARINC Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) data link services. Airline dispatchers can also access this database and send messages to specific aircraft whenever wind shear activity begins or ends at an airport.

(c) TWIP products include descriptions and character graphics of microburst alerts, wind shear alerts, significant precipitation, convective activity within 30 NM surrounding the terminal area, and expected weather that will impact airport operations. During inclement weather, i.e., whenever a predetermined level of precipitation or wind shear is detected within 15 miles of the terminal area, TWIP products are updated once each minute for text messages and once every five minutes for character graphic messages. During good weather (below the predetermined precipitation or wind shear parameters) each message is updated every 10 minutes. These products are intended to improve the situational awareness of the pilot/flight crew, and to aid in flight planning prior to arriving or departing the terminal area. It is important to understand that, in the context of TWIP, the predetermined levels for inclement versus good weather has nothing to do with the criteria for VFR/MVFR/IFR/LIFR; it only deals with precipitation, wind shears and microbursts.

7–1–27. PIREPs Relating to Volcanic Ash Activity

a. Volcanic eruptions which send ash into the upper atmosphere occur somewhere around the world several times each year. Flying into a volcanic ash cloud can be extremely dangerous. At least two B747s have lost all power in all four engines after such an encounter. Regardless of the type aircraft, some damage is almost certain to ensue after an encounter with a volcanic ash cloud.

b. While some volcanoes in the U.S. are monitored, many in remote areas are not. These unmonitored volcanoes may erupt without prior warning to the aviation community. A pilot observing a volcanic eruption who has not had previous notification of it may be the only witness to the eruption. Pilots are strongly encouraged to transmit a PIREP regarding volcanic eruptions and any observed volcanic ash clouds.

c. Pilots should submit PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the Volcanic Activity Reporting (VAR) form as illustrated in Appendix 2. If a VAR form is not immediately available, relay enough information to identify the position and type of volcanic activity.

d. Pilots should verbally transmit the data required in items 1 through 8 of the VAR as soon as possible. The data required in items 9 through 16 of the VAR should be relayed after landing if possible.

7–1–28. Thunderstorms

a. Turbulence, hail, rain, snow, lightning, sustained updrafts and downdrafts, icing conditions–all are present in thunderstorms. While there is some evidence that maximum turbulence exists at the middle level of a thunderstorm, recent studies show little variation of turbulence intensity with altitude.

b. There is no useful correlation between the external visual appearance of thunderstorms and the severity or amount of turbulence or hail within them. The visible thunderstorm cloud is only a portion of a turbulent system whose updrafts and downdrafts often extend far beyond the visible storm cloud. Severe turbulence can be expected up to 20 miles from severe thunderstorms. This distance decreases to about 10 miles in less severe storms.

c. Weather radar, airborne or ground based, will normally reflect the areas of moderate to heavy precipitation (radar does not detect turbulence). The frequency and severity of turbulence generally increases with the radar reflectivity which is closely associated with the areas of highest liquid water content of the storm. NO FLIGHT PATH THROUGH AN AREA OF STRONG OR VERY STRONG RADAR ECHOES SEPARATED BY 20–30 MILES OR LESS MAY BE CONSIDERED FREE OF SEVERE TURBULENCE.

d. Turbulence beneath a thunderstorm should not be minimized. This is especially true when the relative humidity is low in any layer between the surface and 15,000 feet. Then the lower altitudes may be characterized by strong out flowing winds and severe turbulence.

e. The probability of lightning strikes occurring to aircraft is greatest when operating at altitudes where temperatures are between minus 5 degrees Celsius and plus 5 degrees Celsius. Lightning can strike aircraft flying in the clear in the vicinity of a thunderstorm.

f. METAR reports do not include a descriptor for severe thunderstorms. However, by understanding severe thunderstorm criteria, i.e., 50 knot winds or $^{3}/_{4}$ inch hail, the information is available in the report to know that one is occurring.

g. Current weather radar systems are able to objectively determine precipitation intensity. These precipitation intensity areas are described as “light,” “moderate,” “heavy,” and “extreme.”

REFERENCE–
Pilot/Controller Glossary, Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.

EXAMPLE–
1. *Alert provided by an ATC facility to an aircraft: (aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation between ten o’clock and two o’clock, one five miles. Precipitation area is two five miles in diameter.*

2. *Alert provided by an AFSS/FSS: (aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation two zero miles west of Atlanta V–O–R, two five miles wide, moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero.*

7–1–29. Thunderstorm Flying

a. Above all, remember this: never regard any thunderstorm “lightly” even when radar observers report the echoes are of light intensity. Avoiding thunderstorms is the best policy. Following are some Do’s and Don’ts of thunderstorm avoidance:

1. Don’t land or takeoff in the face of an approaching thunderstorm. A sudden gust front of low level turbulence could cause loss of control.

2. Don’t attempt to fly under a thunderstorm even if you can see through to the other side. Turbulence and wind shear under the storm could be disastrous.

3. Don’t fly without airborne radar into a cloud mass containing scattered embedded thunderstorms. Scattered thunderstorms not embedded usually can be visually circumnavigated.

4. Don’t trust the visual appearance to be a reliable indicator of the turbulence inside a thunderstorm.

5. Do avoid by at least 20 miles any thunderstorm identified as severe or giving an intense radar echo. This is especially true under the anvil of a large cumulonimbus.

6. Do clear the top of a known or suspected severe thunderstorm by at least 1,000 feet altitude for each 10 knots of wind speed at the cloud top. This should exceed the altitude capability of most aircraft.

7. Do circumnavigate the entire area if the area has $^{6}/_{10}$ thunderstorm coverage.

8. Do remember that vivid and frequent lightning indicates the probability of a strong thunderstorm.

9. Do regard as extremely hazardous any thunderstorm with tops 35,000 feet or higher whether the top is visually sighted or determined by radar.

b. If you cannot avoid penetrating a thunderstorm, following are some Do’s before entering the storm:

1. Tighten your safety belt, put on your shoulder harness if you have one and secure all loose objects.

2. Plan and hold your course to take you through the storm in a minimum time.

3. To avoid the most critical icing, establish a penetration altitude below the freezing level or above the level of minus 15 degrees Celsius.

4. Verify that pitot heat is on and turn on carburetor heat or jet engine anti-ice. Icing can be rapid at any altitude and cause almost instantaneous power failure and/or loss of airspeed indication.

5. Establish power settings for turbulence penetration airspeed recommended in your aircraft manual.

6. Turn up cockpit lights to highest intensity to lessen temporary blindness from lightning.

7. If using automatic pilot, disengage altitude hold mode and speed hold mode. The automatic altitude and speed controls will increase maneuvers of the aircraft thus increasing structural stress.

8. If using airborne radar, tilt the antenna up and down occasionally. This will permit you to detect other thunderstorm activity at altitudes other than the one being flown.

c. Following are some Do's and Don'ts during the thunderstorm penetration:

1. Do keep your eyes on your instruments. Looking outside the cockpit can increase danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

2. Don't change power settings; maintain settings for the recommended turbulence penetration airspeed.

3. Don't attempt to maintain constant altitude; let the aircraft "ride the waves."

4. Don't turn back once you are in the thunderstorm. A straight course through the storm most likely will get you out of the hazards most quickly. In addition, turning maneuvers increase stress on the aircraft.

7–1–30. Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR)

FIG 7–1–22

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Front)

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Front)

TAF	KPIT 091730Z 0918/1024 15005KT 5SM HZ FEW020 WS010/31022KT FM091930 30015G25KT 3SM SHRA OVC015 TEMPO 0920/0922 1/2SM +TSRA OVC008CB FM100100 27008KT 5SM SHRA BKN020 OVC040 PROB30 1004/1007 1SM -RA BR FM101015 18005KT 6SM -SHRA OVC020 BECMG 1013/1015 P6SM NSW SKC
NOTE: Users are cautioned to confirm ***DATE*** and ***TIME*** of the TAF. For example FM**10**0000 is 0000Z on the **10th**. Do not confuse with ***1000Z!***	
METAR KPIT 091955Z COR 22015G25KT 3/4SM R28L/2600FT TSRA OVC010CB 18/16 A2992 RMK SLP045 T01820159	

Forecast	Explanation	Report
TAF	Message type: TAF-routine or TAF AMD-amended forecast, METAR-hourly, SPECI-special or TESTM-non-commissioned ASOS report	**METAR**
KPIT	ICAO location indicator	**KPIT**
091730Z	Issuance time: ALL times in UTC "Z", 2-digit date, 4-digit time	**091955Z**
0918/1024	Valid period, either 24 hours or 30 hours. The first two digits of EACH four digit number indicate the date of the valid period, the final two digits indicate the time (valid from 18Z on the 9th to 24Z on the 10th).	
	In U.S. METAR: CORrected ob; or AUTOmated ob for automated report with no human intervention; omitted when observer logs on.	**COR**
15005KT	Wind: 3 digit true-north direction, nearest 10 degrees (or VaRiaBle); next 2-3 digits for speed and unit, KT (KMH or MPS); as needed, Gust and maximum speed; 00000KT for calm; for METAR, if direction varies 60 degrees or more, Variability appended, e.g., 180V260	**22015G25KT**
5SM	Prevailing visibility; in U.S., Statute Miles & fractions; above 6 miles in TAF Plus6SM. (Or, 4-digit minimum visibility in meters and as required, lowest value with direction)	**¾SM**
	Runway Visual Range: R; 2-digit runway designator Left, Center, or Right as needed; "/", Minus or Plus in U.S., 4-digit value, FeeT in U.S., (usually meters elsewhere); 4-digit value Variability 4-digit value (and tendency Down, Up or No change)	**R28L/2600FT**
HZ	Significant present, forecast and recent weather: see table (on back)	**TSRA**
FEW020	Cloud amount, height and type: Sky Clear 0/8, FEW >0/8-2/8, ScaTtered 3/8-4/8, BroKeN 5/8-7/8, OverCast 8/8; 3-digit height in hundreds of ft; Towering Cumulus or CumulonimBus in **METAR**; in **TAF**, only CB. Vertical Visibility for obscured sky and height "VV004". More than 1 layer may be reported or forecast. In automated **METAR** reports only, ClearR for "clear below 12,000 feet"	**OVC 010CB**
	Temperature: degrees Celsius; first 2 digits, temperature "/" last 2 digits, dew-point temperature; Minus for below zero, e.g., M06	**18/16**
	Altimeter setting: indicator and 4 digits; in U.S., A-inches and hundredths; (Q-hectoPascals, e.g., Q1013)	**A2992**
WS010/31022KT	In U.S. **TAF**, non-convective low-level (≤2,000 ft) Wind Shear; 3-digit height (hundreds of ft); "/"; 3-digit wind direction and 2-3 digit wind speed above the indicated height, and unit, KT	

FIG 7–1–23

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Back)

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Back)

	In **METAR**, ReMarK indicator & remarks. For example: Sea- Level Pressure in hectoPascals & tenths, as shown: 1004.5 hPa; Temp/ dew-point in tenths °C, as shown: temp. 18.2°C, dew-point 15.9°C	**RMK SLP045 T01820159**
FM091930	FroM: changes are expected at: 2-digit date, 2-digit hour, and 2-digit minute beginning time: indicates significant change. Each FM starts on a new line, indented 5 spaces	
TEMPO 0920/0922	TEMPOrary: changes expected for <1 hour and in total, < half of the period between the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour beginning, and 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	
PROB30 1004/1007	PROBability and 2-digit percent (30 or 40): probable condition in the period between the 2-digit date & 2-digit hour beginning time, and the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	
BECMG 1013/1015	BECoMinG: change expected in the period between the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour beginning time, and the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	

Table of Significant Present, Forecast and Recent Weather - Grouped in categories and used in the order listed below; or as needed in TAF, No Significant Weather.

Qualifiers			
Intensity or Proximity			
"-" = Light	**No sign** = Moderate	**"+"** = Heavy	
"VC" = Vicinity, but not at aerodrome. In the US METAR, 5 to 10 SM from the point of observation. In the US TAF, 5 to 10 SM from the center of the runway complex. Elsewhere, within 8000m.			
Descriptor			
BC – Patches	**BL** – Blowing	**DR** – Drifting	**FZ** – Freezing
MI – Shallow	**PR** – Partial	**SH** – Showers	**TS** – Thunderstorm
Weather Phenomena			
Precipitation			
DZ – Drizzle	**GR** – Hail	**GS** – Small Hail/Snow Pellets	
IC – Ice Crystals	**PL** – Ice Pellets	**RA** – Rain	**SG** – Snow Grains
SN – Snow	**UP** – Unknown Precipitation in automated observations		
Obscuration			
BR – Mist (≥5/8SM)	**DU** – Widespread Dust	**FG** – Fog (<5/8SM)	**FU** – Smoke
HZ – Haze	**PY** – Spray	**SA** – Sand	**VA** – Volcanic Ash
Other			
DS – Dust Storm	**FC** – Funnel Cloud	**+FC** – Tornado or Waterspout	
PO – Well developed dust or sand whirls		**SQ** – Squall	**SS** – Sandstorm

- Explanations in parentheses "()" indicate different worldwide practices.
- Ceiling is not specified; defined as the lowest broken or overcast layer, or the vertical visibility.
- NWS TAFs exclude BECMG groups and temperature forecasts, NWS TAFS do not use PROB in the first 9 hours of a TAF; NWS METARs exclude trend forecasts. US Military TAFs include Turbulence and Icing groups.

7–1–31. International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Weather Formats

The U.S. uses the ICAO world standard for aviation weather reporting and forecasting. The utilization of terminal forecasts affirms our commitment to a single global format for aviation weather. The World Meteorological Organization's (WMO) publication No. 782 "Aerodrome Reports and Forecasts" contains the base METAR and TAF code as adopted by the WMO member countries.

a. Although the METAR code is adopted worldwide, each country is allowed to make modifications or exceptions to the code for use in their particular country, e.g., the U.S. will continue to use statute miles for visibility, feet for RVR values, knots for wind speed, and inches of mercury for altimetry. However, temperature and dew point will be reported in degrees Celsius. The U.S. will continue reporting prevailing visibility rather than lowest sector visibility. Most of the current U.S. observing procedures and policies will continue after the METAR conversion date, with the information disseminated in the METAR code and format. The elements in the body of a METAR report are separated with a space. The only exceptions are RVR, temperature and dew point, which are separated with a solidus (/). When an element does not occur, or cannot be observed, the preceding space and that element are omitted from that particular report. A METAR report contains the following sequence of elements in the following order:

1. **Type of report.**
2. **ICAO Station Identifier.**
3. **Date and time of report.**
4. **Modifier (as required).**
5. **Wind.**
6. **Visibility.**
7. **Runway Visual Range (RVR).**
8. **Weather phenomena.**
9. **Sky conditions.**
10. **Temperature/dew point group.**
11. **Altimeter.**
12. **Remarks (RMK).**

b. The following paragraphs describe the elements in a METAR report.

1. Type of report. There are two types of report:

(a) Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR); and

(b) Nonroutine (Special) Aviation Weather Report (SPECI).

The type of report (METAR or SPECI) will always appear as the lead element of the report.

2. ICAO Station Identifier. The METAR code uses ICAO 4–letter station identifiers. In the contiguous 48 States, the 3–letter domestic station identifier is prefixed with a "K;" i.e., the domestic identifier for Seattle is SEA while the ICAO identifier is KSEA. Elsewhere, the first two letters of the ICAO identifier indicate what region of the world and country (or state) the station is in. For Alaska, all station identifiers start with "PA;" for Hawaii, all station identifiers start with "PH." Canadian station identifiers start with "CU," "CW," "CY," and "CZ." Mexican station identifiers start with "MM." The identifier for the western Caribbean is "M" followed by the individual country's letter; i.e., Cuba is "MU;" Dominican Republic "MD;" the Bahamas "MY." The identifier for the eastern Caribbean is "T" followed by the individual country's letter; i.e., Puerto Rico is "TJ." For a complete worldwide listing see ICAO Document 7910, Location Indicators.

3. Date and Time of Report. The date and time the observation is taken are transmitted as a six–digit date/time group appended with Z to denote Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The first two digits are the date followed with two digits for hour and two digits for minutes.

EXAMPLE–
172345Z (the 17th day of the month at 2345Z)

4. Modifier (As Required). "AUTO" identifies a METAR/SPECI report as an automated weather report with no human intervention. If "AUTO" is shown in the body of the report, the type of sensor equipment used at the station will be encoded in the remarks section of the report. The absence of "AUTO" indicates that a report was made manually by an observer or that an automated report had human augmentation/backup. The modifier "COR" indicates a corrected report that is sent out to replace an earlier report with an error.

NOTE–
There are two types of automated stations, AO1 for automated weather reporting stations without a precipitation discriminator, and AO2 for automated stations with a precipitation discriminator. (A precipitation discriminator can determine the difference between liquid and frozen/freezing precipitation). This information appears in the remarks section of an automated report.

5. Wind. The wind is reported as a five digit group (six digits if speed is over 99 knots). The first three digits are the direction the wind is blowing from, in tens of degrees referenced to true north, or "VRB" if the direction is variable. The next two digits is the wind speed in knots, or if over 99 knots, the next three digits. If the wind is gusty, it is reported as a "G" after the speed followed by the highest gust reported. The abbreviation "KT" is appended to denote the use of knots for wind speed.

EXAMPLE–
13008KT – wind from 130 degrees at 8 knots
08032G45KT – wind from 080 degrees at 32 knots with gusts to 45 knots
VRB04KT – wind variable in direction at 4 knots
00000KT – wind calm
210103G130KT – wind from 210 degrees at 103 knots with gusts to 130 knots
If the wind direction is variable by 60 degrees or more and the speed is greater than 6 knots, a variable group consisting of the extremes of the wind direction separated by a "v" will follow the prevailing wind group.
32012G22KT 280V350

(a) Peak Wind. Whenever the peak wind exceeds 25 knots "PK WND" will be included in Remarks, e.g., PK WND 28045/1955 "Peak wind two eight zero at four five occurred at one niner five five." If the hour can be inferred from the report time, only the minutes will be appended, e.g., PK WND 34050/38 "Peak wind three four zero at five zero occurred at three eight past the hour."

(b) Wind shift. Whenever a wind shift occurs, "WSHFT" will be included in remarks followed by the time the wind shift began, e.g., WSHFT 30 FROPA "Wind shift at three zero due to frontal passage."

6. Visibility. Prevailing visibility is reported in statute miles with "SM" appended to it.

EXAMPLE–
7SM – seven statute miles
15SM – fifteen statute miles
$^1/_2$SM – one–half statute mile

(a) Tower/surface visibility. If either visibility (tower or surface) is below four statute miles, the lesser of the two will be reported in the body of the report; the greater will be reported in remarks.

(b) Automated visibility. ASOS/AWSS visibility stations will show visibility 10 or greater than 10 miles as "10SM." AWOS visibility stations will show visibility less than $^1/_4$ statute mile as "M$^1/_4$SM" and visibility 10 or greater than 10 miles as "10SM."

(c) Variable visibility. Variable visibility is shown in remarks (when rapid increase or decrease by $^1/_2$ statute mile or more and the average prevailing visibility is less than three miles) e.g., VIS 1V2 "visibility variable between one and two."

(d) Sector visibility. Sector visibility is shown in remarks when it differs from the prevailing visibility, and either the prevailing or sector visibility is less than three miles.

EXAMPLE–
VIS N2 – visibility north two

7. Runway Visual Range (When Reported). "R" identifies the group followed by the runway heading (and parallel runway designator, if needed) "/" and the visual range in feet (meters in other countries) followed with "FT" (feet is not spoken).

(a) Variability Values. When RVR varies (by more than on reportable value), the lowest and highest values are shown with "V" between them.

(b) Maximum/Minimum Range. "P" indicates an observed RVR is above the maximum value for this system (spoken as "more than"). "M" indicates an observed RVR is below the minimum value which can be determined by the system (spoken as "less than").

EXAMPLE–
R32L/1200FT – runway three two left R–V–R one thousand two hundred.
R27R/M1000V4000FT – runway two seven right R–V–R variable from less than one thousand to four thousand.

8. Weather Phenomena. The weather as reported in the METAR code represents a significant change in the way weather is currently reported. In METAR, weather is reported in the format:

Intensity/Proximity/Descriptor/Precipitation/Obstruction to visibility/Other

NOTE–
The "/" above and in the following descriptions (except as the separator between the temperature and dew point) are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual METARs.

(a) Intensity applies only to the first type of precipitation reported. A "–" denotes light, no symbol denotes moderate, and a "+" denotes heavy.

(b) Proximity applies to and reported only for weather occurring in the vicinity of the airport (between 5 and 10 miles of the point(s) of observation). It is denoted by the letters "VC." (Intensity and "VC" will not appear together in the weather group).

(c) Descriptor. These eight descriptors apply to the precipitation or obstructions to visibility:

TS . . . . . thunderstorm
DR . . . . . low drifting
SH . . . . . showers
MI . . . . . shallow
FZ . . . . . freezing
BC . . . . . patches
BL . . . . . blowing
PR . . . . . partial

NOTE–
*Although "TS" and "SH" are used with precipitation and may be preceded with an intensity symbol, the intensity still applies to the precipitation, **not** the descriptor.*

(d) Precipitation. There are nine types of precipitation in the METAR code:

RA . . . . . rain
DZ . . . . . drizzle
SN . . . . . snow
GR . . . . . hail ($^1/_4$" or greater)
GS . . . . . small hail/snow pellets
PL . . . . . ice pellets
SG . . . . . snow grains
IC . . . . . ice crystals (diamond dust)
UP . . . . . unknown precipitation (automated stations only)

(e) Obstructions to visibility. There are eight types of obscuration phenomena in the METAR code (obscurations are any phenomena in the atmosphere, other than precipitation, that reduce horizontal visibility):

FG . . . . . fog (vsby less than $^5/_8$ mile)
HZ . . . . . haze
FU . . . . . smoke
PY . . . . . spray
BR . . . . . mist (vsby $^5/_8$ – 6 miles)
SA . . . . . sand
DU . . . . . dust
VA . . . . . volcanic ash

NOTE–
Fog (FG) is observed or forecast only when the visibility is less than five–eighths of mile, otherwise mist (BR) is observed or forecast.

(f) Other. There are five categories of other weather phenomena which are reported when they occur:

SQ . . . . . squall
SS . . . . . sandstorm
DS . . . . . duststorm
PO . . . . . dust/sand whirls
FC . . . . . funnel cloud
+FC . . . . . tornado/waterspout

Examples:

TSRA . . . . . thunderstorm with moderate rain
+SN . . . . . heavy snow
–RA FG . . . . . light rain and fog
BRHZ . . . . . mist and haze (visibility $^5/_8$ mile or greater)
FZDZ . . . . . freezing drizzle
VCSH . . . . . rain shower in the vicinity
+SHRASNPL . . heavy rain showers, snow, ice pellets (intensity indicator refers to the predominant rain)

9. Sky Condition. The sky condition as reported in METAR represents a significant change from the way sky condition is currently reported. In METAR, sky condition is reported in the format:

Amount/Height/(Type) or Indefinite Ceiling/Height

(a) Amount. The amount of sky cover is reported in eighths of sky cover, using the contractions:

SKC . . . . . clear (no clouds)
FEW . . . . . >0 to $^{2}/_{8}$
SCT . . . . . scattered ($^{3}/_{8s}$ to $^{4}/_{8s}$ of clouds)
BKN . . . . . broken ($^{5}/_{8s}$ to $^{7}/_{8s}$ of clouds)
OVC . . . . . overcast ($^{8}/_{8s}$ clouds)
CB . . . . . Cumulonimbus when present
TCU . . . . . Towering cumulus when present

NOTE–
1. *"SKC" will be reported at manual stations. "CLR" will be used at automated stations when no clouds below 12,000 feet are reported.*

2. A *ceiling layer is not designated in the METAR code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest broken or overcast layer, or vertical visibility into an obscuration. Also there is no provision for reporting thin layers in the METAR code. When clouds are thin, that layer shall be reported as if it were opaque.*

(b) Height. Cloud bases are reported with three digits in hundreds of feet. (Clouds above 12,000 feet cannot be reported by an automated station).

(c) (Type). If Towering Cumulus Clouds (TCU) or Cumulonimbus Clouds (CB) are present, they are reported after the height which represents their base.

EXAMPLE–
(Reported as) SCT025TCU BKN080 BKN250 (spoken as) "TWO THOUSAND FIVE HUNDRED SCATTERED TOWERING CUMULUS, CEILING EIGHT THOUSAND BROKEN, TWO FIVE THOUSAND BROKEN."
(Reported as) SCT008 OVC012CB (spoken as) "EIGHT HUNDRED SCATTERED CEILING ONE THOUSAND TWO HUNDRED OVERCAST CUMULONIMBUS CLOUDS."

(d) Vertical Visibility (indefinite ceiling height). The height into an indefinite ceiling is preceded by "VV" and followed by three digits indicating the vertical visibility in hundreds of feet. This layer indicates <u>total obscuration</u>.

EXAMPLE–
$^{1}/_{8}$ SM FG VV006 – visibility one eighth, fog, indefinite ceiling six hundred.

(e) Obscurations are reported when the sky is <u>partially obscured</u> by a ground–based phenomena by indicating the amount of obscuration as FEW, SCT, BKN followed by three zeros (000). In remarks, the obscuring phenomenon precedes the amount of obscuration and three zeros.

EXAMPLE–
BKN000 (in body) . . . . . "sky partially obscured"
FU BKN000 (in remarks) . . . "smoke obscuring five–to seven–eighths of the sky"

(f) When sky conditions include a layer aloft, other than clouds, such as smoke or haze the type of phenomena, sky cover and height are shown in remarks.

EXAMPLE–
BKN020 (in body) . . . . . "ceiling two thousand broken"
RMK FU BKN020 . . . . . "broken layer of smoke aloft, based at two thousand"

(g) Variable ceiling. When a ceiling is below three thousand and is variable, the remark "CIG" will be shown followed with the lowest and highest ceiling heights separated by a "V."

EXAMPLE–
CIG 005V010 . . . . . "ceiling variable between five hundred and one thousand"

(h) Second site sensor. When an automated station uses meteorological discontinuity sensors, remarks will be shown to identify site specific sky conditions which differ and are lower than conditions reported in the body.

EXAMPLE–
CIG 020 RY11 . . . . . "ceiling two thousand at runway one one"

(i) Variable cloud layer. When a layer is varying in sky cover, remarks will show the variability range. If there is more than one cloud layer, the variable layer will be identified by including the layer height.

EXAMPLE–
SCT V BKN . . . . . "scattered layer variable to broken"
BKN025 V OVC . . . . . "broken layer at two thousand five hundred variable to overcast"

(j) Significant clouds. When significant clouds are observed, they are shown in remarks, along with the specified information as shown below:

(1) Cumulonimbus (CB), or Cumulonimbus Mammatus (CBMAM), distance (if known), direction from the station, and direction of movement, if known. If the clouds are beyond 10 miles from the airport, DSNT will indicate distance.

EXAMPLE–

CB W MOV E	*"cumulonimbus west moving east"*
CBMAM DSNT S	*"cumulonimbus mammatus distant south"*

(2) Towering Cumulus (TCU), location, (if known), or direction from the station.

EXAMPLE–

TCU OHD	*"towering cumulus overhead"*
TCU W	*"towering cumulus west"*

(3) Altocumulus Castellanus (ACC), Stratocumulus Standing Lenticular (SCSL), Altocumulus Standing Lenticular (ACSL), Cirrocumulus Standing Lenticular (CCSL) or rotor clouds, describing the clouds (if needed) and the direction from the station.

EXAMPLE–

ACC W	*"altocumulus castellanus west"*
ACSL SW–S	*"standing lenticular altocumulus southwest through south"*
APRNT ROTOR CLD S	*"apparent rotor cloud south"*
CCSL OVR MT E	*"standing lenticular cirrocumulus over the mountains east"*

10. Temperature/Dew Point. Temperature and dew point are reported in two, two-digit groups in degrees Celsius, separated by a solidus ("/"). Temperatures below zero are prefixed with an "M." If the temperature is available but the dew point is missing, the temperature is shown followed by a solidus. If the temperature is missing, the group is omitted from the report.

EXAMPLE–

15/08	*"temperature one five, dew point 8"*
00/M02	*"temperature zero, dew point minus 2"*
M05/	*"temperature minus five, dew point missing"*

11. Altimeter. Altimeter settings are reported in a four-digit format in inches of mercury prefixed with an "A" to denote the units of pressure.

EXAMPLE–
A2995 – "Altimeter two niner niner five"

12. Remarks. Remarks will be included in all observations, when appropriate. The contraction "RMK" denotes the start of the remarks section of a METAR report.

Except for precipitation, phenomena located within 5 statute miles of the point of observation will be reported as at the station. Phenomena between 5 and 10 statute miles will be reported in the vicinity, "VC." Precipitation not occurring at the point of observation but within 10 statute miles is also reported as in the vicinity, "VC." Phenomena beyond 10 statute miles will be shown as distant, "DSNT." Distances are in statute miles except for automated lightning remarks which are in nautical miles. Movement of clouds or weather will be indicated by the direction toward which the phenomena is moving.

(a) There are two categories of remarks:

(1) Automated, manual, and plain language.

(2) Additive and automated maintenance data.

(b) Automated, Manual, and Plain Language. This group of remarks may be generated from either manual or automated weather reporting stations and generally elaborate on parameters reported in the body of the report. (Plain language remarks are only provided by manual stations).

(1) Volcanic eruptions.

(2) Tornado, Funnel Cloud, Waterspout.

(3) Station Type (AO1 or AO2).

(4) PK WND.

(5) WSHFT (FROPA).

(6) TWR VIS or SFC VIS.

(7) VRB VIS.

(8) Sector VIS.

(9) VIS @ 2nd Site.

(10) (freq) LTG (type) (loc).

(11) Beginning/Ending of Precipitation/ TSTMS.

(12) TSTM Location MVMT.

(13) Hailstone Size (GR).

(14) Virga.

(15) VRB CIG (height).

(16) Obscuration.

(17) VRB Sky Condition.

(18) Significant Cloud Types.

(19) Ceiling Height 2nd Location.

(20) PRESFR PRESRR.

(21) Sea–Level Pressure.

(22) ACFT Mishap (not transmitted).

(23) NOSPECI.

(24) SNINCR.

(25) Other SIG Info.

(c) Additive and Automated Maintenance Data.

(1) Hourly Precipitation.

(2) 3– and 6–Hour Precipitation Amount.

(3) 24–Hour Precipitation.

(4) Snow Depth on Ground.

(5) Water Equivalent of Snow.

(6) Cloud Type.

(7) Duration of Sunshine.

(8) Hourly Temperature/Dew Point (Tenths).

(9) 6–Hour Maximum Temperature.

(10) 6–Hour Minimum Temperature.

(11) 24–Hour Maximum/Minimum Temperature.

(12) Pressure Tendency.

(13) Sensor Status.
PWINO
FZRANO
TSNO
RVRNO
PNO
VISNO

Examples of METAR reports and explanation:

METAR KBNA 281250Z 33018KT 290V360 1/2SM R31/2700FT SN BLSN FG VV008 00/M03 A2991 RMK RAE42SNB42

METAR . . . . . aviation routine weather report
KBNA . . . . . Nashville, TN
281250Z . . . . . date 28th, time 1250 UTC
(no modifier) . . This is a manually generated report, due to the absence of “AUTO” and “AO1 or AO2” in remarks
33018KT . . . . . wind three three zero at one eight
290V360 . . . . . wind variable between two nine zero and three six zero
1/2SM . . . . . visibility one half
R31/2700FT . . . Runway three one RVR two thousand seven hundred
SN . . . . . moderate snow
BLSN FG . . . . . visibility obscured by blowing snow and fog
VV008 . . . . . indefinite ceiling eight hundred
00/M03 . . . . . temperature zero, dew point minus three
A2991 . . . . . altimeter two niner niner one
RMK . . . . . remarks
RAE42 . . . . . rain ended at four two
SNB42 . . . . . snow began at four two

METAR KSFO 041453Z AUTO VRB02KT 3SM BR CLR 15/12 A3012 RMK AO2

METAR . . . . . aviation routine weather report
KSFO . . . . . San Francisco, CA
041453Z . . . . . date 4th, time 1453 UTC
AUTO . . . . . fully automated; no human intervention
VRB02KT . . . . wind variable at two
3SM . . . . . visibility three
BR . . . . . visibility obscured by mist
CLR . . . . . no clouds below one two thousand
15/12 . . . . . temperature one five, dew point one two

A3012 . . . . . altimeter three zero one two
RMK . . . . . remarks
AO2 . . . . . this automated station has a weather discriminator (for precipitation)

SPECI KCVG 152224Z 28024G36KT 3/4SM +TSRA BKN008 OVC020CB 28/23 A3000 RMK TSRAB24 TS W MOV E

SPECI . . . . . (nonroutine) aviation special weather report
KCVG . . . . . Cincinnati, OH
152228Z . . . . . date 15th, time 2228 UTC
(no modifier) . . This is a manually generated report due to the absence of "AUTO" and "AO1 or AO2" in remarks
28024G36KT . . wind two eight zero at two four gusts three six
3/4SM . . . . . visibility three fourths
+TSRA . . . . . thunderstorms, heavy rain
BKN008 ceiling eight hundred broken
OVC020CB . . . two thousand overcast cumulonimbus clouds
28/23 . . . . . temperature two eight, dew point two three
A3000 . . . . . altimeter three zero zero zero
RMK . . . . . remarks
TSRAB24 . . . . . thunderstorm and rain began at two four
TS W MOV E thunderstorm west moving east

c. Aerodrome Forecast (TAF). A concise statement of the expected meteorological conditions at an airport during a specified period. At most locations, TAFs have a 24 hour forecast period. However, TAFs for some locations have a 30 hour forecast period. These forecast periods may be shorter in the case of an amended TAF. TAFs use the same codes as METAR weather reports. They are scheduled four times daily for 24–hour periods beginning at 0000Z, 0600Z, 1200Z, and 1800Z.

Forecast times in the TAF are depicted in two ways. The first is a 6–digit number to indicate a specific point in time, consisting of a two–digit date, two–digit hour, and two–digit minute (such as issuance time or FM). The second is a pair of four–digit numbers separated by a "/" to indicate a beginning and end for a period of time. In this case, each four–digit pair consists of a two–digit date and a two–digit hour.

TAFs are issued in the following format:

TYPE OF REPORT/ICAO STATION IDENTIFIER/ DATE AND TIME OF ORIGIN/VALID PERIOD DATE AND TIME/FORECAST METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS

NOTE–
The "/" above and in the following descriptions are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual TAFs.

TAF KORD 051130Z 0512/0618 14008KT 5SM BR BKN030
TEMPO 0513/0516 1 1/2SM BR
FM051600 16010KT P6SM SKC
FM052300 20013G20KT 4SM SHRA OVC020
PROB40 0600/0606 2SM TSRA OVC008CB
BECMG 0606/0608 21015KT P6SM NSW SCT040

TAF format observed in the above example:

TAF = type of report

KORD = ICAO station identifier

051130Z = date and time of origin (issuance time)

0512/0618 = valid period date and times

14008KT 5SM BR BKN030 = forecast meteorological conditions

Explanation of TAF elements:

1. Type of Report. There are two types of TAF issuances, a routine forecast issuance (TAF) and an amended forecast (TAF AMD). An amended TAF is issued when the current TAF no longer adequately describes the on-going weather or the forecaster feels the TAF is not representative of the current or expected weather. Corrected (COR) or delayed (RTD) TAFs are identified only in the communications header which precedes the actual forecasts.

2. ICAO Station Identifier. The TAF code uses ICAO 4–letter location identifiers as described in the METAR section.

3. Date and Time of Origin. This element is the date and time the forecast is actually prepared. The format is a two–digit date and four–digit time followed, without a space, by the letter "Z."

4. Valid Period Date and Time. The UTC valid period of the forecast consists of two four–digit

sets, separated by a "/". The first four−digit set is a two−digit date followed by the two−digit beginning hour, and the second four−digit set is a two−digit date followed by the two−digit ending hour. Although most airports have a 24−hour TAF, a select number of airports have a 30−hour TAF. In the case of an amended forecast, or a forecast which is corrected or delayed, the valid period may be for less than 24 hours. Where an airport or terminal operates on a part−time basis (less than 24 hours/day), the TAFs issued for those locations will have the abbreviated statement "NIL AMD SKED AFT (closing time) Z" added to the end of the forecasts. For the TAFs issued while these locations are closed, the word "NIL" will appear in place of the forecast text. A delayed (RTD) forecast will then be issued for these locations after two complete observations are received.

5. Forecast Meteorological Conditions. This is the body of the TAF. The basic format is:

W I N D / V I S I B I L I T Y / W E A T H E R / S K Y CONDITION/OPTIONAL DATA (WIND SHEAR)

The wind, visibility, and sky condition elements are always included in the initial time group of the forecast. Weather is included only if significant to aviation. If a significant, lasting change in any of the elements is expected during the valid period, a new time period with the changes is included. It should be noted that with the exception of a "FM" group the new time period will include only those elements which are expected to change, i.e., if a lowering of the visibility is expected but the wind is expected to remain the same, the new time period reflecting the lower visibility would not include a forecast wind. The forecast wind would remain the same as in the previous time period. Any temporary conditions expected during a specific time period are included with that time period. The following describes the elements in the above format.

(a) Wind. This five (or six) digit group includes the expected wind direction (first 3 digits) and speed (last 2 digits or 3 digits if 100 knots or greater). The contraction "KT" follows to denote the units of wind speed. Wind gusts are noted by the letter "G" appended to the wind speed followed by the highest expected gust. A variable wind direction is noted by "VRB" where the three digit direction usually appears. A calm wind (3 knots or less) is forecast as "00000KT."

EXAMPLE−

18010KT . . . . . wind one eight zero at one zero (wind is blowing from 180).

35012G20KT . . wind three five zero at one two gust two zero.

(b) Visibility. The expected prevailing visibility up to and including 6 miles is forecast in statute miles, including fractions of miles, followed by "SM" to note the units of measure. Expected visibilities greater than 6 miles are forecast as P6SM (plus six statute miles).

EXAMPLE−

1/2SM − visibility one−half

4SM − visibility four

P6SM − visibility more than six

(c) Weather Phenomena. The expected weather phenomena is coded in TAF reports using the same format, qualifiers, and phenomena contractions as METAR reports (except UP). Obscurations to vision will be forecast whenever the prevailing visibility is forecast to be 6 statute miles or less. If no significant weather is expected to occur during a specific time period in the forecast, the weather phenomena group is omitted for that time period. If, after a time period in which significant weather phenomena has been forecast, a change to a forecast of no significant weather phenomena occurs, the contraction NSW (No Significant Weather) will appear as the weather group in the new time period. (NSW is included only in BECMG or TEMPO groups).

NOTE−

It is very important that pilots understand that NSW only refers to weather phenomena, i.e., rain, snow, drizzle, etc. Omitted conditions, such as sky conditions, visibility, winds, etc., are carried over from the previous time group.

(d) Sky Condition. TAF sky condition forecasts use the METAR format described in the METAR section. Cumulonimbus clouds (CB) are the only cloud type forecast in TAFs. When clear skies are forecast, the contraction "SKC" will always be used. The contraction "CLR" is never used in the TAF. When the sky is obscured due to a surface−based phenomenon, vertical visibility (VV) into the obscuration is forecast. The format for vertical visibility is "VV" followed by a three−digit height in hundreds of feet.

NOTE−

As in METAR, ceiling layers are not designated in the TAF code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest

broken or overcast layer or vertical visibility into a complete obscuration.

SKC . . . . . "sky clear"
SCT005 BKN025CB "five hundred scattered, ceiling two thousand five hundred broken cumulonimbus clouds"
VV008 . . . . . "indefinite ceiling eight hundred"

(e) Optional Data (Wind Shear). Wind shear is the forecast of nonconvective low level winds (up to 2,000 feet). The forecast includes the letters "WS" followed by the height of the wind shear, the wind direction and wind speed at the indicated height and the ending letters "KT" (knots). Height is given in hundreds of feet (AGL) up to and including 2,000 feet. Wind shear is encoded with the contraction "WS," followed by a three–digit height, slant character "/," and winds at the height indicated in the same format as surface winds. The wind shear element is omitted if not expected to occur.

WS010/18040KT – "LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR AT ONE THOUSAND, WIND ONE EIGHT ZERO AT FOUR ZERO"

d. Probability Forecast. The probability or chance of thunderstorms or other precipitation events occurring, along with associated weather conditions (wind, visibility, and sky conditions). The PROB30 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 30–39% and the PROB40 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 40–49%. This is followed by two four–digit groups separated by a "/", giving the beginning date and hour, and the ending date and hour of the time period during which the thunderstorms or precipitation are expected.

NOTE–
Neither PROB30 nor PROB40 will be shown during the first six hours of a forecast.

EXAMPLE–
PROB40 2221/2302 $^1/_2$SM +TSRA "chance between 2100Z and 0200Z of visibility one–half statute mile in thunderstorms and heavy rain."

PROB30 3010/3014 1SM RASN . "chance between 1000Z and 1400Z of visibility one statute mile in mixed rain and snow."

e. Forecast Change Indicators. The following change indicators are used when either a rapid, gradual, or temporary change is expected in some or all of the forecast meteorological conditions. Each change indicator marks a time group within the TAF report.

1. From (FM) group. The FM group is used when a rapid change, usually occurring in less than one hour, in prevailing conditions is expected. Typically, a rapid change of prevailing conditions to more or less a completely new set of prevailing conditions is associated with a synoptic feature passing through the terminal area (cold or warm frontal passage). Appended to the "FM" indicator is the six–digit date, hour, and minute the change is expected to begin and continues until the next change group or until the end of the current forecast. A "FM" group will mark the beginning of a new line in a TAF report (indented 5 spaces). Each "FM" group contains all the required elements–wind, visibility, weather, and sky condition. Weather will be omitted in "FM" groups when it is not significant to aviation. FM groups will not include the contraction NSW.

EXAMPLE–
FM210100 14010KT P6SM SKC – "after 0100Z on the 21st, wind one four zero at one zero, visibility more than six, sky clear."

2. Becoming (BECMG) group. The BECMG group is used when a gradual change in conditions is expected over a longer time period, usually two hours. The time period when the change is expected is two four–digit groups separated by a "/", with the beginning date and hour, and ending date and hour of the change period which follows the BECMG indicator. The gradual change will occur at an unspecified time within this time period. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in BECMG groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

EXAMPLE–
OVC012 BECMG 0114/0116 BKN020 – "ceiling one thousand two hundred overcast. Then a gradual change to ceiling two thousand broken between 1400Z on the 1st and 1600Z on the 1st."

3. Temporary (TEMPO) group. The TEMPO group is used for any conditions in wind, visibility, weather, or sky condition which are expected to last for generally less than an hour at a time (occasional), and are expected to occur during less than half the time period. The TEMPO indicator is followed by two four−digit groups separated by a "/". The first four digit group gives the beginning date and hour, and the second four digit group gives the ending date and hour of the time period during which the temporary conditions are expected. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in TEMPO groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

EXAMPLE−

1. *SCT030 TEMPO 0519/0523 BKN030 − "three thousand scattered with occasional ceilings three thousand broken between 1900Z on the 5th and 2300Z on the 5th."*

2. *4SM HZ TEMPO 1900/1906 2SM BR HZ − "visibility four in haze with occasional visibility two in mist and haze between 0000Z on the 19th and 0600Z on the 19th."*

7–5–11. Precipitation Static

a. Precipitation static is caused by aircraft in flight coming in contact with uncharged particles. These particles can be rain, snow, fog, sleet, hail, volcanic ash, dust; any solid or liquid particles. When the aircraft strikes these neutral particles the positive element of the particle is reflected away from the aircraft and the negative particle adheres to the skin of the aircraft. In a very short period of time a substantial negative charge will develop on the skin of the aircraft. If the aircraft is not equipped with static dischargers, or has an ineffective static discharger system, when a sufficient negative voltage level is reached, the aircraft may go into "CORONA." That is, it will discharge the static electricity from the extremities of the aircraft, such as the wing tips, horizontal stabilizer, vertical stabilizer, antenna, propeller tips, etc. This discharge of static electricity is what you will hear in your headphones and is what we call P–static.

b. A review of pilot reports often shows different symptoms with each problem that is encountered. The following list of problems is a summary of many pilot reports from many different aircraft. Each problem was caused by P–static:

1. Complete loss of VHF communications.

2. Erroneous magnetic compass readings (30 percent in error).

3. High pitched squeal on audio.

4. Motor boat sound on audio.

5. Loss of all avionics in clouds.

6. VLF navigation system inoperative most of the time.

7. Erratic instrument readouts.

8. Weak transmissions and poor receptivity of radios.

9. "St. Elmo's Fire" on windshield.

c. Each of these symptoms is caused by one general problem on the airframe. This problem is the inability of the accumulated charge to flow easily to the wing tips and tail of the airframe, and properly discharge to the airstream.

d. Static dischargers work on the principal of creating a relatively easy path for discharging negative charges that develop on the aircraft by using a discharger with fine metal points, carbon coated rods, or carbon wicks rather than wait until a large charge is developed and discharged off the trailing edges of the aircraft that will interfere with avionics equipment. This process offers approximately 50 decibels (dB) static noise reduction which is adequate in most cases to be below the threshold of noise that would cause interference in avionics equipment.

e. It is important to remember that precipitation static problems can only be corrected with the proper number of quality static dischargers, properly installed on a properly bonded aircraft. P–static is indeed a problem in the all weather operation of the aircraft, but there are effective ways to combat it. All possible methods of reducing the effects of P–static should be considered so as to provide the best possible performance in the flight environment.

f. A wide variety of discharger designs is available on the commercial market. The inclusion of well–designed dischargers may be expected to improve airframe noise in P–static conditions by as much as 50 dB. Essentially, the discharger provides a path by which accumulated charge may leave the airframe quietly. This is generally accomplished by providing a group of tiny corona points to permit onset of corona–current flow at a low aircraft potential. Additionally, aerodynamic design of dischargers to permit corona to occur at the lowest possible atmospheric pressure also lowers the corona threshold. In addition to permitting a low–potential discharge, the discharger will minimize the radiation of radio frequency (RF) energy which accompanies the corona discharge, in order to minimize effects of RF components at communications and navigation frequencies on avionics performance. These effects are reduced through resistive attachment of the corona point(s) to the airframe, preserving direct current connection but attenuating the higher–frequency components of the discharge.

g. Each manufacturer of static dischargers offers information concerning appropriate discharger location on specific airframes. Such locations emphasize the trailing outboard surfaces of wings and horizontal tail surfaces, plus the tip of the vertical stabilizer, where charge tends to accumulate on the airframe.

Sufficient dischargers must be provided to allow for current–carrying capacity which will maintain airframe potential below the corona threshold of the trailing edges.

h. In order to achieve full performance of avionic equipment, the static discharge system will require periodic maintenance. A pilot knowledgeable of P–static causes and effects is an important element in assuring optimum performance by early recognition of these types of problems.

7–5–12. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation (Laser) Operations and Reporting Illumination of Aircraft

a. Lasers have many applications. Of concern to users of the National Airspace System are those laser events that may affect pilots, e.g., outdoor laser light shows or demonstrations for entertainment and advertisements at special events and theme parks. Generally, the beams from these events appear as bright blue–green in color; however, they may be red, yellow, or white. However, some laser systems produce light which is invisible to the human eye.

b. FAA regulations prohibit the disruption of aviation activity by any person on the ground or in the air. The FAA and the Food and Drug Administration (the Federal agency that has the responsibility to enforce compliance with Federal requirements for laser systems and laser light show products) are working together to ensure that operators of these devices do not pose a hazard to aircraft operators.

c. Pilots should be aware that illumination from these laser operations are able to create temporary vision impairment miles from the actual location. In addition, these operations can produce permanent eye damage. Pilots should make themselves aware of where these activities are being conducted and avoid these areas if possible.

d. Recent and increasing incidents of unauthorized illumination of aircraft by lasers, as well as the proliferation and increasing sophistication of laser devices available to the general public, dictates that the FAA, in coordination with other government agencies, take action to safeguard flights from these unauthorized illuminations.

e. Pilots should report laser illumination activity to the controlling Air Traffic Control facilities, Federal Contract Towers or Flight Service Stations as soon as possible after the event. The following information should be included:

1. UTC Date and Time of Event.

2. Call Sign or Aircraft Registration Number.

3. Type Aircraft.

4. Nearest Major City.

5. Altitude.

6. Location of Event (Latitude/Longitude and/or Fixed Radial Distance (FRD)).

7. Brief Description of the Event and any other Pertinent Information.

f. Pilots are also encouraged to complete the Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire (See Appendix 3), and fax or email it, per the directions on the questionnaire, as soon as possible after landing.

g. When a laser event is reported to an air traffic facility, a general caution warning will be broadcasted on all appropriate frequencies every five minutes for 20 minutes and broadcasted on the ATIS for one hour following the report.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, (UTC time), (location), (altitude), (color), (direction).

EXAMPLE–
"Unauthorized laser illumination event, at 0100z, 8 mile final runway 18R at 3,000 feet, green laser from the southwest."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft, Para 10–2–14.
FAAO 7210.3, Reporting Laser Illumination of Aircraft, Para 2–1–27.

h. When these activities become known to the FAA, Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) are issued to inform the aviation community of the events. Pilots should consult NOTAMs or the Special Notices section of the Airport/Facility Directory for information regarding these activities.

7–5–13. Flying in Flat Light and White Out Conditions

a. Flat Light. Flat light is an optical illusion, also known as "**sector or partial white out**." It is not as severe as "white out" but the condition causes pilots to lose their depth–of–field and contrast in vision.

6. Always consider canceling or delaying a flight if weather conditions do not support a safe operation.

c. If you haven't already developed a set of Standard Operating Procedures for cold weather operations, they should include:

1. Procedures based on information that is applicable to the aircraft operated, such as AFM limitations and procedures;

2. Concise and easy to understand guidance that outlines best operational practices;

3. A systematic procedure for recognizing, evaluating and addressing the associated icing risk, and offer clear guidance to mitigate this risk;

4. An aid (such as a checklist or reference cards) that is readily available during normal day–to–day aircraft operations.

d. There are several sources for guidance relating to airframe icing, including:

1. http://aircrafticing.grc.nasa.gov/index.html

2. http://www.ibac.org/is–bao/isbao.htm

3. http://www.natasafety1st.org/bus_deice.htm

4. Advisory Circular (AC) 91–74, Pilot Guide, Flight in Icing Conditions.

5. AC 135–17, Pilot Guide Small Aircraft Ground Deicing.

6. AC 135–9, FAR Part 135 Icing Limitations.

7. AC 120–60, Ground Deicing and Anti–icing Program.

8. AC 135–16, Ground Deicing and Anti–icing Training and Checking.

The FAA Approved Deicing Program Updates is published annually as a Flight Standards Information Bulletin for Air Transportation and contains detailed information on deicing and anti–icing procedures and holdover times. It may be accessed at the following web site by selecting the current year's information bulletins:

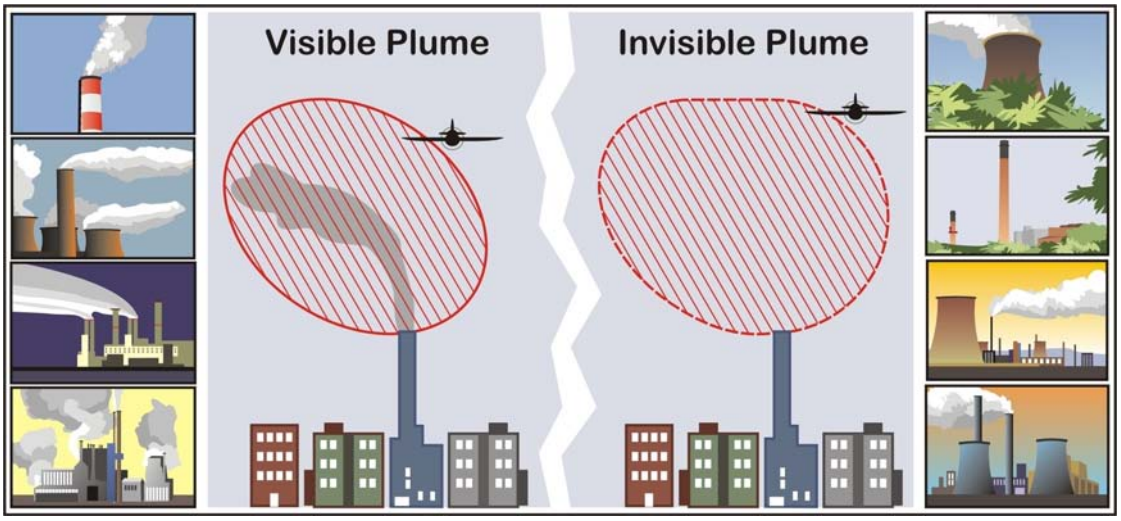
http://www.faa.gov/library/manuals/examiners_inspectors/8400/fsat

7–5–15. Avoid Flight in the Vicinity of Thermal Plumes (Smoke Stacks and Cooling Towers)

a. Flight Hazards Exist Around Thermal Plumes. Thermal plumes are defined as visible or invisible emissions from power plants, industrial production facilities, or other industrial systems that release large amounts of vertically directed unstable gases. High temperature exhaust plumes may cause significant air disturbances such as turbulence and vertical shear. Other identified potential hazards include, but are not necessarily limited to, reduced visibility, oxygen depletion, engine particulate contamination, exposure to gaseous oxides, and/or icing. Results of encountering a plume may include airframe damage, aircraft upset, and/or engine damage/failure. These hazards are most critical during low altitude flight, especially during takeoff and landing.

b. When able, a pilot should fly upwind of possible thermal plumes. When a plume is visible via smoke or a condensation cloud, remain clear and realize a plume may have both visible and invisible characteristics. Exhaust stacks without visible plumes may still be in full operation, and airspace in the vicinity should be treated with caution. As with mountain wave turbulence or clear air turbulence, an invisible plume may be encountered unexpectedly. Cooling towers, power plant stacks, exhaust fans, and other ismilar structures are depicted in FIG 7–5–2. Whether plumes are visible or invisible, the total extent of their unstable air is difficult to ascertain. FAA studies are underway to further characterize the effects of thermal plumes as exhaust effluents. Until the results of these studies are known and possible changes to rules and policy are identified and/or published, pilots are encouraged to exercise caution when flying in the vicinity of thermal plumes. Pilots are encouraged to reference the Airport/Facility Directory where amplifying notes may caution pilots and identify the location of structure(s) emitting thermal plumes.

FIG 7–5–2
Plumes



10–1–3. Helicopter Approach Procedures to VFR Heliports

a. Helicopter approaches may be developed for heliports that do not meet the design standards for an IFR heliport. The majority of IFR approaches to VFR heliports are developed in support of helicopter emergency medical services (HEMS) operators. These approaches can be developed from conventional NAVAIDs or a RNAV system (including GPS). They are developed either as a Special Approach (pilot training is required for special procedures due to their unique characteristics) or a public approach (no special training required). These instrument procedures are developed as either an approach designed to a specific landing site, or an approach designed to a point–in–space.

1. Approach to a specific landing site. The approach is aligned to a missed approach point from which a landing can be accomplished with a maximum course change of 30 degrees. The visual segment from the MAP to the landing site is evaluated for obstacle hazards. These procedures are annotated: "PROCEED VISUALLY FROM (NAMED MAP) OR CONDUCT THE SPECIFIED MISSED APPROACH."

(a) This phrase requires the pilot to either acquire and maintain visual contact with the landing site at or prior to the MAP, or execute a missed approach. The visibility minimum is based on the distance from the MAP to the landing site, among other factors.

(b) The pilot is required to maintain the published minimum visibility throughout the visual segment.

(c) Similar to an approach to a runway, the missed approach segment protection is not provided between the MAP and the landing site, and obstacle or terrain avoidance from the MAP to the landing site is the responsibility of the pilot.

(d) Upon reaching the MAP defined on the approach procedure, or as soon as practicable after reaching the MAP, the pilot advises ATC whether proceeding visually and canceling IFR or complying with the missed approach instructions. See paragraph 5–1–15, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

(e) At least one of the following visual references must be visible or identifiable before the pilot may proceed visually:

(1) FATO or FATO lights.

(2) TLOF or TLOF lights.

(3) Heliport Instrument Lighting System (HILS).

(4) Heliport Approach Lighting System (HALS) or lead–in lights.

(5) Visual Glideslope Indicator (VGSI).

(6) Windsock or windsock light(s). See note below.

(7) Heliport beacon. See note below.

(8) Other facilities or systems approved by the Flight Technologies and Procedures Division (AFS–400).

NOTE–
Windsock lights and heliport beacons should be located within 500 ft of the TLOF.

2. Approach to a Point–in–Space (PinS). At locations where the MAP is located more than 2 SM from the landing site, or the path from the MAP to the landing site is populated with obstructions which require avoidance actions or requires turns greater than 30 degrees, a PinS procedure may be developed. These approaches are annotated "PROCEED VFR FROM (NAMED MAP) OR CONDUCT THE SPECIFIED MISSED APPROACH."

(a) These procedures require the pilot, at or prior to the MAP, to determine if the published minimum visibility, or the weather minimums required by the operating rule, or operations specifications (whichever is higher) is available to safely transition from IFR to VFR flight. If not, the pilot must execute a missed approach. For Part 135 operations, pilots may not begin the instrument approach unless the latest weather report indicates that the weather conditions are at or above the authorized IFR minimums or the VFR weather minimums (as required by the class of airspace, operating rule and/or Operations Specifications) whichever is higher.

(b) Visual contact with the landing site is not required; however, the pilot must maintain the appropriate VFR weather minimums throughout the visual segment. The visibility is limited to no lower

than that published in the procedure, until canceling IFR.

(c) IFR obstruction clearance areas are not applied to the VFR segment between the MAP and the landing site. Obstacle or terrain avoidance from the MAP to the landing site is the responsibility of the pilot.

(d) Upon reaching the MAP defined on the approach procedure, or as soon as practicable after reaching the MAP, the pilot advises ATC whether proceeding VFR and canceling IFR, or complying with the missed approach instructions. See paragraph 5–1–15, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

(e) If the visual segment penetrates Class B, C, or D airspace, pilots are responsible for obtaining a Special VFR clearance, when required.

10–1–4. The Gulf of Mexico Grid System

a. On October 8, 1998, the Southwest Region of the FAA, with assistance from the Helicopter Safety Advisory Conference (HSAC), implemented the world's first Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) Grid System in the Gulf of Mexico. This navigational route structure is completely independent of ground–based navigation aids (NAVAIDs) and was designed to facilitate helicopter IFR operations to offshore destinations. The Grid System is defined by over 300 offshore waypoints located 20 minutes apart (latitude and longitude). Flight plan routes are routinely defined by just 4 segments; departure point (lat/long), first en route grid waypoint, last en route grid waypoint prior to approach procedure, and destination point (lat/long). There are over 4,000 possible offshore landing sites. Upon reaching the waypoint prior to the destination, the pilot may execute an Offshore Standard Approach Procedure (OSAP), a Helicopter En Route Descent Areas (HEDA) approach, or an Airborne Radar Approach (ARA). For more information on these helicopter instrument procedures, refer to FAA AC 90–80B, Approval of Offshore Standard Approach Procedures, Airborne Radar Approaches, and Helicopter En Route Descent Areas, on the FAA web site **http://www.faa.gov** under Advisory Circulars. The return flight plan is just the reverse with the requested stand–alone GPS approach contained in the remarks section.

1. The large number (over 300) of waypoints in the grid system makes it difficult to assign phonetically pronounceable names to the waypoints that would be meaningful to pilots and controllers. A unique naming system was adopted that enables pilots and controllers to derive the fix position from the name. The five–letter names are derived as follows:

(a) The waypoints are divided into sets of 3 columns each. A three–letter identifier, identifying a geographical area or a NAVAID to the north, represents each set.

(b) Each column in a set is named after its position, i.e., left (L), center (C), and right (R).

(c) The rows of the grid are named alphabetically from north to south, starting with A for the northern most row.

EXAMPLE–
LCHRC would be pronounced "Lake Charles Romeo Charlie." The waypoint is in the right–hand column of the Lake Charles VOR set, in row C (third south from the northern most row).

2. Since the grid system's implementation, IFR delays (frequently over 1 hour in length) for operations in this environment have been effectively eliminated. The comfort level of the pilots, knowing that they will be given a clearance quickly, plus the mileage savings in this near free–flight environment, is allowing the operators to carry less fuel. Less fuel means they can transport additional passengers, which is a substantial fiscal and operational benefit, considering the limited seating on board helicopters.

3. There are 3 requirements for operators to meet before filing IFR flight plans utilizing the grid:

(a) The helicopter must be IFR certified and equipped with IFR certified TSO C–129 GPS navigational units.

(b) The operator must obtain prior written approval from the appropriate Flight Standards District Office through a Certificate of Authorization or revision to their Operations Specifications, as appropriate.

(c) The operator must be a signatory to the Houston ARTCC Letter of Agreement.

4. FAA/NACO publishes the grid system waypoints on the IFR Gulf of Mexico Vertical Flight Reference Chart. A commercial equivalent is also available. The chart is updated annually and is

available from a FAA chart agent or FAA directly, web site address: **http://www.naco.faa.gov**.

Appendix 3. Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire

LASER Beam Exposure Questionnaire

Fax to Washington Operations Control Center (W0CC) (202) 267-5289 ATTN: DEN
or
Email LaserReports@faa.gov

Pilot Name: _____ **Phone Number:** _____

Company: _____ **Flight Number:** _____

1. Date and time (UTC)? _____

2. Position of event (lat/long and/or FRD)? _____

3. Altitude? _____

4. What was the visibility? _____

5. What were the atmospheric conditions? (Circle those which apply) – Clear Overcast Rainy Foggy Hazy Sunny

6. What was the color(s) of the light? _____

7. Did the color(s) change during the exposure? _____

8. Did you attempt an evasive maneuver? _____
If yes, did the beam follow you as you tried to move away? _____

9. Can you estimate how far away the light source was from your location? _____

10. What was the position of the light relative to the aircraft? _____

11. Was the source moving? _____

12. Was the light coming directly from its source or did it appear to be reflected off other surfaces? _____

13. Were there multiple sources of light? _____

14. How long was the exposure? _____

15. Did the light seem to track your path or was there incidental contact? _____

16. What tasks were you performing when the exposure occurred? _____

17. Did the light prevent or hamper you from doing those tasks, or was the light more of an annoyance? _____

18. What were the visual effects you experienced (after-image, blind spot, flash-blindness, glare*)? _____

19. Did you report the incident by radio to ATC? _____

Any other pertinent information: _____

_____

_____

This questionnaire may be filled out by the competent authority during interviews with aircrews exposed to unauthorized laser illumination. This information will be used to aid in subsequent investigation by ATC, law enforcement and other governmental agencies to safeguard the safety and efficiency of civil aviation operation in the NAS.

*Examples *of* common visual *effects:*
After image - An image that remains in the visual field after an exposure to a bright light
Blindspot - A temporary or permanent loss of vision of part of the visual field
Flash-blindness - The inability to see (either temporarily or permanently) caused by bright light entering the eye and persisting after the illumination has ceased
Glare - A temporary disruption in vision caused by the presence of a bright light (such as an oncoming car's headlights) within the individual's field of vision. Glare lasts only as long as the bright light is actually present within the individual's field of vision

Paperwork Reduction Act Statement: This form is being used to collect information regarding the unauthorized laser illumination of aircraft. We estimate that it will take 15 minutes to provide this information. The collection is voluntary. Note that an agency may not conduct a sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. The OMB control number associated with the collection is 2120-0698.

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

PURPOSE

a. This Glossary was compiled to promote a common understanding of the terms used in the Air Traffic Control system. It includes those terms which are intended for pilot/controller communications. Those terms most frequently used in pilot/controller communications are printed in ***bold italics***. The definitions are primarily defined in an operational sense applicable to both users and operators of the National Airspace System. Use of the Glossary will preclude any misunderstandings concerning the system's design, function, and purpose.

b. Because of the international nature of flying, terms used in the Lexicon, published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), are included when they differ from FAA definitions. These terms are followed by "[ICAO]." For the reader's convenience, there are also cross references to related terms in other parts of the Glossary and to other documents, such as the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

c. This Glossary will be revised, as necessary, to maintain a common understanding of the system.

EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

a. Terms Added:

PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (PWS)
SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT)

b. Terms Modified:

AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS)
BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES
LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY (LAA)
ONE−MINUTE WEATHER
REMOTE AIRPORT ADVISORY (RAA)
SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM ALERTS
TRACEABLE PRESSURE STANDARD

c. Editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used due to the insignificant nature of the changes.

AUTOLAND APPROACH– An autoland approach is a precision instrument approach to touchdown and, in some cases, through the landing rollout. An autoland approach is performed by the aircraft autopilot which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigation equipment.

Note: Autoland and coupled approaches are flown in VFR and IFR. It is common for carriers to require their crews to fly coupled approaches and autoland approaches (if certified) when the weather conditions are less than approximately 4,000 RVR.

(See COUPLED APPROACH.)

AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER– A precoordinated process, specifically defined in facility directives, during which a transfer of altitude control and/or radar identification is accomplished without verbal coordination between controllers using information communicated in a full data block.

AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM– A facility which can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a surface picture (SURPIC) of vessels in the area of a potential or actual search and rescue incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(See FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–6–4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION (APD)– An Automation Processing capability that compares trajectories in order to predict conflicts.

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY (APB)– The adapted distance beyond a facilities boundary defining the airspace within which URET performs conflict detection.

(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA (APDIA)– Airspace surrounding a terminal area within which APD is inhibited for all flights within that airspace.

AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS (ARTS)– A generic term for several tracking systems included in the Terminal Automation Systems (TAS). ARTS plus a suffix roman numeral denotes a major modification to that system.

a. ARTS IIIA. The Radar Tracking and Beacon Tracking Level (RT&BTL) of the modular, programmable automated radar terminal system. ARTS IIIA detects, tracks, and predicts primary as well as secondary radar-derived aircraft targets. This more sophisticated computer-driven system upgrades the existing ARTS III system by providing improved tracking, continuous data recording, and fail-soft capabilities.

b. Common ARTS. Includes ARTS IIE, ARTS IIIE; and ARTS IIIE with ACD (see DTAS) which combines functionalities of the previous ARTS systems.

c. Programmable Indicator Data Processor (PIDP). The PIDP is a modification to the AN/TPX–42 interrogator system currently installed in fixed RAPCONs. The PIDP detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar aircraft targets. These are displayed by means of computer–generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, aircraft altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. Although primary radar targets are not tracked, they are displayed coincident with the secondary radar targets as well as with the other symbols and alphanumerics. The system has the capability of interfacing with ARTCCs.

AUTOMATED WEATHER SYSTEM– Any of the automated weather sensor platforms that collect weather data at airports and disseminate the weather information via radio and/or landline. The systems currently consist of the Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS), Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS) and Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS).

AUTOMATED UNICOM– Provides completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an Automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability will be published in the Airport/Facility Directory and approach charts.

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT–

(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING– That function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100-foot increments.

AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM– U.S. Navy final approach equipment consisting of precision tracking radar coupled to a computer data link to provide continuous information to the aircraft, monitoring capability to the pilot, and a backup approach system.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE (ADS) [ICAO]– A surveillance technique in which aircraft automatically provide, via a data link, data derived from on–board navigation and position fixing systems, including aircraft identification, four dimensional position and additional data as appropriate.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE–BROADCAST (ADS-B)– A surveillance system in which an aircraft or vehicle to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a data link transmitter. The aircraft or vehicle periodically broadcasts its GPS–derived position and other information such as velocity over the data link, which is received by a ground–based transmitter/receiver (transceiver) for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)

(See GROUND–BASED TRANSCEIVER.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE–CONTRACT (ADS–C)– A data link position reporting system, controlled by a ground station, that establishes contracts with an aircraft's avionics that occur automatically whenever specific events occur, or specific time intervals are reached.

AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER– An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) ground transmitter. Direction is indicated to the pilot as a magnetic bearing or as a relative bearing to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft depending on the type of indicator installed in the aircraft. In certain applications, such as military, ADF operations may be based on airborne and ground transmitters in the VHF/UHF frequency spectrum.

(See BEARING.)

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS) – ALASKA FSSs ONLY– The continuous broadcast of recorded non–control information at airports in Alaska where a FSS provides local airport advisory service. The AFIS broadcast automates the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information such as weather, wind, altimeter, favored runway, breaking action, airport NOTAMs, and other applicable information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency (usually the ASOS/AWSS/AWOS frequency.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE– The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information; e.g., "Los Angeles information Alfa. One three zero zero Coordinated Universal Time. Weather, measured ceiling two thousand overcast, visibility three, haze, smoke, temperature seven one, dew point five seven, wind two five zero at five, altimeter two niner niner six. I-L-S Runway Two Five Left approach in use, Runway Two Five Right closed, advise you have Alfa."

(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE [ICAO]– The provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft by means of continuous and repetitive broadcasts throughout the day or a specified portion of the day.

AUTOROTATION– A rotorcraft flight condition in which the lifting rotor is driven entirely by action of the air when the rotorcraft is in motion.

a. Autorotative Landing/Touchdown Autorotation. Used by a pilot to indicate that the landing will be made without applying power to the rotor.

b. Low Level Autorotation. Commences at an altitude well below the traffic pattern, usually below 100 feet AGL and is used primarily for tactical military training.

c. 180 degrees Autorotation. Initiated from a downwind heading and is commenced well inside the normal traffic pattern. "Go around" may not be possible during the latter part of this maneuver.

AVAILABLE LANDING DISTANCE (ALD)– The portion of a runway available for landing and roll-out for aircraft cleared for LAHSO. This distance is measured from the landing threshold to the hold-short point.

AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE– A service provided by the National Weather Service (NWS) and FAA which collects and disseminates pertinent weather information for pilots, aircraft operators, and ATC. Available aviation weather reports and

B

BACK-TAXI– A term used by air traffic controllers to taxi an aircraft on the runway opposite to the traffic flow. The aircraft may be instructed to back-taxi to the beginning of the runway or at some point before reaching the runway end for the purpose of departure or to exit the runway.

BASE LEG–
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

BEACON–
(See AERONAUTICAL BEACON.)
(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)
(See AIRWAY BEACON.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)
(See RADAR.)

BEARING– The horizontal direction to or from any point, usually measured clockwise from true north, magnetic north, or some other reference point through 360 degrees.
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

BELOW MINIMUMS– Weather conditions below the minimums prescribed by regulation for the particular action involved; e.g., landing minimums, takeoff minimums.

BLAST FENCE– A barrier that is used to divert or dissipate jet or propeller blast.

BLAST PAD– A surface adjacent to the ends of a runway provided to reduce the erosive effect of jet blast and propeller wash.

BLIND SPEED– The rate of departure or closing of a target relative to the radar antenna at which cancellation of the primary radar target by moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment causes a reduction or complete loss of signal.
(See ICAO term BLIND VELOCITY.)

BLIND SPOT– An area from which radio transmissions and/or radar echoes cannot be received. The term is also used to describe portions of the airport not visible from the control tower.

BLIND TRANSMISSION–
(See TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND.)

BLIND VELOCITY [ICAO]– The radial velocity of a moving target such that the target is not seen on primary radars fitted with certain forms of fixed echo suppression.

BLIND ZONE–
(See BLIND SPOT.)

BLOCKED– Phraseology used to indicate that a radio transmission has been distorted or interrupted due to multiple simultaneous radio transmissions.

BOUNDARY LIGHTS–
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

BRAKING ACTION (GOOD, FAIR, POOR, OR NIL)– A report of conditions on the airport movement area providing a pilot with a degree/quality of braking that he/she might expect. Braking action is reported in terms of good, fair, poor, or nil.
(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES– When tower controllers have received runway braking action reports which include the terms “fair,” “poor,” or “nil,” or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway braking conditions, the tower will include on the ATIS broadcast the statement, “Braking action advisories are in effect” on the ATIS broadcast. During the time braking action advisories are in effect, ATC will issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft. Pilots should be prepared for deteriorating braking conditions and should request current runway condition information if not volunteered by controllers. Pilots should also be prepared to provide a descriptive runway condition report to controllers after landing.

BREAKOUT– A technique to direct aircraft out of the approach stream. In the context of close parallel operations, a breakout is used to direct threatened aircraft away from a deviating aircraft.

BROADCAST– Transmission of information for which an acknowledgement is not expected.
(See ICAO term BROADCAST.)

BROADCAST [ICAO]– A transmission of information relating to air navigation that is not addressed to a specific station or stations.

L

LAA–
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

LAAS–
(See LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM.)

LAHSO– An acronym for "Land and Hold Short Operation." These operations include landing and holding short of an intersecting runway, a taxiway, a predetermined point, or an approach/departure flightpath.

LAHSO-DRY– Land and hold short operations on runways that are dry.

LAHSO-WET– Land and hold short operations on runways that are wet (but not contaminated).

LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS– Operations which include simultaneous takeoffs and landings and/or simultaneous landings when a landing aircraft is able and is instructed by the controller to hold-short of the intersecting runway/taxiway or designated hold-short point. Pilots are expected to promptly inform the controller if the hold short clearance cannot be accepted.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING AREA– Any locality either on land, water, or structures, including airports/heliports and intermediate landing fields, which is used, or intended to be used, for the landing and takeoff of aircraft whether or not facilities are provided for the shelter, servicing, or for receiving or discharging passengers or cargo.
(See ICAO term LANDING AREA.)

LANDING AREA [ICAO]– That part of a movement area intended for the landing or take-off of aircraft.

LANDING DIRECTION INDICATOR– A device which visually indicates the direction in which landings and takeoffs should be made.
(See TETRAHEDRON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of runway which is declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

LANDING MINIMUMS– The minimum visibility prescribed for landing a civil aircraft while using an instrument approach procedure. The minimum applies with other limitations set forth in 14 CFR Part 91 with respect to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or Decision Height (DH) prescribed in the instrument approach procedures as follows:

a. Straight-in landing minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility, or DH and visibility, required for a straight-in landing on a specified runway, or

b. Circling minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility required for the circle-to-land maneuver.

Note: Descent below the established MDA or DH is not authorized during an approach unless the aircraft is in a position from which a normal approach to the runway of intended landing can be made and adequate visual reference to required visual cues is maintained.

(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)
(See VISIBILITY.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LANDING ROLL– The distance from the point of touchdown to the point where the aircraft can be brought to a stop or exit the runway.

LANDING SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned for landing.
(See APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

LAST ASSIGNED ALTITUDE– The last altitude/flight level assigned by ATC and acknowledged by the pilot.
(See MAINTAIN.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LATERAL NAVIGATION (LNAV)– A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides lateral guidance to a profile or path.

LATERAL SEPARATION– The lateral spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by requiring operation on different routes or in different geographical locations.
(See SEPARATION.)

LDA–
(See LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID.)
(See ICAO Term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LF–
(See LOW FREQUENCY.)

LIGHTED AIRPORT– An airport where runway and obstruction lighting is available.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LIGHT GUN– A handheld directional light signaling device which emits a brilliant narrow beam of white, green, or red light as selected by the tower controller. The color and type of light transmitted can be used to approve or disapprove anticipated pilot actions where radio communication is not available. The light gun is used for controlling traffic operating in the vicinity of the airport and on the airport movement area.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY (LAA)– A service provided by facilities, which are located on the landing airport, have a discrete ground–to–air communication frequency or the tower frequency when the tower is closed, automated weather reporting with voice broadcasting, and a continuous ASOS/AWSS/AWOS data display, other continuous direct reading instruments, or manual observations available to the specialist.
(See AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA.)

LOCAL TRAFFIC– Aircraft operating in the traffic pattern or within sight of the tower, or aircraft known to be departing or arriving from flight in local practice areas, or aircraft executing practice instrument approaches at the airport.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

LOCALIZER– The component of an ILS which provides course guidance to the runway.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See ICAO term LOCALIZER COURSE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER COURSE [ICAO]– The locus of points, in any given horizontal plane, at which the DDM (difference in depth of modulation) is zero.

LOCALIZER OFFSET– An angular offset of the localizer from the runway extended centerline in a direction away from the no transgression zone (NTZ) that increases the normal operating zone (NOZ) width. An offset requires a 50 foot increase in DH and is not authorized for CAT II and CAT III approaches.

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches with utility and accuracy comparable to a localizer but which is not a part of a complete ILS and is not aligned with the runway.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER USABLE DISTANCE– The maximum distance from the localizer transmitter at a specified altitude, as verified by flight inspection, at which reliable course information is continuously received.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCATOR [ICAO]– An LM/MF NDB used as an aid to final approach.
Note: A locator usually has an average radius of rated coverage of between 18.5 and 46.3 km (10 and 25 NM).

LONG RANGE NAVIGATION–
(See LORAN.)

LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION– The longitudinal spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by a minimum distance expressed in units of time or miles.
(See SEPARATION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LORAN– An electronic navigational system by which hyperbolic lines of position are determined by measuring the difference in the time of reception of synchronized pulse signals from two fixed transmitters. Loran A operates in the 1750-1950 kHz frequency band. Loran C and D operate in the 100-110 kHz frequency band.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOST COMMUNICATIONS– Loss of the ability to communicate by radio. Aircraft are sometimes referred to as NORDO (No Radio). Standard pilot procedures are specified in 14 CFR Part 91. Radar controllers issue procedures for pilots to follow in the event of lost communications during a radar approach when weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer AIM.)

O

OBSTACLE– An existing object, object of natural growth, or terrain at a fixed geographical location or which may be expected at a fixed location within a prescribed area with reference to which vertical clearance is or must be provided during flight operation.

OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (ODP)– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure printed for pilot use in textual or graphic form to provide obstruction clearance via the least onerous route from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

OBSTACLE FREE ZONE– The OFZ is a three dimensional volume of airspace which protects for the transition of aircraft to and from the runway. The OFZ clearing standard precludes taxiing and parked airplanes and object penetrations, except for frangible NAVAID locations that are fixed by function. Additionally, vehicles, equipment, and personnel may be authorized by air traffic control to enter the area using the provisions of FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS. The runway OFZ and when applicable, the inner-approach OFZ, and the inner-transitional OFZ, comprise the OFZ.

a. Runway OFZ. The runway OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered above the runway. The runway OFZ is the airspace above a surface whose elevation at any point is the same as the elevation of the nearest point on the runway centerline. The runway OFZ extends 200 feet beyond each end of the runway. The width is as follows:

1. For runways serving large airplanes, the greater of:

(a) 400 feet, or

(b) 180 feet, plus the wingspan of the most demanding airplane, plus 20 feet per 1,000 feet of airport elevation.

2. For runways serving only small airplanes:

(a) 300 feet for precision instrument runways.

(b) 250 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of 50 knots, or more.

(c) 120 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of less than 50 knots.

b. Inner-approach OFZ. The inner-approach OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered on the approach area. The inner-approach OFZ applies only to runways with an approach lighting system. The inner-approach OFZ begins 200 feet from the runway threshold at the same elevation as the runway threshold and extends 200 feet beyond the last light unit in the approach lighting system. The width of the inner-approach OFZ is the same as the runway OFZ and rises at a slope of 50 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) from the beginning.

c. Inner-transitional OFZ. The inner transitional surface OFZ is a defined volume of airspace along the sides of the runway and inner-approach OFZ and applies only to precision instrument runways. The inner-transitional surface OFZ slopes 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) out from the edges of the runway OFZ and inner-approach OFZ to a height of 150 feet above the established airport elevation.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Chapter 3.)

(Refer to FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS.)

OBSTRUCTION– Any object/obstacle exceeding the obstruction standards specified by 14 CFR Part 77, Subpart C.

OBSTRUCTION LIGHT– A light or one of a group of lights, usually red or white, frequently mounted on a surface structure or natural terrain to warn pilots of the presence of an obstruction.

OCEANIC AIRSPACE– Airspace over the oceans of the world, considered international airspace, where oceanic separation and procedures per the International Civil Aviation Organization are applied. Responsibility for the provisions of air traffic control

service in this airspace is delegated to various countries, based generally upon geographic proximity and the availability of the required resources.

OCEANIC DISPLAY AND PLANNING SYSTEM– An automated digital display system which provides flight data processing, conflict probe, and situation display for oceanic air traffic control.

OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT– A report filed when an aircraft exiting oceanic airspace has been observed by radar to be off course. ONER reporting parameters and procedures are contained in FAAO 7110.82, Monitoring of Navigational Performance In Oceanic Areas.

OCEANIC PUBLISHED ROUTE– A route established in international airspace and charted or described in flight information publications, such as Route Charts, DOD Enroute Charts, Chart Supplements, NOTAMs, and Track Messages.

OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE– An ATS route established for the purpose of transitioning aircraft to/from an organized track system.

ODAPS–
(See OCEANIC DISPLAY AND PLANNING SYSTEM.)

ODP–
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

OFF COURSE– A term used to describe a situation where an aircraft has reported a position fix or is observed on radar at a point not on the ATC-approved route of flight.

OFF-ROUTE VECTOR– A vector by ATC which takes an aircraft off a previously assigned route. Altitudes assigned by ATC during such vectors provide required obstacle clearance.

OFFSET PARALLEL RUNWAYS– Staggered runways having centerlines which are parallel.

OFFSHORE/CONTROL AIRSPACE AREA– That portion of airspace between the U.S. 12 NM limit and the oceanic CTA/FIR boundary within which air traffic control is exercised. These areas are established to provide air traffic control services. Offshore/Control Airspace Areas may be classified as either Class A airspace or Class E airspace.

OFT–
(See OUTER FIX TIME.)

OM–
(See OUTER MARKER.)

OMEGA– An RNAV system designed for long-range navigation based upon ground-based electronic navigational aid signals.

ON COURSE–

a. Used to indicate that an aircraft is established on the route centerline.

b. Used by ATC to advise a pilot making a radar approach that his/her aircraft is lined up on the final approach course.

(See ON-COURSE INDICATION.)

ON-COURSE INDICATION– An indication on an instrument, which provides the pilot a visual means of determining that the aircraft is located on the centerline of a given navigational track, or an indication on a radar scope that an aircraft is on a given track.

ONE-MINUTE WEATHER– The most recent one minute updated weather broadcast received by a pilot from an uncontrolled airport ASOS/AWSS/AWOS.

ONER–
(See OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT.)

OPERATIONAL–
(See DUE REGARD.)

OPERATIONS SPECIFICATIONS [ICAO]– The authorizations, conditions and limitations associated with the air operator certificate and subject to the conditions in the operations manual.

OPPOSITE DIRECTION AIRCRAFT– Aircraft are operating in opposite directions when:

a. They are following the same track in reciprocal directions; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in reciprocal directions; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of more than 135°.

OPTION APPROACH– An approach requested and conducted by a pilot which will result in either a touch-and-go, missed approach, low approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing.

(See CLEARED FOR THE OPTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM– A series of ATS routes which are fixed and charted; i.e., CEP,

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR– Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain nonradar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the aircraft's position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radar scope.

Note: The abbreviation "PAR" is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in ARTCC computers.

(See GLIDEPATH.)

(See PAR.)

(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)

(See ICAO term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR [ICAO]– Primary radar equipment used to determine the position of an aircraft during final approach, in terms of lateral and vertical deviations relative to a nominal approach path, and in range relative to touchdown.

Note: Precision approach radars are designed to enable pilots of aircraft to be given guidance by radio communication during the final stages of the approach to land.

PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (POFZ)– An 800 foot wide by 200 foot long area centered on the runway centerline adjacent to the threshold designed to protect aircraft flying precision approaches from ground vehicles and other aircraft when ceiling is less than 250 feet or visibility is less than 3/4 statute mile (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet.)

PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM)– Provides air traffic controllers with high precision secondary surveillance data for aircraft on final approach to parallel runways that have extended centerlines separated by less than 4,300 feet. High resolution color monitoring displays (FMA) are required to present surveillance track data to controllers along with detailed maps depicting approaches and no transgression zone.

PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (PWS)– A self–contained system used onboard some aircraft to alert the flight crew to the presence of a potential wind shear. PWS systems typically monitor 3 miles ahead and 25 degrees left and right of the aircraft's heading at or below 1200' AGL. Departing flights may receive a wind shear alert after they start the takeoff roll and may elect to abort the takeoff. Aircraft on approach receiving an alert may elect to go around or perform a wind shear escape maneuver.

PREFERENTIAL ROUTES– Preferential routes (PDRs, PARs, and PDARs) are adapted in ARTCC computers to accomplish inter/intrafacility controller coordination and to assure that flight data is posted at the proper control positions. Locations having a need for these specific inbound and outbound routes normally publish such routes in local facility bulletins, and their use by pilots minimizes flight plan route amendments. When the workload or traffic situation permits, controllers normally provide radar vectors or assign requested routes to minimize circuitous routing. Preferential routes are usually confined to one ARTCC's area and are referred to by the following names or acronyms:

a. Preferential Departure Route (PDR). A specific departure route from an airport or terminal area to an en route point where there is no further need for flow control. It may be included in an Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) or a Preferred IFR Route.

b. Preferential Arrival Route (PAR). A specific arrival route from an appropriate en route point to an airport or terminal area. It may be included in a Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) or a Preferred IFR Route. The abbreviation "PAR" is used primarily within the ARTCC and should not be confused with the abbreviation for Precision Approach Radar.

c. Preferential Departure and Arrival Route (PDAR). A route between two terminals which are within or immediately adjacent to one ARTCC's area. PDARs are not synonymous with Preferred IFR Routes but may be listed as such as they do accomplish essentially the same purpose.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

PREFERRED IFR ROUTES– Routes established between busier airports to increase system efficiency and capacity. They normally extend through one or more ARTCC areas and are designed to achieve balanced traffic flows among high density terminals. IFR clearances are issued on the basis of these routes except when severe weather avoidance procedures or

other factors dictate otherwise. Preferred IFR Routes are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. If a flight is planned to or from an area having such routes but the departure or arrival point is not listed in the Airport/Facility Directory, pilots may use that part of a Preferred IFR Route which is appropriate for the departure or arrival point that is listed. Preferred IFR Routes are correlated with DPs and STARs and may be defined by airways, jet routes, direct routes between NAVAIDs, Waypoints, NAVAID radials/DME, or any combinations thereof.

(See CENTER'S AREA.)
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)
(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)
(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)
(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)
(Refer to NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

PRE-FLIGHT PILOT BRIEFING–
(See PILOT BRIEFING.)

PREVAILING VISIBILITY–
(See VISIBILITY.)

PRIMARY RADAR TARGET– An analog or digital target, exclusive of a secondary radar target, presented on a radar display.

PRM–
(See ILS PRM APPROACH and PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR.)

PROCEDURE TURN– The maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish an aircraft on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. The outbound course, direction of turn, distance within which the turn must be completed, and minimum altitude are specified in the procedure. However, unless otherwise restricted, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn are left to the discretion of the pilot.

(See ICAO term PROCEDURE TURN.)

PROCEDURE TURN [ICAO]– A maneuver in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Note 1: Procedure turns are designated "left" or "right" according to the direction of the initial turn.

Note 2: Procedure turns may be designated as being made either in level flight or while descending, according to the circumstances of each individual approach procedure.

PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND– That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of "procedure turn inbound" is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PROFILE DESCENT– An uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment; e.g., 250 knots at 10,000 feet MSL) from cruising altitude/level to interception of a glideslope or to a minimum altitude specified for the initial or intermediate approach segment of a nonprecision instrument approach. The profile descent normally terminates at the approach gate or where the glideslope or other appropriate minimum altitude is intercepted.

PROGRESS REPORT–
(See POSITION REPORT.)

PROGRESSIVE TAXI– Precise taxi instructions given to a pilot unfamiliar with the airport or issued in stages as the aircraft proceeds along the taxi route.

PROHIBITED AREA–
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)
(See ICAO term PROHIBITED AREA.)

PROHIBITED AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME– Each center has a PBCT parameter for each internal airport. Proposed internal flight plans are transmitted to the adjacent center if the flight time along the proposed route from the departure airport to the center boundary is less than or equal to the value of PBCT or if airport adaptation specifies transmission regardless of PBCT.

PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME– The time that the aircraft expects to become airborne.

PROTECTED AIRSPACE– The airspace on either side of an oceanic route/track that is equal to one-half

the lateral separation minimum except where reduction of protected airspace has been authorized.

PT–
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

PTP–
(See POINT–TO–POINT.)

PTS–
(See POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE.)

PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT– A segment on an IAP chart annotated as "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow will indicate the visual flight path on the profile and plan view with an associated note on the approximate heading and distance. The visual segment should be flown as a dead reckoning course while maintaining visual conditions.

PUBLISHED ROUTE– A route for which an IFR altitude has been established and published; e.g., Federal Airways, Jet Routes, Area Navigation Routes, Specified Direct Routes.

PWS–
(See PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM.)

RADAR SERVICE– A term which encompasses one or more of the following services based on the use of radar which can be provided by a controller to a pilot of a radar identified aircraft.

a. Radar Monitoring– The radar flight-following of aircraft, whose primary navigation is being performed by the pilot, to observe and note deviations from its authorized flight path, airway, or route. When being applied specifically to radar monitoring of instrument approaches; i.e., with precision approach radar (PAR) or radar monitoring of simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches, it includes advice and instructions whenever an aircraft nears or exceeds the prescribed PAR safety limit or simultaneous ILS/MLS no transgression zone.

(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

b. Radar Navigational Guidance– Vectoring aircraft to provide course guidance.

c. Radar Separation– Radar spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima.

(See ICAO term RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE [ICAO]– Term used to indicate a service provided directly by means of radar.

a. Monitoring– The use of radar for the purpose of providing aircraft with information and advice relative to significant deviations from nominal flight path.

b. Separation– The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from radar sources.

RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED– Used by ATC to inform a pilot that he/she will no longer be provided any of the services that could be received while in radar contact. Radar service is automatically terminated, and the pilot is not advised in the following cases:

a. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where Basic Radar service is provided.

b. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

c. An arriving VFR aircraft, receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where sequencing service is provided, has landed; or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

d. An aircraft completes a radar approach.

RADAR SURVEILLANCE– The radar observation of a given geographical area for the purpose of performing some radar function.

RADAR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES– Advisories issued to alert pilots to known or observed radar traffic which may affect the intended route of flight of their aircraft.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE–

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR VECTORING [ICAO]– Provision of navigational guidance to aircraft in the form of specific headings, based on the use of radar.

RADIAL– A magnetic bearing extending from a VOR/VORTAC/TACAN navigation facility.

RADIO–

a. A device used for communication.

b. Used to refer to a flight service station; e.g., “Seattle Radio” is used to call Seattle FSS.

RADIO ALTIMETER– Aircraft equipment which makes use of the reflection of radio waves from the ground to determine the height of the aircraft above the surface.

RADIO BEACON–

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

RADIO DETECTION AND RANGING–

(See RADAR.)

RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR– An aircraft navigational instrument coupled with a gyro compass or similar compass that indicates the direction of a selected NAVAID and indicates bearing with respect to the heading of the aircraft.

RAIS–

(See REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE.)

RAMP–

(See APRON.)

RANDOM ALTITUDE– An altitude inappropriate for direction of flight and/or not in accordance with FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA.

RANDOM ROUTE– Any route not established or charted/published or not otherwise available to all users.

RC–
(See ROAD RECONNAISSANCE.)

RCAG–
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY.)

RCC–
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)

RCO–
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

RCR–
(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

READ BACK– Repeat my message back to me.

RECEIVER AUTONOMOUS INTEGRITY MONITORING (RAIM)– A technique whereby a civil GNSS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GNSS navigation signals without reference to sensors or non-DoD integrity systems other than the receiver itself. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements.

RECEIVING CONTROLLER– A controller/facility receiving control of an aircraft from another controller/facility.

RECEIVING FACILITY–
(See RECEIVING CONTROLLER.)

RECONFORMANCE– The automated process of bringing an aircraft's Current Plan Trajectory into conformance with its track.

REDUCE SPEED TO (SPEED)–
(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

REIL–
(See RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS.)

RELEASE TIME– A departure time restriction issued to a pilot by ATC (either directly or through an authorized relay) when necessary to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.
(See ICAO term RELEASE TIME.)

RELEASE TIME [ICAO]– Time prior to which an aircraft should be given further clearance or prior to which it should not proceed in case of radio failure.

REMOTE AIRPORT ADVISORY (RAA)– A remote service which may be provided by facilities, which are not located on the landing airport, but have a discrete ground–to–air communication frequency or tower frequency when the tower is closed, automated weather reporting with voice available to the pilot at the landing airport, and a continuous ASOS/AWSS/AWOS data display, other direct reading instruments, or manual observation is available to the AFSS specialist.

REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE (RAIS)– A temporary service provided by facilities, which are not located on the landing airport, but have communication capability and automated weather reporting available to the pilot at the landing airport.

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY– An unmanned VHF/UHF transmitter/receiver facility which is used to expand ARTCC air/ground communications coverage and to facilitate direct contact between pilots and controllers. RCAG facilities are sometimes not equipped with emergency frequencies 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz.
(Refer to AIM.)

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET– An unmanned communications facility remotely controlled by air traffic personnel. RCOs serve FSSs. RTRs serve terminal ATC facilities. An RCO or RTR may be UHF or VHF and will extend the communication range of the air traffic facility. There are several classes of RCOs and RTRs. The class is determined by the number of transmitters or receivers. Classes A through G are used primarily for air/ground purposes. RCO and RTR class O facilities are nonprotected outlets subject to undetected and prolonged outages. RCO (O's) and RTR (O's) were established for the express purpose of providing ground-to-ground communications between air traffic control specialists and pilots located at a satellite airport for delivering en route clearances, issuing departure authorizations, and acknowledging instrument flight rules cancellations or departure/landing times. As a secondary function, they may be used for advisory purposes whenever the aircraft is below the coverage of the primary air/ground frequency.

REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER–
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

S

SAA–
(See SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE.)

SAFETY ALERT– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he/she is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions; e.g., "Low Altitude Alert, check your altitude immediately."

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft that is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible; e.g., "Traffic Alert, advise you turn right heading zero niner zero or climb to eight thousand immediately."

Note: The issuance of a safety alert is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of an unsafe condition. The course of action provided will be predicated on other traffic under ATC control. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, he/she will take.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM– A software enhancement to ASDE–3, ASDE–X, and ASDE–3X, that predicts the path of aircraft landing and/or departing, and/or vehicular movements on runways. Visual and aural alarms are activated when the safety logic projects a potential collision. The Airport Movement Area Safety System (AMASS) is a safety logic system enhancement to the ASDE–3. The Safety Logic System for ASDE–X and ASDE–3X is an integral part of the software program.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM ALERTS–

a. ALERT– An actual situation involving two real safety logic tracks (aircraft/aircraft, aircraft/vehicle, or aircraft/other tangible object) that safety logic has predicted will result in an imminent collision, based upon the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

b. FALSE ALERT–

1. Alerts generated by one or more false surface–radar targets that the system has interpreted as real tracks and placed into safety logic.

2. Alerts in which the safety logic software did not perform correctly, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

3. The alert is generated by surface radar targets caused by moderate or greater precipitation.

c. NUISANCE ALERT– An alert in which one or more of the following is true:

1. The alert is generated by a known situation that is not considered an unsafe operation, such as LAHSO or other approved operations.

2. The alert is generated by inaccurate secondary radar data received by the Safety Logic System.

3. One or more of the aircraft involved in the alert is not intending to use a runway (for example, helicopter, pipeline patrol, non–Mode C overflight, etc.).

d. VALID NON–ALERT– A situation in which the safety logic software correctly determines that an alert is not required, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

e. INVALID NON–ALERT– A situation in which the safety logic software did not issue an alert when an alert was required, based upon the design specifications.

SAIL BACK– A maneuver during high wind conditions (usually with power off) where float plane movement is controlled by water rudders/opening and closing cabin doors.

SAME DIRECTION AIRCRAFT– Aircraft are operating in the same direction when:

a. They are following the same track in the same direction; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in the same direction; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of less than 45 degrees.

SAR–
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SAY AGAIN– Used to request a repeat of the last transmission. Usually specifies transmission or portion thereof not understood or received; e.g., "Say again all after ABRAM VOR."

SAY ALTITUDE– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's specific altitude/flight level. When the aircraft is climbing or descending, the pilot should state the indicated altitude rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

SAY HEADING– Used by ATC to request an aircraft heading. The pilot should state the actual heading of the aircraft.

SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL (STA)– A STA is the desired time that an aircraft should cross a certain point (landing or metering fix). It takes other traffic and airspace configuration into account. A STA time shows the results of the TMA scheduler that has calculated an arrival time according to parameters such as optimized spacing, aircraft performance, and weather.

SDF–
(See SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY.)

SEA LANE– A designated portion of water outlined by visual surface markers for and intended to be used by aircraft designed to operate on water.

SEARCH AND RESCUE– A service which seeks missing aircraft and assists those found to be in need of assistance. It is a cooperative effort using the facilities and services of available Federal, state and local agencies. The U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for coordination of search and rescue for the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible for search and rescue for the Inland Region. Information pertinent to search and rescue should be passed through any air traffic facility or be transmitted directly to the Rescue Coordination Center by telephone.
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SEARCH AND RESCUE FACILITY– A facility responsible for maintaining and operating a search and rescue (SAR) service to render aid to persons and property in distress. It is any SAR unit, station, NET, or other operational activity which can be usefully employed during an SAR Mission; e.g., a Civil Air Patrol Wing, or a Coast Guard Station.
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SECNOT–
(See SECURITY NOTICE.)

SECONDARY RADAR TARGET– A target derived from a transponder return presented on a radar display.

SECTIONAL AERONAUTICAL CHARTS–
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL– A parameter number of minutes after the meter fix time when arrival aircraft will be deleted from the arrival sector list.

SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT) – A SECNOT is a request originated by the Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC) for an extensive communications search for aircraft involved, or suspected of being involved, in a security violation.
A SECNOT will include the aircraft identification, search area, and expiration time. The search area, as defined by the ATSC, could be a single airport, multiple airports, a radius of an airport or fix, or a route of flight. Once the expiration time has been reached, the SECNOT is considered to be cancelled.

SECURITY SERVICES AIRSPACE – Areas established through the regulatory process or by NOTAM, issued by the Administrator under title 14, CFR, sections 99.7, 91.141, and 91.139, which specify that ATC security services are required; i.e., ADIZ or temporary flight rules areas.

SEE AND AVOID– When weather conditions permit, pilots operating IFR or VFR are required to observe and maneuver to avoid other aircraft. Right-of-way rules are contained in 14 CFR Part 91.

SEGMENTED CIRCLE– A system of visual indicators designed to provide traffic pattern information at airports without operating control towers.
(Refer to AIM.)

SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE– An instrument approach procedure may have as many as four separate segments depending on how the approach procedure is structured.

a. Initial Approach– The segment between the initial approach fix and the intermediate fix or the

point where the aircraft is established on the intermediate course or final approach course.

(See ICAO term INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

b. Intermediate Approach– The segment between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix.

(See ICAO term INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT.)

c. Final Approach– The segment between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport, or missed approach point.

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

d. Missed Approach– The segment between the missed approach point or the point of arrival at decision height and the missed approach fix at the prescribed altitude.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

(See ICAO term MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SEPARATION– In air traffic control, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

(See SEPARATION MINIMA.)

(See ICAO term SEPARATION.)

SEPARATION [ICAO]– Spacing between aircraft, levels or tracks.

SEPARATION MINIMA– The minimum longitudinal, lateral, or vertical distances by which aircraft are spaced through the application of air traffic control procedures.

(See SEPARATION.)

SERVICE– A generic term that designates functions or assistance available from or rendered by air traffic control. For example, Class C service would denote the ATC services provided within a Class C airspace area.

SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN– An approved plan to minimize the affect of severe weather on traffic flows in impacted terminal and/or ARTCC areas. SWAP is normally implemented to provide the least disruption to the ATC system when flight through portions of airspace is difficult or impossible due to severe weather.

SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS– Preliminary messages issued in order to alert users that a Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (WW) is being issued. These messages define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The messages are unscheduled and issued as required by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) at Norman, Oklahoma.

(See AIRMET.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(See SIGMET.)

SFA–

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SFO–

(See SIMULATED FLAMEOUT.)

SHF–

(See SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY.)

SHORT RANGE CLEARANCE– A clearance issued to a departing IFR flight which authorizes IFR flight to a specific fix short of the destination while air traffic control facilities are coordinating and obtaining the complete clearance.

SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT– An aircraft which, at some weight within its approved operating weight, is capable of operating from a runway in compliance with the applicable STOL characteristics, airworthiness, operations, noise, and pollution standards.

(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

SIAP–

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SID–

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE.)

SIDESTEP MANEUVER– A visual maneuver accomplished by a pilot at the completion of an instrument approach to permit a straight-in landing on a parallel runway not more than 1,200 feet to either side of the runway to which the instrument approach was conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET– A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of all aircraft.

SIGMET advisories cover severe and extreme turbulence, severe icing, and widespread dust or sandstorms that reduce visibility to less than 3 miles.
(See AIRMET.)
(See AWW.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See ICAO term SIGMET INFORMATION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET INFORMATION [ICAO]– Information issued by a meteorological watch office concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION–
(See SIGMET.)

SIGNIFICANT POINT– A point, whether a named intersection, a NAVAID, a fix derived from a NAVAID(s), or geographical coordinate expressed in degrees of latitude and longitude, which is established for the purpose of providing separation, as a reporting point, or to delineate a route of flight.

SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches. The final approach course is similar to that of an ILS localizer except that the SDF course may be offset from the runway, generally not more than 3 degrees, and the course may be wider than the localizer, resulting in a lower degree of accuracy.
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULATED FLAMEOUT– A practice approach by a jet aircraft (normally military) at idle thrust to a runway. The approach may start at a runway (high key) and may continue on a relatively high and wide downwind leg with a continuous turn to final. It terminates in landing or low approach. The purpose of this approach is to simulate a flameout.
(See FLAMEOUT.)

SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES– An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 4,300 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne equipment.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULTANEOUS MLS APPROACHES–
(See SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

SINGLE DIRECTION ROUTES– Preferred IFR Routes which are sometimes depicted on high altitude en route charts and which are normally flown in one direction only.
(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)
(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH– A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft which permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation “SFA” in the DOD FLIP IFR Supplement under “Communications” indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT– A military turbojet aircraft possessing one set of flight controls, tandem cockpits, or two sets of flight controls but operated by one pilot is considered single-piloted by ATC when determining the appropriate air traffic service to be applied.
(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SKYSPOTTER– A pilot who has received specialized training in observing and reporting inflight weather phenomena.

SLASH– A radar beacon reply displayed as an elongated target.

SLDI–
(See SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL.)

SLOT TIME–
(See METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

SLOW TAXI– To taxi a float plane at low power or low RPM.

SN–
(See SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION.)

SPEAK SLOWER– Used in verbal communications as a request to reduce speech rate.

SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA)– Any airspace with defined dimensions within the National Airspace System wherein limitations may be

imposed upon aircraft operations. This airspace may be restricted areas, prohibited areas, military operations areas, air ATC assigned airspace, and any other designated airspace areas. The dimensions of this airspace are programmed into URET and can be designated as either active or inactive by screen entry. Aircraft trajectories are constantly tested against the dimensions of active areas and alerts issued to the applicable sectors when violations are predicted.

(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

SPECIAL EMERGENCY– A condition of air piracy or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

SPECIAL INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE–

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE– Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

a. Alert Area– Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert Areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an Alert Area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

b. Controlled Firing Area– Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

c. Military Operations Area (MOA)– A MOA is airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

d. Prohibited Area– Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to En Route Charts.)

e. Restricted Area– Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Restricted areas are depicted on en route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 73.)

(Refer to AIM.)

f. Warning Area– A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States, that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions that are less than those required for basic VFR flight in Class B, C, D, or E surface areas and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.

(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT [ICAO]– A VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in metrological conditions below VMC.

SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS– Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minima. Such operations must be requested by the pilot and approved by ATC.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)

(See ICAO term SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT.)

SPEED–

(See AIRSPEED.)

(See GROUND SPEED.)

SPEED ADJUSTMENT– An ATC procedure used to request pilots to adjust aircraft speed to a specific value for the purpose of providing desired spacing.

Pilots are expected to maintain a speed of plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed. Examples of speed adjustments are:

a. "Increase/reduce speed to Mach point (number.)"

b. "Increase/reduce speed to (speed in knots)" or "Increase/reduce speed (number of knots) knots."

SPEED BRAKES– Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed during descent and landing.

SPEED SEGMENTS– Portions of the arrival route between the transition point and the vertex along the optimum flight path for which speeds and altitudes are specified. There is one set of arrival speed segments adapted from each transition point to each vertex. Each set may contain up to six segments.

SQUAWK (Mode, Code, Function)– Activate specific modes/codes/functions on the aircraft transponder; e.g., "Squawk three/alpha, two one zero five, low."

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STA–

(See SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

STAGING/QUEUING– The placement, integration, and segregation of departure aircraft in designated movement areas of an airport by departure fix, EDCT, and/or restriction.

STAND BY– Means the controller or pilot must pause for a few seconds, usually to attend to other duties of a higher priority. Also means to wait as in "stand by for clearance." The caller should reestablish contact if a delay is lengthy. "Stand by" is not an approval or denial.

STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE (SIAP)–

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE (SID)– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control (ATC) departure procedure printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstacle clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement to expedite traffic flow and to reduce pilot/controller workload. ATC clearance must always be received prior to flying a SID.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

STANDARD RATE TURN– A turn of three degrees per second.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. STARs provide transition from the en route structure to an outer fix or an instrument approach fix/arrival waypoint in the terminal area.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL CHARTS–

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STANDARD TERMINAL AUTOMATION REPLACEMENT SYSTEM (STARS)–

(See DTAS.)

STAR–

(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

STATE AIRCRAFT– Aircraft used in military, customs and police service, in the exclusive service of any government, or of any political subdivision, thereof including the government of any state, territory, or possession of the United States or the District of Columbia, but not including any government-owned aircraft engaged in carrying persons or property for commercial purposes.

STATIC RESTRICTIONS– Those restrictions that are usually not subject to change, fixed, in place, and/or published.

STATIONARY RESERVATIONS– Altitude reservations which encompass activities in a fixed area. Stationary reservations may include activities, such as special tests of weapons systems or equipment, certain U.S. Navy carrier, fleet, and anti-submarine operations, rocket, missile and drone operations, and certain aerial refueling or similar operations.

STEP TAXI– To taxi a float plane at full power or high RPM.

STEP TURN– A maneuver used to put a float plane in a planing configuration prior to entering an active sea lane for takeoff. The STEP TURN maneuver should only be used upon pilot request.

STEPDOWN FIX– A fix permitting additional descent within a segment of an instrument approach

procedure by identifying a point at which a controlling obstacle has been safely overflown.

STEREO ROUTE– A routinely used route of flight established by users and ARTCCs identified by a coded name; e.g., ALPHA 2. These routes minimize flight plan handling and communications.

STOL AIRCRAFT–
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK– Used by ATC to inform an aircraft to turn-off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder. It is issued when the verbally reported altitude varies 300 feet or more from the automatic altitude report.
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP AND GO– A procedure wherein an aircraft will land, make a complete stop on the runway, and then commence a takeoff from that point.
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See OPTION APPROACH.)

STOP BURST–
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP BUZZER–
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP SQUAWK (Mode or Code)– Used by ATC to tell the pilot to turn specified functions of the aircraft transponder off.
(See STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP STREAM– Used by ATC to request a pilot to suspend electronic attack activity.
(See JAMMING.)

STOPOVER FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan format which permits in a single submission the filing of a sequence of flight plans through interim full-stop destinations to a final destination.

STOPWAY– An area beyond the takeoff runway no less wide than the runway and centered upon the extended centerline of the runway, able to support the airplane during an aborted takeoff, without causing structural damage to the airplane, and designated by the airport authorities for use in decelerating the airplane during an aborted takeoff.

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR– An instrument approach wherein final approach is begun without first having executed a procedure turn, not necessarily completed with a straight-in landing or made to straight-in landing minimums.
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR– Entry into the traffic pattern by interception of the extended runway centerline (final approach course) without executing any other portion of the traffic pattern.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING– A landing made on a runway aligned within 30° of the final approach course following completion of an instrument approach.
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS–
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS–
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRATEGIC PLANNING– Planning whereby solutions are sought to resolve potential conflicts.

SUBSTITUTE ROUTE– A route assigned to pilots when any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status. These routes consist of:

a. Substitute routes which are shown on U.S. Government charts.

b. Routes defined by ATC as specific NAVAID radials or courses.

c. Routes defined by ATC as direct to or between NAVAIDs.

SUNSET AND SUNRISE– The mean solar times of sunset and sunrise as published in the Nautical Almanac, converted to local standard time for the locality concerned. Within Alaska, the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as defined for each locality.

SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 gigahertz (GHz). The elevation and azimuth stations of the microwave landing system operate from 5031 MHz to 5091 MHz in this spectrum.

SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION– Airport facilities staffed with contract

personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. (All other services are provided by the parent FSS.)

SUPPS– Refers to ICAO Document 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures. SUPPS contain procedures for each ICAO Region which are unique to that Region and are not covered in the worldwide provisions identified in the ICAO Air Navigation Plan. Procedures contained in Chapter 8 are based in part on those published in SUPPS.

SURFACE AREA– The airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D, or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.

SURPIC– A description of surface vessels in the area of a Search and Rescue incident including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(Refer to FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–6–4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

SURVEILLANCE APPROACH– An instrument approach wherein the air traffic controller issues instructions, for pilot compliance, based on aircraft position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), and the distance (range) from the end of the runway as displayed on the controller's radar scope. The controller will provide recommended altitudes on final approach if requested by the pilot.

(Refer to AIM.)

SWAP–

(See SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN.)

SWSL–

(See SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION.)

SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION– Military activity accomplished by navigating along a preplanned route using internal aircraft systems to maintain a desired track. This activity normally requires a lateral route width of 10 NM and altitude range of 1,000 feet to 6,000 feet AGL with some route segments that permit terrain following.

system providing the aircrew 'Low Altitude warnings' to allow immediate pilot action.

TERRAIN FOLLOWING– The flight of a military aircraft maintaining a constant AGL altitude above the terrain or the highest obstruction. The altitude of the aircraft will constantly change with the varying terrain and/or obstruction.

TETRAHEDRON– A device normally located on uncontrolled airports and used as a landing direction indicator. The small end of a tetrahedron points in the direction of landing. At controlled airports, the tetrahedron, if installed, should be disregarded because tower instructions supersede the indicator.

(See SEGMENTED CIRCLE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

TF–

(See TERRAIN FOLLOWING.)

THAT IS CORRECT– The understanding you have is right.

360 OVERHEAD–

(See OVERHEAD MANEUVER.)

THRESHOLD– The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

(See DISPLACED THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT– The theoretical height above the runway threshold at which the aircraft's glideslope antenna would be if the aircraft maintains the trajectory established by the mean ILS glideslope or MLS glidepath.

(See GLIDESLOPE.)

(See THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD LIGHTS–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TIBS–

(See TELEPHONE INFORMATION BRIEFING SERVICE.)

TIME GROUP– Four digits representing the hour and minutes from the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) clock. FAA uses UTC for all operations. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. When written, a time zone designator is used to indicate local time; e.g. "0205M" (Mountain). The local time may be based on the 24-hour clock system. The day begins at 0000 and ends at 2359.

TIS–B–

(See TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE–BROADCAST.)

TMA–

(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT ADVISOR.)

TMPA–

(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT.)

TMU–

(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT.)

TODA [ICAO]–

(See ICAO Term TAKE-OFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TOI–

(See TRACK OF INTEREST.)

TORA [ICAO]–

(See ICAO Term TAKE-OFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TORCHING– The burning of fuel at the end of an exhaust pipe or stack of a reciprocating aircraft engine, the result of an excessive richness in the fuel air mixture.

TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]– For IFR flights, the estimated time required from take-off to arrive over that designated point, defined by reference to navigation aids, from which it is intended that an instrument approach procedure will be commenced, or, if no navigation aid is associated with the destination aerodrome, to arrive over the destination aerodrome. For VFR flights, the estimated time required from take-off to arrive over the destination aerodrome.

(See ICAO term ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

TOUCH-AND-GO– An operation by an aircraft that lands and departs on a runway without stopping or exiting the runway.

TOUCH-AND-GO LANDING–

(See TOUCH-AND-GO.)

TOUCHDOWN–

a. The point at which an aircraft first makes contact with the landing surface.

b. Concerning a precision radar approach (PAR), it is the point where the glide path intercepts the landing surface.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN.)

TOUCHDOWN [ICAO]– The point where the nominal glide path intercepts the runway.

Note: Touchdown as defined above is only a datum and is not necessarily the actual point at which the aircraft will touch the runway.

TOUCHDOWN RVR–

(See VISIBILITY.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE– The first 3,000 feet of the runway beginning at the threshold. The area is used for determination of Touchdown Zone Elevation in the development of straight-in landing minimums for instrument approaches.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE [ICAO]– The portion of a runway, beyond the threshold, where it is intended landing aircraft first contact the runway.

TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION– The highest elevation in the first 3,000 feet of the landing surface. TDZE is indicated on the instrument approach procedure chart when straight-in landing minimums are authorized.

(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTING–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TOWER– A terminal facility that uses air/ground communications, visual signaling, and other devices to provide ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of an airport or on the movement area. Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace area regardless of flight plan or weather conditions (IFR or VFR). A tower may also provide approach control services (radar or nonradar).

(See AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See MOVEMENT AREA.)

(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL TOWER.)

(Refer to AIM.)

TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE– The control of IFR en route traffic within delegated airspace between two or more adjacent approach control facilities. This service is designed to expedite traffic and reduce control and pilot communication requirements.

TOWER TO TOWER–

(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

TPX-42– A numeric beacon decoder equipment/system. It is designed to be added to terminal radar systems for beacon decoding. It provides rapid target identification, reinforcement of the primary radar target, and altitude information from Mode C.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

(See TRANSPONDER.)

TRACEABLE PRESSURE STANDARD– The facility station pressure instrument, with certification/calibration traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Traceable pressure standards may be mercurial barometers, commissioned ASOS/AWSS or dual transducer AWOS, or portable pressure standards or DASI.

TRACK– The actual flight path of an aircraft over the surface of the earth.

(See COURSE.)

(See FLIGHT PATH.)

(See ROUTE.)

(See ICAO term TRACK.)

TRACK [ICAO]– The projection on the earth's surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which path at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (True, Magnetic, or Grid).

TRACK OF INTEREST (TOI)– Displayed data representing an airborne object that threatens or has the potential to threaten North America or National Security. Indicators may include, but are not limited to: noncompliance with air traffic control instructions or aviation regulations; extended loss of communications; unusual transmissions or unusual flight behavior; unauthorized intrusion into controlled airspace or an ADIZ; noncompliance with issued flight restrictions/security procedures; or unlawful interference with airborne flight crews, up to and including hijack. In certain circumstances, an object may become a TOI based on specific and credible intelligence pertaining to that particular aircraft/object, its passengers, or its cargo.

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

Accident, Aircraft, Reporting, 7–6–1

Accident Cause Factors, 7–5–1

Adherence to Clearance, 4–4–5

ADIZ. *See* Air Defense Identification Zones

ADS–B. *See* Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Broadcast

Advisories
- Braking Action, 4–3–7
- Inflight Aviation Weather, 7–1–9
- Minimum Fuel, 5–5–6
- Runway Friction, 4–3–8
- Traffic, 5–5–4

Aerobatic Flight, 8–1–7

Aerodrome Forecast (TAF), 7–1–69, 7–1–70

Aeronautical
- Charts, 9–1–1
- Publications, 9–1–1

Aeronautical Light Beacons, 2–2–1

AFIS. *See* Automatic Flight Information Service

AHRS. *See* Attitude Heading Reference System

Air Ambulance Flights, 4–2–4

Air Defense Identification Zone, Land–Based, 5–6–1

Air Defense Identification Zones, 5–6–1, 5–6–7

Air Route Surveillance Radar, 4–5–7

Air Route Traffic Control Centers, 4–1–1

Air Traffic Control
- Aircraft Separation, 4–4–1
- Clearances, 4–4–1
- Pilot Services, 4–1–1
  - Air Route Traffic Control Centers, 4–1–1
  - Airport Reservations, 4–1–21
  - Approach Control Service, Arriving VFR Aircraft, 4–1–2
  - Automatic Terminal Information Service, 4–1–7
  - Communications, Release of IFR Aircraft, Airports without Operating Control Tower, 4–1–1
  - Control Towers, 4–1–1
  - Flight Service Stations, 4–1–1
  - Ground Vehicle Operations, 4–1–6
  - Hazardous Area Reporting Service, 4–1–18
  - IFR Approaches, 4–1–6
  - Operation Raincheck, 4–1–2
  - Operation Take–off, 4–1–2
  - Radar Assistance to VFR Aircraft, 4–1–11
  - Radar Traffic Information Service, 4–1–8
  - Recording and Monitoring, 4–1–1
  - Safety Alert, 4–1–10
  - Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft, 4–1–12
  - Tower En Route Control, 4–1–14
  - Traffic Advisory Practices, Airports Without Operating Control Towers, 4–1–2
  - Transponder Operation, 4–1–15
  - Unicom, Use for ATC Purposes, 4–1–7
  - Unicom/Multicom, 4–1–6

Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System, 4–1–15, 4–5–2

Aircraft
- Arresting Devices, 2–3–31
- Call Signs, 4–2–3
- Lights, Use in Airport Operations, 4–3–19
- Unmanned, 7–5–2
- VFR, Emergency Radar Service, 6–2–1

Aircraft Conflict Alert, 4–1–11

Airport
- Aids, Marking, 2–3–1
  - Holding Position, 2–3–12
  - Pavement, 2–3–1
    - Holding Position, 2–3–1
    - Other, 2–3–1
    - Runway, 2–3–1
    - Taxiway, 2–3–1
- Airport Advisory/Information Services, 3–5–1
- Lighting Aids, 2–1–1
- Local Airport Advisory (LAA), 4–1–3
- Operations, 4–3–1
  - Communications, 4–3–12
  - Exiting the Runway, After Landing, 4–3–17
  - Flight Check Aircraft, In Terminal Areas, 4–3–20
  - Flight Inspection, 4–3–20
  - Gate Holding, Departure Delays, 4–3–13
  - Intersection Takeoffs, 4–3–8
  - Low Approach, 4–3–11
  - Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Detection Systems, 4–3–7
  - Option Approach, 4–3–19
  - Signals, Hand, 4–3–20
  - Taxi During Low Visibility, 4–3–16
  - Traffic Control Light Signals, 4–3–11
  - Traffic Patterns, 4–3–1, 4–3–2
  - Use of Aircraft Lights, 4–3–19
  - Use of Runways, 4–3–6

[References are to page numbers]

VFR Flights in Terminal Areas, 4–3–13
VFR Helicopter at Controlled Airports, 4–3–13
With Operating Control Tower, 4–3–1
Without Operating Control Tower, 4–3–5
Remote Airport Advisory (RAA), 3–5–1, 4–1–4
Remote Airport Information Service (RAIS), 3–5–1, 4–1–4
Signs, 2–3–1, 2–3–20
Destination, 2–3–29
Direction, 2–3–26
Information, 2–3–30
Location, 2–3–24
Mandatory Instruction, 2–3–21
Runway Distance Remaining, 2–3–30

Airport Reservations, 4–1–21

Airport Surface Detection Equipment – Model X (ASDE–X), 4–5–7

Airport Surveillance Radar, 4–5–7

Airspace, 3–1–1
Basic VFR Weather Minimums, 3–1–1
Class D, 3–2–8
Class E, 3–2–9
Class G, 3–3–1
Controlled, 3–2–1
Advisories, Traffic, 3–2–1
Alerts, Safety, 3–2–1
Class A, 3–2–2
Class B, 3–2–2
Class C, 3–2–4
IFR Requirements, 3–2–1
IFR Separation, 3–2–1
Parachute Jumps, 3–2–2
Ultralight Vehicles, 3–2–2
Unmanned Free Balloons, 3–2–2
VFR Requirements, 3–2–1
Flight Levels, 3–1–2
General Dimensions, Segments, 3–1–1
Military Training Routes, 3–5–1
Other Areas, 3–5–1
Parachute Jumping, 3–5–5
Special Use, 3–4–1
Temporary Flight Restrictions, 3–5–2
Terminal Radar Service Areas, 3–5–9
VFR Cruising Altitudes, 3–1–2
VFR Routes, Published, 3–5–5
Class B Airspace, VFR Transition Routes, 3–5–7
VFR Corridors, 3–5–7
VFR Flyways, 3–5–5

Airway, 5–3–5

Airways, Course Changes, 5–3–7

Alcohol, 8–1–1

Alert, Safety, 4–1–10, 5–5–3

Alert Areas, 3–4–2

Alignment of Elements Approach Slope Indicator, 2–1–5

Alphabet, Phonetic, 4–2–5

ALS. *See* Approach Light Systems

Altimeter
Density Altitude, 7–5–4
Errors, 7–2–3
Setting, 7–2–1
High Barometric Pressure, 7–2–4
Low Barometric Pressure, 7–2–4

Altitude
Automatic Reporting, 4–1–15
Effects, 8–1–3
Hypoxia, 8–1–3
High Altitude Destinations, 5–1–25
Mandatory, 5–4–6
Maximum, 5–4–6
Minimum, 5–4–6

Ambulance, Air, 4–2–4

Amended Clearances, 4–4–2

Approach
Advance Information, Instrument Approach, 5–4–3
Approach Control, 5–4–2
Clearance, 5–4–25
Contact, 5–4–56, 5–5–2
Direction Finding, Emergency, 6–2–1
Instrument, 5–5–2
Instrument Approach Procedure, Charts, 5–4–4
Instrument Approach Procedures, 5–4–26
Low, 4–3–11
Minimums, 5–4–49
Missed, 5–4–52, 5–5–2
No–Gyro, 5–4–35
Option, 4–3–19
Overhead Approach Maneuver, 5–4–56
Precision, 5–4–34
Surveillance, 5–4–34
Visual, 5–4–54, 5–5–5

Approach Control Service, VFR Arriving Aircraft, 4–1–2

Approach Light Systems, 2–1–1

[References are to page numbers]

Approaches
IFR, 4–1–6
Parallel Runways, ILS/MLS, 5–4–36
Radar, 5–4–34
Timed, 5–4–31

Area Navigation (RNAV), 1–2–1, 5–1–14, 5–3–6, 5–5–7

Area Navigation (RNAV) Routes, 5–3–6

Area Navigation (RNAV) Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR), 5–4–1

ARFF (Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting) Emergency Hand Signals, 6–5–1

ARFF (Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting) Radio Call Sign, 6–5–1

Arresting Devices, Aircraft, 2–3–31

ARSR. *See* Air Route Surveillance Radar

ARTCC. *See* Air Route Traffic Control Centers

Ash, Volcanic, 7–5–7

ASOS. *See* Automated Surface Observing System

ASR. *See* Airport Surveillance Radar; Surveillance Approach

ATCRBS. *See* Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System

ATCT. *See* Control Towers

ATIS. *See* Automatic Terminal Information Service

Attitude Heading Reference System (AHRS), 1–1–25

Authority, Statutory, 1–1–1

Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS), 4–3–24, 7–1–29

Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS), 4–3–24, 7–1–27

Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS), 4–3–24

Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS), 7–1–29

Automatic Altitude Reporting, 4–1–15

Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Broadcast, 4–4–11

Automatic Flight Information Service (AFIS) – Alaska FSSs Only, 4–1–8

Automatic Terminal Information Service, 4–1–7

AWOS. *See* Automated Weather Observing System

B

Balloons, Unmanned, 7–5–2
Free, 3–2–2

Beacon
Aeronautical Light, 2–2–1
Code, 2–2–1
Marker, 1–1–9
Nondirectional Radio, 1–1–1

Beacons, Airport/Heliport, 2–1–11

Bird
Bird Strike
Reduction, 7–4–1
Reporting, 7–4–1
Hazards, 7–4–1
Migratory, 7–4–1

Bird/Other Wildlife Strike Reporting, Form. *See* Appendix 1

Block Island Reporting Service, 4–1–19

Braking Action Advisories, 4–3–7

Braking Action Reports, 4–3–7

Briefing, Preflight, 7–1–6

C

Call Signs
Aircraft, 4–2–3
Ground Station, 4–2–4

Cape Code Radar Overwater Flight Following, 4–1–19

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning, 8–1–5

CAT. *See* Clear Air Turbulence

CDR. *See* Coded Depature Route

Changeover Points, 5–3–8

Charted Visual Flight Procedures, 5–4–55

Charts, Aeronautical, 9–1–1

Class A Airspace, 3–2–2
Definition, 3–2–2
Operating Rules, 3–2–2
Pilot/Equipment Requirements, 3–2–2

Class B Airspace, 3–2–2
ATC Clearances, 3–2–3
Definition, 3–2–2
Flight Procedures, 3–2–3
Mode C Veil, 3–2–3
Operating Rules, 3–2–2

[References are to page numbers]

Pilot/Equipment Requirements, VFR Operations, 3–2–2
Proximity Operations, 3–2–4
Separation, 3–2–3
VFR Transition Routes, 3–5–7

Class C Airspace, 3–2–4
Air Traffic Services, 3–2–5
Aircraft Separation, 3–2–5
Definition, 3–2–4
Operating Rules, 3–2–4
Outer Area, 3–2–5
Pilot/Equipment Requirements, 3–2–4
Secondary Airports, 3–2–6

Class D Airspace, 3–2–8
Definition, 3–2–8
Operating Rules, 3–2–8
Pilot/Equipment Requirements, 3–2–8
Separation for VFR Aircraft, 3–2–8

Class E Airspace, 3–2–9
Definition, 3–2–9
Operating Rules, 3–2–9
Pilot/Equipment Requirements, 3–2–9
Separation for VFR Aircraft, 3–2–9
Types, 3–2–9
Vertical Limits, 3–2–9

Class G Airspace, 3–3–1
IFR Requirements, 3–3–1
VFR Requirements, 3–3–1

Clear Air Turbulence, 7–1–48

Clearance
Abbreviated IFR Departure, 5–2–2
Adherence, 4–4–5
Air Traffic, 5–5–1
Air Traffic Control, 4–4–1
Amended, 4–4–2
Approach, 5–4–25
IFR, VFR–on–Top, 4–4–4
IFR Flights, 4–4–5
Issuance, Pilot Responsibility, 4–4–4
Items, 4–4–1
Altitude Data, 4–4–2
Clearance Limit, 4–4–1
Departure Procedure, 4–4–1
Holding Instructions, 4–4–2
Route of Flight, 4–4–1
Pre–Taxi, 5–2–1
Prefix, 4–4–1
Taxi, 5–2–1
VFR Flights, 4–4–5
Void Times, 5–2–4

Clearances, Special VFR Clearances, 4–4–3

Clearing Procedures, Visual, 4–4–10

CNF. *See* Computer Navigation Fix

Coded Depature Route, 4–4–3

Collision, Avoidance, Judgment, 8–1–8

Communication, Radio
Contact, Reestablishing, 6–4–2
Two–way Failure, 6–4–1
IFR Conditions, 6–4–1
Transponder Usage, 6–4–2
VFR Conditions, 6–4–1

Communications
ARTCC, 5–3–1
Additional Reports, 5–3–4
Position Reporting, 5–3–3
Distress, 6–3–1
Radio, 4–2–1
Phonetic Alphabet, 4–2–5
Release, 4–1–1
Urgency, 6–3–1

Computer Navigation Fix (CNF), 1–1–34

Conflict Alert, Aircraft, 4–1–11

Contact Approach, 5–4–56

Contact Procedures, 4–2–1
Initial Contact, 4–2–1

Control of Lighting Systems, 2–1–9

Control Towers, 4–1–1

Controlled Firing Areas, 3–4–2

Controller, Responsibility, 5–3–8, 5–4–55, 5–5–1

COP. *See* Changeover Points

CORONA, 7–5–9

Course Lights, 2–2–1

CVFP. *See* Charted Visual Flight Procedures

D

Decompression Sickness, 8–1–4

Density Altitude, Effects, 7–5–4

Departure, Restrictions, 5–2–4

Departure Control, 5–2–5

Departures, Instrument, 5–5–6

DF. *See* Direction Finder

Direct User Access Terminal System, 7–1–3

[References are to page numbers]

Direction Finder, VHF, 1–1–25

Discrete Emergency Frequency, 6–5–1

Distance Measuring Equipment, 1–1–3, 1–1–9, 5–3–12

Distress, 6–3–1

Ditching Procedures, 6–3–3

DME. *See* Distance Measuring Equipment

Doppler Radar, 1–1–25

DUATS. *See* Direct User Access System

E

Ear Block, 8–1–3

EFAS. *See* En Route Flight Advisory Service

ELT. *See* Emergency Locator Transmitters

Emergency, 6–1–1
- Air Piracy, 6–3–6
- Airborne Aircraft Inspection, 7–5–8
- Aircraft, Overdue, 6–2–5
- Body Signals, 6–2–6
- Direction Finding Instrument Approach, 6–2–1
- Ditching Procedures, 6–3–3
- Explosives Detection, FAA K–9 Team Program, 6–2–4
- Fuel Dumping, 6–3–7
- Inflight Monitoring and Reporting, 6–2–4
- Intercept and Escort, 6–2–2
- Locator Transmitters, 6–2–2
- Obtaining Assistance, 6–3–2
- Pilot Authority, 6–1–1
- Pilot Responsibility, 6–1–1
- Request Assistance Immediately, 6–1–1
- Search and Rescue, 6–2–5
- Services, 6–2–1
  - Radar Service for VFR Aircraft in Difficulty, 6–2–1
- Survival Equipment, 6–2–6
- Transponder Operation, 6–2–1
- VFR Search and Rescue Protection, 6–2–6

Emergency Locator Transmitter, 6–2–2

En Route Flight Advisory Service, 7–1–8

Escort, 6–2–2

Explosives, FAA K–9 Detection Team Program, 6–2–4

F

Final Guard, 3–5–1

Fitness, Flight
- Alcohol, 8–1–1
- Emotion, 8–1–2
- Fatigue, 8–1–2
- Hypoxia, 8–1–3
- Stress, 8–1–2

Flight
- Aerobatic, 8–1–7
- Fitness, 8–1–1
- Illusions, 8–1–5
- Over National Forests, 7–4–1
- Over National Parks, 7–4–1
- Over National Refuges, 7–4–1
- Safety, Meteorology, 7–1–1
- Vision, 8–1–6

Flight Check Aircraft, 4–3–20

Flight Information Service– Broadcast (FIS–B), 4–5–18

Flight Information Services, 7–1–23

Flight Inspections Aircraft, 4–3–20

Flight Management System, 1–2–3, 5–1–12

Flight Management System Procedures, 5–4–1

Flight Plan
- Change, 5–1–27
  - Proposed Departure Time, 5–1–28
- Closing
  - DVFR, 5–1–28
  - VFR, 5–1–28
- Composite, VFR/IFR, 5–1–10
- DVFR Flights, 5–1–10
- Explanation of IFR, 5–1–15
- Explanation of VFR, 5–1–9
- Form 7233–1, 5–1–9, 5–1–16
- IFR, Canceling, 5–1–28
- IFR Flights, Domestic, 5–1–11
- VFR Flights, 5–1–7

Flight Restrictions, Temporary, 3–5–2

Flight Service Stations, 4–1–1

Flights, Outside the United States, 5–1–26

Fly Visual to Airport, 5–4–19

Flying, Mountain, 7–5–3

FMS. *See* Flight Management System

FMSP. *See* Flight Management System Procedures

[References are to page numbers]

Forms
Bird Strike Incident/Ingestion Report, Appendix 1–1
Volcanic Activity Reporting Form, Appendix 2–1

Frequency, Instrument Landing System, 1–1–10

FSS. *See* Flight Service Stations

Fuel Dumping, 6–3–7

G

Gate Holding, 4–3–13

Glideslope, Visual Indicators, 2–1–2

Global Navigation Satellite System, 1–1–41, 5–1–12

Global Positioning System, 1–1–25
Database, 1–1–32
Equipment, 1–1–32
GPS Approach Procedures, 1–1–32

GLS. *See* Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System

GNSS. *See* Global Navigation Satellite System

GPS. *See* Global Positioning System

GPS Approach Procedures, 1–1–32

Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS), 1–1–41

Ground Station, Call Signs, 4–2–4

Ground Vehicle Operations, 4–1–6

Gulf of Mexico Grid System, 10–1–6

H

Half–Way Signs, 7–5–5

Hand Signals, 4–3–20

Hazard
Antenna Tower, 7–5–1
Bird, 7–4–1
Flight
Obstructions to Flight, 7–5–1
Potential, 7–5–1
VFR in Congested Areas, 7–5–1
Ground Icing Conditions, 7–5–12
Mountain Flying, 7–5–3
Overhead Wires, 7–5–2
Thermal Plumes, 7–5–13
Unmanned Balloons, 7–5–2
Volcanic Ash, 7–5–7

Hazardous Area Reporting Service, 4–1–18

HDTA. *See* High Density Traffic Airports

Helicopter
IFR Operations, 10–1–1
Landing Area Markings, 2–3–20
VFR Operations at Controlled Airports, 4–3–13
Special Operations, 10–2–1
Wake Turbulence, 7–3–6

High Density Traffic Airports, 4–1–21

Hold, For Release, 5–2–4

Holding, 5–3–8

Holding Position Markings, 2–3–1, 2–3–12
for Instrument Landing Systems, 2–3–12
for Taxiway/Taxiway Intersections, 2–3–12

Holding Position Signs, Surface Painted, 2–3–12

Hypoxia, 8–1–3

I

Icing Terms, 7–1–45

IFR, 4–4–4
Operations, To High Altitude Destinations, 5–1–25
Procedures, Use When Operating VFR, 5–1–2

IFR
Approaches, 4–1–6
Military Training Routes, 3–5–2
Separation Standards, 4–4–7

ILS. *See* Instrument Landing System

In–Runway Lighting, 2–1–6
Taxiway Centerline Lead–off Lights, 2–1–6
Taxiway Centerline Lead–On Lights, 2–1–6
Touchdown Zone Lighting, 2–1–6

Incident, Aircraft, Reporting, 7–6–1

Inertial Navigation System, 1–1–25

Inertial Reference Unit (IRU), 1–1–25, 5–1–12

Initial Contact, 4–2–1

INS. *See* Internal Navigation System

Instrument Departure Procedures (DP), 5–2–5

Instrument Landing System, 1–1–7
Category, 1–1–10
Compass Locator, 1–1–10
Course, Distortion, 1–1–11
Distance Measuring Equipment, 1–1–9
Frequency, 1–1–10

[References are to page numbers]

Glide Path, 1–1–8
Glide Slope, 1–1–8
Critical Area, 1–1–11
Holding Position Markings, 2–3–12
Inoperative Components, 1–1–11
Localizer, 1–1–7
Critical Area, 1–1–11
Locators, Compass, 1–1–7
Marker Beacon, 1–1–9
Minimums, 1–1–10

Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC), 5–2–5

Integrated Terminal Weather System, 4–3–7

Intercept, 6–2–2

Interception
Procedures, 5–6–2
Signals, 5–6–5

Interchange Aircraft, 4–2–4

International Flight Plan, IFR, Domestic, International, 5–1–17

International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233–4)– IFR Flights (For Domestic or International Flights), 5–1–17

Intersection Takeoffs, 4–3–8

IR. *See* IFR Military Training Routes

IRU. *See* Inertial Reference Unit

ITWS. *See* Integrated Terminal Weather System

K

K–9 Explosives Detection Team, 6–2–4

L

LAHSO. *See* Land and Hold Short Operations

Land and Hold Short Lights, 2–1–6

Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO), 4–3–9

Landing
Minimums, 5–4–49
Priority, 5–4–56

Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire, Appendix 3–1

Laser Operations, 7–5–10

Law Enforcement Operations
Civil, 5–6–4
Military, 5–6–4

LDA. *See* Localizer–Type Directional Aid

Leased Aircraft, 4–2–4

Lifeguard, 4–2–4

Light Signals, Traffic Control, 4–3–11

Lighting
Aeronautical Light Beacons, 2–2–1
Aids
Airport, 2–1–1
Approach Light Systems, 2–1–1
Control of Lighting Systems, 2–1–9
In–Runway Lighting, 2–1–6
Pilot Control of Airport Lighting, 2–1–9
Runway End Identifier Lights, 2–1–6
Taxiway Lights, 2–1–12
Airport/Heliport Beacons, 2–1–11
Airport, Radio Control, 4–1–6
Code Beacon, 2–2–1
Course, 2–2–1
Navigation, 2–2–1
Obstruction, 2–2–1

LLWAS. *See* Low Level Wind Shear Alert System

Local Airport Advisory (LAA), 3–5–1, 4–1–3

Local Flow Traffic Management Program, 5–4–2

Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance, 1–1–38

Localizer–Type Directional Aid, 1–1–8

Locator, Compass, 1–1–10

Long Island Sound Reporting Service, 4–1–18

Long Range Navigation, 1–1–17
Chain, 1–1–18
Receiver, 1–1–23

LORAN. *See* Long Range Navigation

Low Approach, 4–3–11

Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS), 4–3–7, 7–1–52

Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Detection Systems, 4–3–7

LPV. *See* Localizer Perfomance with Vertical Guidance

M

MAYDAY, 6–3–1

Medical
Carbon Monoxide Poisoning, 8–1–5
Decompression Sickness, 8–1–4

[References are to page numbers]

Facts, Pilots, 8–1–1
Flight, Ear Block, 8–1–3
Illness, 8–1–1
Medication, 8–1–1
Sinus Block, 8–1–4

Meteorology, 7–1–1
ATC InFlight Weather Avoidance, 7–1–38
Automated Surface Observing System, 7–1–29
Categorical Outlooks, 7–1–19
Clear Air Turbulence, 7–1–48
Cloud Heights, Reporting, 7–1–42
Direct User Access Terminal System, 7–1–3
Drizzle, Intensity, 7–1–43
En Route Flight Advisory Service, 7–1–8
FAA Weather Services, 7–1–1
ICAO, Weather Formats, 7–1–63
Icing, Airframe, 7–1–44
Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories, 7–1–9
Inflight Weather Broadcasts, 7–1–20
Microbursts, 7–1–48
National Weather Service, Aviation Products, 7–1–1
Pilot Weather Reports, 7–1–43
Precipitation, Intensity, 7–1–42
Preflight Briefing, 7–1–6
Runway Visual Range, 7–1–40
Telephone Information Briefing Service, 7–1–20
Thunderstorms, 7–1–58
Flying, 7–1–59
Transcribed Weather Broadcast, 7–1–20
Turbulence, 7–1–47
Visibility, Reporting, 7–1–42
Weather, Radar Services, 7–1–34
Weather Observing Programs, 7–1–27
Wind Shear, 7–1–48

Microwave Landing System, 1–1–14
Approach Azimuth Guidance, 1–1–14
Data Communications, 1–1–15
Elevation Guidance, 1–1–15
Operational Flexibility, 1–1–16
Range Guidance, 1–1–15

Military NOTAMs, 5–1–4

Military Operations Areas, 3–4–2

Military Training Routes, 3–5–1
IFR, 3–5–2
VFR, 3–5–2

Minimum, Fuel Advisory, 5–5–6

Minimum Safe Altitudes, 5–4–6

Minimum Vectoring Altitudes, 5–4–18

Minimums
Approach, 5–4–49
Instrument Landing Systems, 1–1–10
Landing, 5–4–49

Missed Approach, 5–4–52

MLS. *See* Microwave Landing System

MOA. *See* Military Operations Areas

Mode C, 4–1–15

Mountain Flying, 7–5–3

Mountain Wave, 7–5–4

Mountainous Areas, 5–6–7

MSA. *See* Minimum Safe Altitudes

Multicom, 4–1–6

MVA. *See* Minimum Vectoring Altitudes

N

National Forests, 7–4–1

National Geospatial–Intelligence Agency (NGA), 5–4–6

National Parks, 7–4–1

National Refuges, 7–4–1

National Security Areas, 3–5–9

National Weather Service, Aviation Products, 7–1–1

NAVAID
Identifier Removal During Maintenance, 1–1–16
Maintenance, 1–1–16
Performance, User Report, 1–1–17
Service Volumes, 1–1–4
with Voice, 1–1–17

Navigation, Aids, 1–1–1
Nondirectional Radio Beacon, 1–1–1
Radio, VHF Omni–directional Range, 1–1–1

Navigation Reference System (NRS), 5–1–15

Navigational
Aids, Radio
Distance Measuring Equipment, 1–1–3
Doppler Radar, 1–1–25
Identifier Removal During Maintenance, 1–1–16
Instrument Landing System, 1–1–7
Localizer–Type Directional Aid, 1–1–8
Long Range Navigation, 1–1–17
Microwave Landing System, 1–1–14
Navaid Service Volumes, 1–1–4

[References are to page numbers]

NAVAIDs with Voice, 1–1–17
Performance, User Report, 1–1–17
Simplified Directional Facility, 1–1–11
Tactical Air Navigation, 1–1–3
VHF Direction Finder, 1–1–25
VHF Omni–directional Range/Tactical Air Navigation, 1–1–3
Inertial Navigation System, 1–1–25

NDB. *See* Nondirectional Radio Beacon

Near Midair Collision, 7–6–2

NGA. *See* National Geospatial–Intelligence Agency

NMAC. *See* Near Midair Collision

Nondirectional Radio Beacon, 1–1–1

Nonmovement Area Boundary Markings, 2–3–19

NOTAM. *See* Notice to Airmen

Notice to Airmen, 5–1–2
FDC NOTAM, 5–1–3
NOTAM Contractions, 5–1–4
NOTAM D, 5–1–3

Notice to Airmen System, 5–1–2

O

Obstacle Departure Procedures, 5–2–5

Obstruction Alert, 4–1–10

Operation Raincheck, 4–1–2

Operation Take–off, 4–1–2

Operational Information System (OIS), 5–1–10

Option Approach, 4–3–19

P

P–static, 7–5–9

PAN–PAN, 6–3–1

PAPI. *See* Precision Approach Path Indicator

PAR. *See* Precision Approach; Precision Approach Radar

Parachute Jumps, 3–2–2, 3–5–5

Phonetic Alphabet, 4–2–5

Pilot
Authority, 6–1–1
Responsibility, 4–1–14, 4–4–1, 4–4–4, 5–4–55, 5–5–1, 6–1–1, 7–3–6

Pilot Control of Airport Lighting, 2–1–9

Pilot Visits to Air Traffic Facilities, 4–1–1

Pilot Weather Reports, 7–1–43

Piracy, Air, Emergency, 6–3–6

PIREPs. *See* Pilot Weather Reports

Pointer NOTAMs, 5–1–4

Position Reporting, 5–3–3

Pre–departure Clearance Procedures, 5–2–1

Precipitation Static, 7–5–9

Precision Approach, 5–4–34

Precision Approach Path Indicator, 2–1–4

Precision Approach Radar, 4–5–7

Precision Approach Systems, 1–1–42

Preflight, Preparation, 5–1–1

Priority, Landing, 5–4–56

Procedure Turn, 5–4–28
Limitations, 5–4–31

Procedures
Arrival, 5–4–1
En Route, 5–3–1
Instrument Approach, 5–4–26
Interception, 5–6–2

Prohibited Areas, 3–4–1

Publications, Aeronautical, 9–1–1

Published Instrument Approach Procedure Visual Segment, 5–4–19

Pulsating Visual Approach Slope Indicator, 2–1–5

R

Radar
Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System, 4–5–2
Airport Route Surveillance Radar, 4–5–7
Airport Surveillance Radar, 4–5–7
Approach Control, 5–4–3
Approaches, 5–4–34
Capabilities, 4–5–1
Doppler, 1–1–25
Limitations, 4–5–1
Monitoring of Instrument Approaches, 5–4–35
Precision Approach, 4–5–7
Precision Approach Radar, 4–5–7

[References are to page numbers]

Surveillance, 4–5–7
Vector, 5–5–3

Radar Assistance to VFR Aircraft, 4–1–11

Radar Beacon, Phraseology, 4–1–17

Radar Sequencing and Separation, VFR Aircraft, TRSA, 4–1–13

Radar Traffic Information Service, 4–1–8

Radio, Communications, 4–2–1
Altitudes, 4–2–6
Contact Procedures, 4–2–1
Directions, 4–2–6
Inoperative Transmitter, 4–2–7
Phonetic Alphabet, 4–2–5
Receiver Inoperative, 4–2–7
Speeds, 4–2–6
Student Pilots, 4–2–4
Technique, 4–2–1
Time, 4–2–6
Transmitter and Receiver Inoperative, 4–2–7
VFR Flights, 4–2–8

RCLS. *See* Runway Centerline Lighting

Receiver, VOR, Check, 1–1–2

REIL. *See* Runway End Identifier Lights

REL. *See* Runway Entrance Lights

Release Time, 5–2–4

Remote Airport Advisory (RAA), 3–5–1, 4–1–4

Remote Airport Information Service (RAIS), 3–5–1, 4–1–4

Required Navigation Performance (RNP), 1–2–1, 5–4–23

Required Navigation Performance (RNP) Operations, 5–1–28, 5–5–7

Rescue Coordination Center
Air Force, 6–2–5
Alaska, 6–2–5
Coast Guard, 6–2–5
Joint Rescue, Hawaii, 6–2–5

Reservations, Airport, 4–1–21

Responsibility
Controller, 5–3–8, 5–4–55, 5–5–1
Pilot, 4–1–14, 4–4–1, 4–4–4, 5–4–55, 5–5–1, 6–1–1, 7–3–6

Restricted Areas, 3–4–1

Restrictions
Departure, 5–2–4
Flight, Temporary, 3–5–2

RNAV. *See* Area Navigation

RNP. *See* Required Navigation Performance

Route
Coded Departure Route, 4–4–3
Course Changes, 5–3–7

Route System, 5–3–5

Runway
Friction Reports, 4–3–8
Aiming Point Markings, 2–3–2
Centerline Markings, 2–3–2
Closed
Lighting, 2–3–19
Marking, 2–3–19
Demarcation Bar, 2–3–4
Designators, 2–3–2
Friction Advisories, 4–3–8
Holding Position Markings, 2–3–12
Markings, 2–3–1
Separation, 4–4–9
Shoulder Markings, 2–3–3
Side Stripe Markings, 2–3–3
Signs, Distance Remaining, 2–3–30
Threshold Bar, 2–3–4
Threshold Markings, 2–3–3
Touchdown Zone Markers, 2–3–2

Runway
Edge Light Systems, 2–1–6
End Identifier Lights, 2–1–6
Entrance Lights, 2–1–7, 2–1–8
Centerline Lighting System, 2–1–6
Status Light (RWSL) System, 2–1–7

RWSL System, Runway Status Light (RWSL) System. *See* Runway Status Light (RWSL) System

Runway, Visual Range, 7–1–40

Runways, Use, 4–3–6

RVR. *See* Runway Visual Range

S

Safety
Alert, 5–5–3
Alerts, 3–2–1
Aircraft Conflict, 3–2–1
Mode C Intruder, 3–2–1
Terrain/Obstruction, 3–2–1
Aviation, Reporting, 7–6–1
Seaplane, 7–5–6

[References are to page numbers]

Safety Alert, 4–1–10
Aircraft Conflict Alert, 4–1–11
Obstruction Alert, 4–1–10
Terrain Alert, 4–1–10

SAR. *See* Search and Rescue

SCAT–I DGPS. *See* Special Category I Differential GPS

Scuba Diving, Decompression Sickness, 8–1–4

SDF. *See* Simplified Directional Facility

Seaplane, Safety, 7–5–6

Search and Rescue, 6–2–2, 6–2–5

Security, National, 5–6–1

See and Avoid, 5–5–4

Separation
IFR, Standards, 4–4–7
Runway, 4–4–9
Visual, 4–4–9, 5–5–5
Wake Turbulence, 7–3–7

Sequenced flashing lights (SFL), 2–1–9

SFL. *See* Sequenced flashing lights

Side–Step Maneuver, 5–4–49

Signs
Airport, 2–3–1
Half–Way, 7–5–5

Simplified Directional Facility, 1–1–11

Sinus Block, 8–1–4

Special Category I Differential GPS (SCAT–I DGPS), 1–1–42

Special Instrument Approach Procedures, 1–1–42, 5–4–27

Special Traffic Management Programs, 4–1–21

Special Use Airspace, 3–4–1
Alert Areas, 3–4–2
Controlled Firing Areas, 3–4–2
Military Operations Areas, 3–4–2
Prohibited Areas, 3–4–1
Restricted Areas, 3–4–1
Warning Areas, 3–4–1

Special VFR Clearances, 4–4–3

Speed, Adjustments, 4–4–7, 5–5–4

Standard Instrument Departures, 5–2–5

Standard Terminal Arrival, 5–4–1

STAR. *See* Standard Terminal Arrival

Surface Painted Holding Position Signs, 2–3–12

Surveillance Approach, 5–4–34

Surveillance Radar, 4–5–7

Surveillance Systems, 4–5–1

T

TACAN. *See* Tactical Air Navigation

Tactical Air Navigation, 1–1–3

TAF. *See* Aerodrome Forecast

Takeoff Hold Lights (THL), 2–1–8

Takeoffs, Intersection, 4–3–8

Taxi
Clearance, 5–2–1
During Low Visibility, 4–3–16

Taxi Into Position And Hold, Taxi, 5–2–1

Taxiway
Centerline Markings, 2–3–7
Closed
Lighting, 2–3–19
Marking, 2–3–19
Edge Markings, 2–3–7
Geographic Position Markings, 2–3–10
Holding Position Markings, 2–3–12
Markings, 2–3–1, 2–3–7
Shoulder Markings, 2–3–7
Surface Painted Direction Signs, 2–3–10
Surface Painted Location Signs, 2–3–10

Taxiway Centerline Lead–Off Lights, 2–1–6

Taxiway Lights, 2–1–12
Centerline, 2–1–12
Clearance Bar, 2–1–12
Edge, 2–1–12
Runway Guard, 2–1–12
Stop Bar, 2–1–12

TCAS. *See* Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System

TDWR. *See* Terminal Doppler Weather Radar

TDZL. *See* Touchdown Zone Lights

TEC. *See* Tower En Route Control

Telephone Information Briefing Service, 7–1–20

Temporary Flight Restrictions, 3–5–2

Terminal Arrival Area (TAA), 5–4–7

Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), 4–3–7, 7–1–53

[References are to page numbers]

Terminal Radar Service Areas, 3–5–9

Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft, 4–1–12

Terminal Weather Information For Pilots System (TWIP), 7–1–58

Terrain Alert, 4–1–10

THL. *See* Takeoff Hold Lights

TIBS. *See* Telephone Information Briefing Service

Time
- Clearance Void, 5–2–4
- Release, 5–2–4

TIPH. *See* Taxi Into Position And Hold

TIS–B. *See* Traffic Information Service–Broadcast

TLS. *See* Transponder Landing System

Touchdown Zone Lights (TDZL), 2–1–6

Tower, Antenna, 7–5–1

Tower En Route Control, 4–1–14

Traffic
- Advisories, 5–5–4
- Local Flow Traffic Management Program, 5–4–2

Traffic Advisory Practices, Airports Without Operating Control Towers, 4–1–2

Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System, 4–4–10

Traffic Control Light Signals, 4–3–11

Traffic Information Service (TIS), 4–4–11, 4–5–8

Traffic Information Service– Broadcast (TIS–B), 4–5–17

Traffic Information Service–Broadcast, 4–4–11

Traffic Patterns, 4–3–2

Transcribed Weather Broadcast, 7–1–20

Transponder Landing System (TLS), 1–1–42

Transponder Operation, 4–1–15
- Automatic Altitude Reporting, 4–1–15
- Code Changes, 4–1–16
- Emergency, 6–2–1
- Ident Feature, 4–1–16
- Mode C, 4–1–15
- Under Visual Flight Rules, 4–1–17
- VFR, 4–1–17

Tri–Color Visual Approach Slope Indicator, 2–1–4

TRSA. *See* Terminal Radar Service Areas

Turbulence, Wake, 7–3–1
- Air Traffic Separation, 7–3–7
- Helicopters, 7–3–6
- Pilot Responsibility, 7–3–6
- Vortex Behavior, 7–3–2
- Vortex Generation, 7–3–1
- Vortex Strength, 7–3–1

TWEB. *See* Transcribed Weather Broadcast

TWIP. *See* Terminal Weather Information For Pilots System

U

Ultralight Vehicles, 3–2–2

Unicom, 4–1–6

Unidentified Flying Object (UFO) Reports, 7–6–3

Unmanned Aircraft, 7–5–2

Urgency, 6–3–1

V

VASI. *See* Visual Approach Slope Indicator

VCOA. *See* Visual Climb Over the Airport

VDP. *See* Visual Descent Points

Vector, Radar, 5–5–3

Vehicle Roadway Markings, 2–3–16

Vertical Navigation, 5–1–12

VFR Corridors, 3–5–7

VFR Flights in Terminal Areas, 4–3–13

VFR Flyways, 3–5–5

VFR Military Training Routes, 3–5–2

VFR Transition Routes, 3–5–7

VFR–on–Top, 5–5–6

VHF, Direction Finder, 1–1–25

VHF Omni–directional Range, 1–1–1

VHF Omni–directional Range/Tactical Air Navigation, 1–1–3

Visual
- Approach, 5–4–54, 5–5–5
- Clearing Procedures, 4–4–10
- Glideslope Indicators, 2–1–2
- Separation, 4–4–9, 5–5–5

Visual Approach Slope Indicator, 2–1–2

Visual Climb Over the Airport (VCOA), 5–2–8

[References are to page numbers]

Visual Descent Points, 5–4–18

Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC), 5–2–5

Visual Segment, 5–4–19

VNAV. *See* Vertical Navigation

Void Times, Clearance, 5–2–4

Volcanic, Ash, 7–5–7

Volcanic Activity Reporting, Forms. *See* Appendix 2

VOR
See also VHF Omni–directional Range
Receiver Check, 1–1–2

VOR Receiver Checkpoint Markings, 2–3–16

VORTAC. *See* VHF Omni–directional Range/Tactical Air Navigation

VR. *See* VFR Military Training Routes

W

Waivers, 4–1–23

Wake, Turbulence, 7–3–1

Warning Areas, 3–4–1

Weather
Deviations in Oceanic Controlled Airspace, 7–1–39
ICAO, Weather Formats, 7–1–63

Weather System Processor (WSP), 4–1–23, 4–3–7, 7–1–54

WSP. *See* Weather System Processor